REVISED LATIN GRAMMAR.

A

LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE, Ph.D. (Göttingen), LL.D.,

Professor of Greek in the University of Virginia.

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY,
NEW YORK AND BALTIMORE.

1872.
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1872, by the
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.
PREFACE
TO THE REVISED EDITION.

In this new edition of my Latin Grammar, I have not made any essential change in the Inflections, as I am thoroughly in accord with the wise self-restraint of the German authors, Professors Lattmann and Müller, who have presented simply the results and not the processes of Comparative Grammar. A few sections and a few notes have been added, and here and there I have allowed myself to vary from the original, but in the main I have kept to the translation, as made by Professor Thomas R. Price, of Randolph Macon College, a scholar whose attainments need no testimonial from me, a man whose friendship I count among my most valued possessions.

To the revision of the Syntax, which was originally based on Kritz, and largely indebted for its practical features to Lattmann and Müller, especial attention has been given; and, whilst I have not deviated from the general arrangement, which was dictated by the design of writing a parallel Greek Grammar, the variations in detail are so numerous that this part of the book may be considered a new work.

The orthography has been brought nearer to recent results, but I have not aimed at a painful consistency.

In the treatment of the metres I have had regard to the system of Heinrich Schmidt.

It would be pedantry to enumerate all the grammars that I have consulted, worse than pedantry to acknowledge my obligations to the great
masters of the department, without whose aid no tolerable Latin grammar can be written, and unworthy of the aims of my life to advertise my own efforts or to call attention to the supposed excellences of my own methods.

To all who have encouraged me by their sympathy, or aided me by corrections and suggestions, I am truly grateful. To none do I owe more, both for encouragement and for aid, than to my tried friend and esteemed colleague, Professor Peters, whose acute criticism and practical experience have been of great service to me in the prosecution of my Latin studies.

B. L. GILDERSEELE.VE.

September, 1872.
## CONTENTS

The references are to the paragraphs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inflections</th>
<th>1—191</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alphabet</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vowels</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consonants</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syllables</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accentuation</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parts of Speech</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflection</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantive</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cases</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declensions</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fifth</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek Nouns</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Nouns</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjugation of Sum</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems of Conjugation</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Conjugation</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Conjugation</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Conjugation</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Conjugation</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix to Third Conj.</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponents of First Conj.</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponents of Second Conj.</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponents of Third Conj.</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponents of Fourth Conj.</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periphrastic Conjugation</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Stem</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect &quot;</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euphonic Laws</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change of Conjugation</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stems in a P-mute</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stems in a K-mute</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirate Stems in H and V</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stems in a T-mute</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid Stems</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stems in S</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stems in U</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponents</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change of Conjugation</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inchoative Verbs</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Verbs</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obsolete forms of the Verb</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax</td>
<td>192—697</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax of Simple Sentence</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative and Vocative</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concord</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voices</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenses</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Tense</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periphrastic Tenses</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenses in Letters</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moods</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenses of Moods and Verbal Nouns</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Sentence Expanded</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiplication of Subject</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualification of Subject</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative Pronouns</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive Pronouns</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite Pronouns</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparatives and Superlatives</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apposition</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predicative Attribution, and Apposition</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiplication of Predicate</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualification of Predicate</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of Towns and Islands</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepositions</td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Accusative</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Ablative</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Acc. and Abl.</td>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive as a Substantive</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerund and Gerundive</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negatives</td>
<td>442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Incomplete Sentence</em></td>
<td>451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative Sentences</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Syntax of Compound Sentence</em></td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordination</td>
<td>475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copulative Sentences</td>
<td>476</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adversative Sentences</td>
<td>485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disjunctive Sentences</td>
<td>494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal and Illative Sentences</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subordination</td>
<td>505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence of Tenses</td>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object Sentences</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Quod</td>
<td>524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Acc. and Inf.</td>
<td>536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object Sentences with Particle</td>
<td>536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal Sentences</td>
<td>538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentences of Design and Tendency</td>
<td>543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Sentences</td>
<td>544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consecutive Sentences</td>
<td>553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal Sentences</td>
<td>561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antecedent Action</td>
<td>563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contemporaneous Action</td>
<td>570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Action</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cum (Quam)</td>
<td>580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional Sentences</td>
<td>590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical</td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ideal</td>
<td>598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unreal</td>
<td>599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of Comparison</td>
<td>604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concessive Sentences</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Sentences</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative Sentences</td>
<td>641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correlative</td>
<td>645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With atque</td>
<td>646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With quam</td>
<td>647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abridged Sentence</em></td>
<td>648</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oratio Obliqua</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participle</td>
<td>669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Arrangement of Words</em></td>
<td>671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Arrangement of Clauses</em></td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Figures of Syntax</em></td>
<td>685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prosody</td>
<td>698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versification</td>
<td>723</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INFLECTIONS
OF THE
LATIN LANGUAGE,
ON THE BASIS OF LATTMANN AND MÜLLER.

ALPHABET.

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no W.

Remark.—K is used chiefly in abbreviations—K. (Caeso), Kal. (Calendar). Y and Z occur in Greek words only. Originally, there was no difference in character between I and J, between V and U. In the olden time U did not come after V: servos (servus) equos or ecus (equus), quom (cum).

VOWELS.

2. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u; and are divided:

1. According to their quality, into
   open, a, e, o.
   close, i, u.

2. According to their quantity, into
   long, . . . . . . . . . . . .
   short, . . . . . . . . . . . .
   common, i.e., sometimes short, and sometimes long, 

The following distinction is made:
   common: by preference short, =
   common: by preference long, =

In this grammar, every long vowel sound is marked. But see 700 R. 2.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{a} &= \text{a} \text{ in } \text{father.} & \text{o} &= \text{o} \text{ in } \text{bone.} \\
\text{e} &= \text{e} \text{ in } \text{prey.} & \text{u} &= \text{oo} \text{ in } \text{moon.} \\
\text{i} &= \text{i} \text{ in } \text{caprice.} & \text{y} &= \text{u} \text{ in } \text{suir (French).}
\end{align*}
\]

Remark.—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

4. Diphthongs.

4. There are but few diphthongs or double sounds in Latin. The theory of the diphthong requires that both elements be heard in a slur. The tendency in Latin was to reduce diphthongs to simple sounds; hence frequent variations in spelling: so glaeba and glēba, sod; oboedire and obēdire, obey; faenum (foenum) and fēnum, hay.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ae} \text{ and } \text{oe} &= \text{ae} \text{ in Graeme.} \\
\text{au} &= \text{ou} \text{ in our.} \\
\text{ei} &= \text{ei} \text{ in } \text{feint (drawled).} \\
\text{eu} &= \text{eu} \text{ in Spanish deuda.} \\
\text{ui} &= \text{oui} \text{ in French oui.}
\end{align*}
\]

5. Diaeresis.

5. The sign \(\text{••}\) (\text{Diáresis—Greek = separation}) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately: \(\text{aër, air; Oeno-}
\text{maüs, aloë.}
\]

6. Consonants.

6. Consonants are divided:

1. According to the principal organs by which they are pronounced, into

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Labials (lip-sounds)}: & \quad \text{b, p, (ph), f, v, m.} \\
\text{Dentals (tooth-sounds)}: & \quad \text{d, t, (th), l, n, r, s.} \\
\text{Gutturals (throat-sounds)}: & \quad \text{g, c, k, qu, (ch), h.}
\end{align*}
\]

2. According to their prolongation, into

A. Semi-vowels: of which

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{l, m, n, r, are } & \text{liquids, (m and n being nasals).} \\
\text{h, j, and v, are } & \text{breathings, and} \\
\text{s} & \text{is a sibilant.}
\end{align*}
\]

B. Mutes: to which belong

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{P-mutes, } & \text{p, b, (ph), f, labials.} \\
\text{T-mutes, } & \text{t, d, (th), dentals.} \\
\text{K-mutes, } & \text{k, c, qu, g, (ch), gutturals.}
\end{align*}
\]
Those on the same line are said to be of the same organ.

Mutes are further divided into

- **Tenuès** (thin): p, t, k, c, qu, hard (surd).
- **Mediae** (middle): b, d, g, soft (sonant).
- **Aspirātae** (aspirate): ph, th, ch, aspirate.

The aspirates occur chiefly in Greek words.

Those on the same line are said to be of the same order.

3. **Double consonants** are: z = dz in adze; x = cs (ks); j between two vowels is a double sound, half vowel, half consonant, and always length- as the preceding vowel; jējūnus, hungry.

### Sounds of the Consonants.

7. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

- **C** is hard throughout = k (commonly assimilated before e (ae, oe) and i.
- **Ch** is not a genuine Latin sound. In Latin words it is a k; in Greek words a kh; commonly pronounced as ch in German.
- **G** is hard throughout, as in get, give.
- **J** has the sound of a broad y; much fuller than y in your.
- **N** has a guttural nasal sound before c, g, q, as in anchor, anguish.
- **Qu** = kw (nearly); before u, qu = c; quum = cum; equus = ecus. Quum is a late spelling, retained for convenience' sake.
- **R** must be trilled.
- **S** and **X** are always hard, as in hiss, axes.
- **T** is hard throughout.
- **V** was nearer our w than our v; still nearer the French ou in out.

### Syllables.

8. The syllable is the unit of pronunciation, and consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

A consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: -mo, I love.

Two or more consonants belong to the following vowel: -sper, rough; -fau-stus, lucky; -li-bri, books.

**Exceptions.**—1. Liquids, l, m, n, r, join the preceding vowel: al-mus, fostering; am-bo, both; an-guis, snake; ar-bor, tree; mn follows the general rule: a-mnis, river.

2. When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first, the
second to the second syllable: *cas-sis*, helmet; *al-lium*, garlic; *map-pa*
apkin; *an-nus*, year; *mit-to*, I send.

3. Compounds are treated as if their parts were separate words: *ab-igo*, I drive off; *rès-pública*, commonwealth.

9. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *ante-
penult*.

10. **Quantity.**—A syllable is said to be long by nature, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; by position, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a dou-
ble consonant: *ars*, art; *collum*, neck; *abrumpo*, I break off; *per mare*, through the sea; *nex*, murder.

Remark.—*Nf, ns*, and *j* make a preceding vowel sound long, not merely the syllable.

Exception.—*J* in the compounds of *jugum*, yoke; *bi-jugus*, two-horse.

11. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with *l* or *r*, is *common* (*anceps*): *tenēbrae*, darkness.

12. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diph-
thong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: *saevus*, cruel; *conclúdo*, I shut up (from *claudo*, I shut); *cōgo* (from *co-igo*), I drive together.

13. One simple vowel before another vowel-sound makes a short syllable: *deus*, God; *puer*, boy.

Remarks.—1. *h* does not count: *nihil*, nothing.
2. Exceptions will be noted as they occur.
3. On the quantity of final syllables see Prosody.

14. **Accentuation.**—1. Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult: *équus*, horse.

2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common: *mandáre*, to commit; *mándere*, to chew; *íntegrum*, entire.

Remarks.—1. The little appendages (*enclitics*), *que*, *ve*, *ne*, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult: *lúmináque*, and lights; *flúmináve*, or rivers; *vōmeréne*, from a ploughshare?

2. Other exceptions will be noted as they occur.
PARTS OF SPEECH.

15. The parts of speech are:
I. The Noun, embracing:
1. The Substantive, which gives a name: *vir*, a man; *Cocles*, *dōnum*, a gift.
2. The Adjective, which adds a quality to the substantive.
II. The Pronoun, which points out.
III. The Verb, which says.
IV. The Particles, which are mainly mutilated forms of the noun, and embrace:
1. The Adverb, which shows circumstances.
2. The Preposition, which shows local relation.
3. The Conjunction, which shows connection.

Remarks.—1. Pronoun and noun have essentially the same inflection; but they are commonly separated, partly on account of the difference in signification, partly on account of the greater antiquity of the pronominal forms. The pronominal element is the formative element of language.
2. The Interjection is either a mere cry of feeling: *āh! ah!* and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

INFLECTION.

16. Inflection is that bending or change, chiefly in the end of a word, which shows a change in the relations of that word. The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

SUBSTANTIVE.

17. The substantive gives the name of a person or thing (concrete), or of a quality (abstract).
Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common*. 
The *proper noun* is *proper*, or *peculiar*, to certain persons or things: Horatius, Horace; Neapolis, Naples; Padus, Po.

Common nouns are common to a whole class: dominus, a lord; urbs, a city; amnis, a river.

**GENDER.**

18. For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Males are masculine; Females, feminine. Masculine: Rōmulus; Jūpiter; vir, man; equus, horse. Feminine: Cornelia; Jūno; femina, woman; equa, mare.

19. Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification:

I. Names of months (mensēs, masc.), winds (ventī, masc.), rivers (fluvī, masc.), and mountains (montēs, masc.), are masculine: Aprilis, the opening month, April; Aquilo, the north wind; Albis, the River Elbe; Athōs, Mount Athos.

Exceptions.—1. Feminine are the rivers Allia; Albula; Matrōna, the Marne; Styx; Lēthē.

2. Of the mountains, the Alps, Alpēs, are feminine, and sundry (Greek) names in a (Gen. ae), ē (Gen. ēs): Aetna, Cyllēné; Sōracte, and Pēlion are neuter, and so are names of mountains in a (Gen. ōrum): Maenala, Maenalōrum.

II. Names of countries (terrae, fem.), islands (insulae, fem.), cities (urbēs, fem.), plants (plantae, fem.), and trees (arborēs, fem.), are feminine: Aegyptus, Egypt; Rhodus, Rhodes; pirus, a pear-tree; abīēs, a fir-tree.

Exceptions.—The exceptions, which are numerous, are chiefly Greek, and follow the termination, instead of the signification.

III. All indeclinable nouns, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable nouns, are neuter: fās, right; ā longum, ā long; scire tuum, thy knowing; triste valē, a sad “farewell.”

20. 1. Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of common gender: civis, citizen (male or female); comes, companion; judex, judge.
2. Substantīva mōbilīa are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: magister, master, teacher; magistra, mistress; servus, serva, slave (m. and f.); victor, victrix, conqueror (m. and f.)

3. If the male and female of animals have but one designation, mās, male, and fēmina, female, are added, when it is necessary to be exact: pāvo mās (masculus), peacock, pāvo fēmina, peahen. These nouns are called epicene.

21. The Latin noun has six cases:

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).
   Answers: who? what?

2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).
   Answers: whose? whereof?

3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).
   Answers: For or To whom?

4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).
   Answers: whom? what?

5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).

6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).
   Answers: where? whence? wherewith?

22. According to their syntactical use, the cases are divided into Cāsus Recti, or Independent Cases, and Cāsus Obliqui, or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are Cāsus Recti, the rest Cāsus Obliqui.

23. According to their form, the cases are divided into strong and weak: The strong cases are Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative. The weak cases are Genitive, Dative, and Ablative.

Remarks.—These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative, which is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3d Declensions, is lost in the Genitive of the 2d Declension, and often blended with the Ablative in form, regularly in syntax. The Instrumental, which is found in other members of the family, is likewise merged in the Ablative.

24. The case-forms arise from the combination of the ending with the stem.

The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.
1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the ending, the ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm mensa, the stem is not mens, but mensa, the final a having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural mensis. So -d, the characteristic of the Ablative Singular, has disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (ך, מך, מך). The "crude form" it is often impossible to ascertain.

2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to comparative etymology. The stem may be of any length, the root must be a monosyllable. In penna the stem is penna-; in pennula, pennula-; in pennatulus, pennatulo-; the root is pet (petna, pesna, penna), and is found in pet-ere, to fall upon, to fly at; Greek, πέτομαι, πτερόν; English, feather.

DECLENSIONS.

25. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final sound of their respective stems:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem characteristic</th>
<th>The stems of the First Declension end in</th>
<th>The stems of the Second Declension end in</th>
<th>The stems of the Third Declension end in</th>
<th>The stems of the Fourth Declension end in</th>
<th>The stems of the Fifth Declension end in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ä</td>
<td>a consonant, i and u</td>
<td>a consonant, i and u</td>
<td>a consonant, i and u</td>
<td>a consonant, i and u</td>
<td>a consonant, i and u</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26. 1. The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, i and u being semi-consonants.


I. For the strong cases:

Neuter nouns have Nominative and Vocative like the Accusative; in the Plural the strong cases always end in ä.

In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the strong cases are alike in the Plural.

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Second Declension, when the Nom. ends in -us.

II. For the weak cases:

Dative and Ablative Plural have a common form.

Remarks.—In declining neuter nouns, follow the order of strong cases and weak cases. It saves time, and shows connection.

FIRST DECLENSION.

27. The stem ends in ä, which disappears in the ending -is of the Dative and Ablative plural.
Feminine.

**SING.** — **N.** mensa, the, or a, table.
**G.** mensae, of the, or a, table.
**D.** mensae, to, for the, or a, table.
**Ac.** mensa-m, the, or a, table.
**V.** mensa, O table! or table!
**Abl.** mensā, from, with, by, the, or a, table.

**PLUR.** — **N.** mensae, the tables, or tables.
**G.** mensārum, of the tables, or tables.
**D.** mensis, to, for the tables, or tables.
**Ac.** mensās, the tables, or tables.
**V.** mensae, O tables!
**Abl.** mensis, from, with, by, the tables, or tables.

**Remarks.** — 1. The Gen. -ā is found in poetry. The Gen. in -ās occurs in the word *familia*, *family*, when combined with *pater*, *father*, *māter*, *mother*, *filius*, *son*, *fīlia*, *daughter*, viz.: *paterfamilías*, *māterfamilías*, *filius familiás*, *fīlia familiás*.

The Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form -um instead of -ārum, chiefly in the Greek words *amphora* (*amphora*, measure of tonnage), and *drachma*, franc—(Greek coin). The poets make frequent use of this form in patronyms and compounds of -cola (from *colo*, *inhabit*) and -gena (from gen, *beget*).

2. The Locative Dative case singular is like the Genitive *Rōmae*, at Rome.

3. *Dea*, *goddess*, *fīlia*, *daughter*, *ambae*, *both*, and *duae*, *two*, have the form -ābus in the Dative and Ablative Plural, viz.: *deābus*, *fīliābus*, *ambābus*, *duābus*.

28. **Rule of Gender.** — The gender is feminine, except when males are meant.

*Hadria*, *the Adriatic*, is masculine.

Second Declension.

29. The stem ends in -ō, which appears in the older forms of the Nom. and Acc. singular, *servo-s*, *servo-m*. In the ordinary forms it is changed into ū, ē, lengthened into ō, or disappears wholly.

**Masculine.**

**SING.** — **N.** hortus, garden.
**G.** hortī, horti, gardens.
**D.** hortō, hortis.
**Ac.** hortum, hortī.
**V.** horte, hortōs.
**Abl.** hortō, hortis.
SECOND DECLENSION.

Neuter.

sing. — N. Ac. V. bellum, war. 
G. bellī,
D. Abl. bellō,

plur. — bella, wars.
bellōrum. 
bellīs.

Remarks. — 1. In the Genitive Singular, ii is often contracted into i, the accent remaining unchanged: ingenii, of genius, into ingeniī.
2. In the Vocative Singular, ie (je) is commonly contracted into i in proper names in -ius, -ēius (ējus), -āius (ājus), the accent remaining unchanged; as, Antōni, Tulli, Gāi, Vergīliī. Filius, son, genius, genius, and meus, my, form their Vocatives in like manner: filī, genī, mi.
3. In the Genitive Plural, -um for -ōrum is found in words denoting coins and measures; as, nummum (of moneys) = sēstertium, of sesterces; modium, of measures. Faber, workman, has both fabrum and fabrōrum; liberī, children, both liberum and liberōrum; and vir, man, in compounds has triumvirum, of the triumvirs, and the like.
4. The Locative Singular, which has a restricted use, ends in i (Apparent Genitive), as Rhodi, at Rhodes, Tarenti, at Tarentum.
5. Deus, God, is irregular. Singular Vocative, deus. Plural Nominative (deō), diī, di; Genitive, deōrum, deum; Accusative, deōs; Dative and Ablative (deīs), diīs, dis.

30. Rule of Gender. — Nouns in -us are masculine; in -um, neuter.

Exceptions. — Feminine are: 1st. Cities and islands, as, Corinthus, Samus. 2d. Most trees, as, fāgus, beech; pīrus, pear-tree. 3d. Many Greek nouns, as, atomus, atom; paragraphus, paragraph; methodus, method; periodus, period; dialectus, dialect. 4th. Alvus, belly; colus, distaff; humus, ground; vannus, wheat-fan.

Neuters are: vīrus, venom; pelagus, sea; vulgus, the rabble (sometimes masculine).

31. Most masculines in r drop -us in the Nominative and e in the Vocative Singular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. puer, boy.</td>
<td>puerī.</td>
<td>N. ager, field.</td>
<td>agrī.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. puerī,</td>
<td>puerōrum.</td>
<td>G. agrī,</td>
<td>agrōrum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. puerō,</td>
<td>puerīs.</td>
<td>D. agrō,</td>
<td>agrīs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. puerum,</td>
<td>puerōs.</td>
<td>Ac. agrum,</td>
<td>agrōs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. puer,</td>
<td>puerī.</td>
<td>V. ager,</td>
<td>agrī.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. puerō,</td>
<td>puerīs.</td>
<td>Abl. agrō,</td>
<td>agrīs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
32. The e belongs to the stem, and is retained through all the cases in adulter, adulterer; alter, the other; asper, rough; dexter, on the right (which has either dextrī or dexteri); exter, outside; gener, son-in-law; gibber, hump-backed; lacer, torn; liber, free; Liber, god of wine; miser, wretched; prosper, lucky; puer, boy; socer, father-in-law; tener, soft; vesper, evening; and in words ending in -fer and -ger, from fero, I bear, and gero, I carry, as, signifer, standard-bearer, armiger, armor-bearer.

Ibēr and Celtibēr (names of nations) have in the Plural Ibēri and Celtibēri.

In other words, the e is inserted only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

33. **DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN -us, -a, -um.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonaē</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonaē</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>bone</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

34. **Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. miser</td>
<td>miserē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. miserī</td>
<td>miserēae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. miserō</td>
<td>miserōae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. miserum</td>
<td>miserām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. miser</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. misera</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35. The following have Genitive Singular in -ius, and Dative Singular in i:

| ūnus, ullus, nullus | one, | any, | none. |
| sōlus, tōtus, alius | sole, | whole, | other. |
| uter, alter, neuter | which of the two, | one of the two, | neither. |

**Remark.**—In poetry, the i of the Genitive ending -ius is often shortened, except in alius (rare), sōlius, utrius, neutrius.
TIIIKD

DECLENSION.

HNG. —

1ST.

nullus, nulla, nullum, none.

G. nullius, nullius, nullius.

D. nulli, nulli, nulli.

Ac. nullum, nullam, nullum.

Abl. nullō, nullā, nullō.

The Plural is regular.

THIRD DECLENSION.

36. The stem ends in a consonant, or the close vowels i and u.

37. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:

I.—Consonant Stems.

A. Liquid stems, ending in l, m, n, r.

B. Sibilant stems, ending in s.

C. Mute stems, 1. Ending in a P-mute, b, p. (Compare the Fourth Declension.)

2. Ending in a K-mute, c, g.

3. Ending in a T-mute, d, t.

III.—Vowel Stems.

1. Ending in i.

2. Ending in u.

38. The sign of the Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, is s, which, however, is dropped after l, n, r, s.

The Nominative Singular undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative. In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

39. Neuters always form

the Nominative without the case-ending s.

the Accusative and Vocative case in both numbers like the Nominative.

the Nominative Plural in ā.

Remark.—Originally coincident with the Dative, the Locative of the Third Declension was finally blended with Ablative, both in form and in syntax. In the names of nouns the old form is frequently retained: Karthāginī, at Carthage, Sulfōnī, at Sulmo. According to some, rūrī, in the country, is an Ablative.

I.—Consonant Stems.

A.—Liquid stems.

1. Liquid stems in l.

40. Nominative without s, as, consul, the consul.
THIRD DECLENSION.

ING.—N. consul, consul. PLUR.—N. consul-és, the consuls.
G. consul-is, consul-um.
D. consul-i, consul-ibus.
Ac. consul-em, consul-ès.
V. consul, consul-ès.
Abl. consul-e, consul-ibus.

Rule of Gender.—Stems in 1 are masculine: sól, the sun, sólis; ál, salt, sális.

Exceptions.—Neuters are: mel, honey, mellis; fel, gall, fellis.

2. Liquid stems in m.

41. Nominative with s. One example only: hiem(p)s, winter; genitive, hiem-is (fem.).

3. Liquid stems in n.

42. The Nominative Singular of masculine and feminine stems formed without s, drops the n of the stem, and ends in ó. The Genitive Singular has, in some nouns, -ónis; in others, ínis.

The Nominative Singular of the neuter stems retains the n, and terminates in -én.

The Genitive Singular of neuters ends in -ínis.

43. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER.

SING.—N. leó, lion. imágō, likeness. nómen, name.
G. león-is, imágín-is, nómin-is,
D. león-i, imágín-i, nómin-i,
Ac. león-em, imágín-em, nómen,
V. leó, imágí-, nómen,
Abl. león-e, imágíne, nómin-e,

PLUR.—N. león-és, imágín-és, nómin-a,
G. león-um, imágín-um, nómin-um,
D. león-ibus, imágín-ibus, nómin-ibus,
Ac. león-ès, imágín-ès, nómin-a,
V. león-ès, imágín-ès, nómin-a,
Abl. león-ibus, imágín-ibus, nómin-ibus.

Remarks.—1. Nouns in -do and -go have in the Genitive -ínis, whilst the rest in -o have -ónis; as, grando, hail, grandinis; virgo, maid, virginis.

Exceptions.—Praedo, robber; harpago, grappling-hook; ligo, mattock, have ónis humo, man; turbo, whirlwind, have ínis.
2. To the stems in -is belong sanguis, blood, sanguin-is; pollis, flour, pollin-is (both masc.). In these, n of the stem is dropped before s of the Nom.

3. Masculines in -en, Genitive īnis, are: pecten, comb, and the personal designations: tibicen, fluter; tubicen, trumpeter; cornicen, horn-blower; and flāmen, priest.

Masculines in -ēn, -ēnis, are only: splēn and liēn, spleen, and the Plural rēnēs, kidneys.

44. Rules of Gender.—1. Masculine are nouns in -o, save those in -do, -go, and -io, with caro, flesh: but ordo, cardo, are masculine, with ligo, margo; add harpago; and in -io, all concrete nouns like pūgio.

ordo, rank; cardo, hinge; ligo, mattock; margo, border; harpago, grappling hook; pūgio, dagger; vespertilio, bat; titio, firebrand.

2. Nouns in -en (men) are neuter. See exceptions 43, 3.

4. Liquid stems in r.

45. Nominative without s.

Remark.—In several words in -ër and -ūr, the r has arisen from s. Hence, labōs, as well as labōr, toil; rōbus and rōbūr, oak; vōmis and vōmer, ploughshare.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e. passer, sparrow</td>
<td>pater, father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passer-is</td>
<td>patr-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o. labor, toil</td>
<td>òrātor, speaker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labōr-is</td>
<td>òrātor-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u. für, thief</td>
<td>vultur, vulture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>für-is</td>
<td>vultur-is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

46. Words in -ter, syncopate, i. e., leave out the e, except later, bric later-is.

47. Rules of Gender.—Words in -er and -or are masculine, those in -ur, neuter.
Exceptions.—The only feminine is arbor.

Neuters are: fär, nectar, marmor,
Aequor, iter, acer, piper,
Verber, über, vër, cadäver,
Ador, tüber, and papäver.

er, maple; ador, spelt; aequor, sea; arbor, tree; cadäver, dead body; fär, spelt;
marmor, marble; nectar, nectar; piper, pepper; papäver, poppy; tüber, tumor;
ber, teat; vër, spring.

Furfur, bran, is masculine.

B.—Sibilant Stems.

48. The Nominative has no additional s.
In the other cases, the s of the stem passes over, between two
owels, into r.
Instead of the final stem-vowel e, the Nominative of Mascu-
ines has i.
Instead of the final stem-vowels e and o, the Nominative of
neuters has u.

Remark.—S is retained throughout in the neuter: vās, dish, vāsis.
S3 occurs in ās, a copper, genitive assis (masc.), and os, bone, ossis (neut).

-----------|--------|-----------|--------
49. N. | genus, kind. | gener-a. | corpus, body. | corpor-a.
G. | gener-is, | gener-um. | corpor-is, | corpor-um.
D. | gener-i, | gener-ibus. | corpor-i, | corpor-ibus.
Ac. | genus, | gener-a. | corpus, | corpor-a.
V. | genus, | gener-a. | corpus, | corpor-a.
Abl. gener-e, | gener-ibus. | corpor-e, | corpor-ibus.

50. Rule of Gender.—Masculine are nouns in -is (-eris), and
-ōs, -ōris: except ōs, mouth; genitive ōris, neuter.
Neuter are nouns in -us, genitive -eris, -oris, and in -ūs, -ūris;
except tellūs, earth, tellūris, which is feminine; and the mascu-
lines, lepus, hare, leporis; mūs, mouse, mūris.

C.—Mute Stems.

51. All masculines and feminines of mute stems have s in the
Nominative.
Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel i into
e in the Nominative.
A K-mute, combining with s, becomes x, as, pác-s = pāx, peace; rēg-s = rēx, king.

A T-mute before s is dropped, as, aetāt-s = aetās, age; ped-s = pēs, foot.

52. 

Stems in a P-mute.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>U</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trab-s, beam.</td>
<td>plēb-s, commons.</td>
<td>stip-s, dole.</td>
<td>princep-s, chief.</td>
<td>(op-s), power.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trab-is (fem.)</td>
<td>plēb-is (fem.)</td>
<td>stip-is (fem.)</td>
<td>princip-is,</td>
<td>(op-is (fem.).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic:

Urb-s, city, urb-is (fem.); stirp-s, stock, stirp-is (fem.).

53. 

Stems in a K-mute.

pāx, peace. rēx, king. rādix, root. vōx, voice. lūx, light.
pāc-is (fem.) rēg-is (mas.) rādic-is (fem.) vōc-is (fem.) lūc-is (fem.)
fax, torch. grex, herd. salix, willow. jādex, judge. dux, leader.
fac-is (fem.) grēg-is (mas.) salic-is (fem.) jūdic-is. duc-is.

54. With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic:

Arx, citadel, arc-is (fem.); falx, sickle, falc-is (fem.).

Sing.—N. princep-s, chief. Plur.—princip-ēs,
G. princip-is, princip-um,
D. princip-ī, princip-ibus,
Ac. princip-ēm, princip-ēs,
V. princep-s, princip-ēs,
Abl. princip-e, princip-ibus.

Sing.—N. rēx, king. Plur.—rēg-ēs,
G. rēg-is, rēg-ūm,
D. rēg-ī, rēg-ibus,
Ac. rēg-ēm, rēg-ēs,
V. rēx, rēg-ēs,
Abl. rēg-e, rēg-ibus.

Remark.—All monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Genitive Plural in -ium, as, urbium, of cities; arcium, of citadels; montium, of mountains; partium, of parts; noctium, of the nights. The polysyllabic stems also in -nt and -rt have more frequently -ium, as, clientium, of clients; cohortium, of companies. Stems in -āt have sometimes both -um and -ium, as, civitātum and civitātium. See 59, R. 3.
THIRD DECLENSION.

Stems in a T-mute.

55. A. Characteristic preceded by a vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T.</th>
<th>D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aetās</td>
<td>anas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aetāt-is</td>
<td>anāt-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīēs</td>
<td>parīēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīēt-is</td>
<td>parīēt-is (masc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit-is</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. P. ium</td>
<td>miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacerdōs, priest.</td>
<td>custōs, keeper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacerdōt-is</td>
<td>custōd-is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtūs, manliness.</td>
<td>palūs, bog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtūt-is (fem.)</td>
<td>laudis, (fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

56. B. Characteristic preceded by a consonant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T.</th>
<th>D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>frons, brow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front-is (fem.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pars, part. puls, porridge.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part-is (fem.)</td>
<td>pult-is (fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nox, night.</td>
<td>lac, milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noct-is (fem.)</td>
<td>lact-is, (neut.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—N. aetās, age.</td>
<td>Sing.—pēs, foot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. aetāt-is</td>
<td>aetāt-um, ped-is, ped-um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. aetēt-i</td>
<td>aetēt-ibus, ped-i, ped-ibus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. aetēt-em</td>
<td>aetēt-ēs, ped-em, ped-ēs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. aetās</td>
<td>aetāt-ēs, pēs, ped-ēs, ped-ibus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. aetēt-e</td>
<td>aetēt-ibus, ped-e, ped-ibus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

57. Rule of Gender.—All mute stems, with Nominative in s, are feminine.

Exceptions in a K-mute.

Masculines are -unx and -ex,
Saving forfex, forpex, nex,
Lēx, vibēx, faex, and forms of prex.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T.</th>
<th>D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>faex, dregs.</td>
<td>lēx, law.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forfex, shears.</td>
<td>nex, slaughter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forpex, tongs.</td>
<td>prece, with prayer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deunx, as.</td>
<td>vibēx, weal (better vibix.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Calix, cup, and fornix, arch, are masculine. Calx, heel, and calx, chalk, are.
Third Declension.

Exceptions in a T-mute.—Nouns in -ēs, -itis, are masculine, as, cēspes, turf, cēspitis; as are also pēs, foot, and its compounds; pariēs, wall; and, of the nouns in -is, lapis, stone. Merges, -itis, sheaf, is feminine.

Masculines in -ns are: mons, mountain; pons, bridge; fons, spring, dens, tooth; torrens, torrent; rudens, rope.

Neuters are only: cor, heart, and lac, milk, which drop the characteristic; and caput, head, capitis.

II.—Vowel Stems.

1.—Vowel Stems in I.

58. Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in s. Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel i into e.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel i into e. This e is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after l and r.

All stems in i have Genitive Plural in -ium.

All neuter stems in i have the Ablative Singular in i, and Nominative Plural in -ia.

Remarks.—The stems of Nominatives in -is and -es are easily distinguished.

Consonant stems in -is and -es increase in the Genitive; but vowel stems in i do not increase in the Genitive, as:

Consonant: lapis, stone; Genitive, lapid-is. miles, soldier; Genitive, milit-is.

Vowel: civis, citizen. civis. nūbēs, cloud. nūbis.

59.

Sing.—N. colli-s, hill. turri-s, tower. vulpēs, fox. mare, sea. animal, living being
G. collii, turris,
D. collī, turri,
Ac. collem, turrem (turri-m),
V. collis, turris,
Abl. colle, turre (turri),

Plur.—N. colles, towers. vulpēs, mari-a, animāli-a.
G. collium, turri-um,
D. collibus, turri-bus,
Ac. collēs, turrēs,
V. collis, turrēs,
Abl. collibus, turrī-bus.

Remarks.—1. In Genitive Plural, -um instead of -ium.

Always in: juvenis, young; senex, old; canis, dog; vātēs, bard struēs, heap; pānis, bread.

Usually in: apis, bee; sēdēs, seat; volucris, bird.
2. The Genitive Plural in -ium occurs in the apparently consonant stems: imber, rain-storm; üter, bottle; venter, belly; linter, skiff; which form the Nominative without s, dropping the i, and inserting e. Genitive, ímbris, útris, ventris, lintris. All are masculine, except linter, which is feminine.

3. Under the vowel stems in -i are sometimes classed those mute stems which take -ium in the Gen. Plural; urbi-um, monti-um. See 54, R.

60. Observations.—Several stems in i, with Nominative in -is, have Accusative and Ablative Singular and Accusative Plural in -im, i, is, respectively:

1. The Accusative Plural in -is occurs, side by side with -ēs:
In all vowel stems in i, which have Nominative Singular in -is;
In mute stems, which have Genitive Plural in -ium.

2. The Accusative Singular in -im is used:

a. Always in names of towns and rivers in ĭs, as, Neāpolis, Accusative, Neāpolim; Tiberis, Accusative, Tiberim; and in vis, force; sītīs, thirst; tussīs, cough.

b. Usually in secūris, axe; febris, fever; puppis, poop; turris, tower.

3. The Ablative Singular in ĭ is used:

a. In all nouns which have Accusative Singular invariably in -im, and in ignīs, fire, in the phrases, ferrō ignīque, aquā et ignī interdīcere. Nouns which have Accusative in -im or -ēm have Ablative in ĭ or ĕ.

b. In the neuter vowel stems, which have Nominative in ĕ, āl, ār. Names of cities in ĭe have Ablative also in -e, as, Praeneste, Genitive, Praenestis.

c. In the adjective vowel stems of the Third Declension, as, facīlis, easy; Ablative, facīli; ācer, sharp; Ablative, acri.

Remark.—So also the adjectives of this class, when used as substantives by ellipsis: annālis (sc. liber, book), chronicle; nātālis (sc. diēs, day), birthday; Aprilīs (sc. mēnis, month), and all the other months of the Third Declension: Ablative, annālī, nātālī, Aprilī, Septembri, etc.

Exceptions.—Juvenis, young man; and aedilīs, aedile; Ablative, juvene, aedile. Adjectives used as proper nouns have generally Ablative in -e, as, Juvenālīs; Ablative, Juvenāle.

61. Rule of Gender.—1. Of stems in i, Nominative in -is, some are masculine, some feminine.

Masculine are:

| Amnis, axis, callīs, crīnis, | Postis, scrobīs, būris, collīs, |
| Cassis, caulis, fascīs, finīs, | Sentīs, torquīs, atque follīs, |
| Fūnis, fustīs, ignīs, ensīs, | Torris, unguīs et annālīs, |
| Orbis, pānīs, piscīs, mensīs, | Vectīs, vermis et canālīs. |
Third Declension.

amnis, river.  collis, hill.  fustis, cudgel.  sentis, bramble.
axis, axle.  crinis, hair.  ignis, fire.  scrobis, ditch.
būris, plough-tail.  ensis, glaive.  mensis, month.  torquis, necklace.
callis, footpath.  fascis, fagot.  orbis, circle.  torris, fire-brand.
canālis, canal.  finis, end.  pānis, bread.  unguis, nail.
cassēs, (pl.) toils.  follis, bellows.  piscis, fish.  vectis, lever.
caulis, stalk.  fūnis, rope.  postis, door-post.  vermis, worm.

Callis, finis, scrobis, torquis, are used also as feminines.

Other nouns in -is, and all in -ēs, are feminine. Veprés, bramble, is usually masculine.

2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in -e, -al, -ar, are neuter.

Remark.—Of the names of animals in -is, some are masculine; tigris, tiger; canis, dog; piscis, fish; others feminine: apis, bee; avis, bird; ovis, sheep; fēlis, cat (usually fēlēs).

2. Vowel Stems in u.

62. Of stems in u, only the monosyllabic belong to the Third Declension.

grūs, crane (fem.).

SING.—N. grūs  PLUR.—gru-ēs
G. gruis  gru-um
D. grūi  gru-ibus
Ac. gru-em  gru-ēs
V. grūs  gru-ēs
Abl. gru-e  gru-ibus.

Sūs, swine, commonly fem., usually subus, in D. and Abl. Plural.

Table of Nominative and Genitive Endings of the Third Declension.

A * before the ending denotes that it occurs only in the one word cited.

63. a. Nominatives ending with a liquid.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-al</td>
<td>-ālis</td>
<td>animal.</td>
<td>animal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āl</td>
<td>-ālis</td>
<td>Hannibal, proper name.</td>
<td>Hannibal, proper name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āl *-ālis</td>
<td>salt.</td>
<td>-ēr *-āris</td>
<td>fär, spekt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēl</td>
<td>-ellis</td>
<td>mel.</td>
<td>honey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-il</td>
<td>-illis</td>
<td>pugil.</td>
<td>boxer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēl *-ēlis</td>
<td>Tanaquil, proper name.</td>
<td>-ōr *-ēris</td>
<td>ver. spring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōl</td>
<td>-ōlis</td>
<td>sōl, the sun.</td>
<td>-ōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ul</td>
<td>-ulis</td>
<td>consul, consul.</td>
<td>*-ordis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēn</td>
<td>-ēnis</td>
<td>rēn, kidney.</td>
<td>-ūr *-ūris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-ēnis</td>
<td>nōmen, name.</td>
<td>-ēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ăr</td>
<td>-āris</td>
<td>calcar, spur.</td>
<td>-ūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ar</td>
<td>-āris</td>
<td>nectar, nectar.</td>
<td>-ūr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 64. B. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH S, OR A COMPOUND OF S (GS, CS), X:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>*ātis aetās, age.</td>
<td>-aēs</td>
<td>*audis aetās, age.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*āsis</td>
<td>vās, dish.</td>
<td>*aēsis</td>
<td>vās, dish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>*āris mās, male.</td>
<td>-aēs</td>
<td>*aēris mās, male.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*āsis</td>
<td>ēs,</td>
<td>-aēsis</td>
<td>ēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ādis</td>
<td>vās,</td>
<td>-aēdis</td>
<td>vās,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ātis</td>
<td>anās, duck.</td>
<td>*aētis</td>
<td>anās, duck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ētis quās, rest.</td>
<td>-aēs</td>
<td>-aētis quās, rest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ētis segoes, crop.</td>
<td>-aēs</td>
<td>-aētis segoes, crop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ētis miles, soldier.</td>
<td>-aēs</td>
<td>-aētis miles, soldier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ētis amnis, river.</td>
<td>-aēs</td>
<td>-aētis amnis, river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ētis lapis, stone.</td>
<td>-aēs</td>
<td>-aētis lapis, stone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ētis cinis, ashes.</td>
<td>-aēs</td>
<td>-aētis cinis, ashes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ētis sanguis, blood.</td>
<td>-aēs</td>
<td>-aētis sanguis, blood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>*ātis līs,</td>
<td>*-ātis līs,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ēris</td>
<td>glīs, dormouse.</td>
<td>*-ēris</td>
<td>glīs, dormouse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td>*ōtis custōs, keeper.</td>
<td>-āōs</td>
<td>*ātis custōs, keeper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōtis</td>
<td>ostēs,</td>
<td>-aōtis</td>
<td>ostēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td>-ōtis flōs, flower.</td>
<td>-aōs</td>
<td>-aōtis flōs, flower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ōvis</td>
<td>bōs, ox.</td>
<td>*-ōvis</td>
<td>bōs, ox.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td>-ōtis compositus, compound of.</td>
<td>-aōs</td>
<td>-aōtis compositus, compound of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ōsis</td>
<td>os, bone.</td>
<td>*-ōsis</td>
<td>os, bone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ūtis intercus, under the skin.</td>
<td>-aūs</td>
<td>-aūtis intercus, under the skin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ūtis pecūs, cattle, sheep.</td>
<td>-aūs</td>
<td>-aūtis pecūs, cattle, sheep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ūtis scelus, crime.</td>
<td>-aūs</td>
<td>-aūtis scelus, crime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ūtis sūs, swine.</td>
<td>-aūs</td>
<td>-aūtis sūs, swine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>*-ūtis jūs, right.</td>
<td>-aūs</td>
<td>*-ātis jūs, right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>*-ūtis incūs, auricular.</td>
<td>-aūs</td>
<td>*-ātis incūs, auricular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūtis</td>
<td>salūs, well.</td>
<td>*-ātis salūs, well.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 65. C. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A MUTE.

- *ac | *-acis lac, milk.
- *ēc | *-ēcis alēc, pickle.
- *ut | *-ītis caput, head.
66. D. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A VOWEL.

-ė 
-ōnis 
-onis 
-inis 
*-nis

marē, sea.
pāvo, peacock.
Saxō, Saxōn.
homo, man.
caro, flesh.

FORTH DECLENSSION.

67. The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in u.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the u of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long, as fructū-īs becomes fructūs, of fruit; fructū-e becomes fructū, from fruit; fructū-ēs becomes fructūs, fruits. This u, on the contrary, is lost before the ending -ibus in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has the ending m, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in -im of the stems in i), hence u-m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.-N. fructūs, fruit.</td>
<td>Pl. fructūs, cornū, horn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fructūs,</td>
<td>fructū-um, cornūs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fructū-i (fructū),</td>
<td>fructibus, cornū-a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. fructū-m,</td>
<td>fructūs, cornūs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. fructus,</td>
<td>fructibus, cornū,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. fructū,</td>
<td>cornūs,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remarks.—1. Dative and Ablative Plurals in -ubus occur in nouns in -cus, and in tribus, tribe; artus, joint; partus, childbirth; portus, harbor; vinus, fold.

2. Domus, house, Ablative Singular, domō; Genitive Plural, domuērum; Accusative Plural, domūs and domōs. Domī (a locative form) means, at home.

68. Rule of Gender.—Nouns in -us are masculine; those in -ū are neuter.

Exceptions.—Feminines are idūs, pl., the 15th day of the month, tribū, tribe, porticus, piazza, acūs, needle, manus, hand, domūs, house.
FIFTH DECISION.

69. The stem ends in e. Nominative in s.

MASCULINE.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>GENITIVE</th>
<th>DATIVE</th>
<th>ABLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.-N.</td>
<td>diē-s, day</td>
<td>diē-rum,</td>
<td>diē-bus,</td>
<td>diē-bus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>diē-ī,</td>
<td>diē-rum,</td>
<td>diē-bus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>diē-ī,</td>
<td>diē-bus,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>diē-m,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>diē-s,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diē,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FEMININE.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>GENITIVE</th>
<th>DATIVE</th>
<th>ABLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING. rē-s, thing</td>
<td>rē-s,</td>
<td>rē-s,</td>
<td>rē-s,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. rē-s.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remarks.—1. The Plural is used throughout in three words only: rēs, thing; diēs, day; and in later Latin, speciēs, appearance. In some words, only Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural occur; others have no Plural at all.

2. The stem-characteristic e, in the Genitive and Dative Singular, is long after a vowel and short after a consonant, as speciēs, Genitive speciēi; rēs, thing, Genitive reī; fidēs, faith, Genitive fidei.

3. Some nouns of the Fifth Declension have a secondary form, which follows the First Declension, as mollitēs, softness, and mollitia. Where the double form exists, only Nominative, Accusative, and Ablative Singular commonly follow the Fifth Declension.

70. Rule of Gender.—Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except diēs (which in the Singular is of the common gender, and in the Plural masculine), and the masculine meridiēs, mid-day.

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

71. Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side.

72. SINGULAR FORMS OF GREEK NOUNS.
GREEK NOUNS.

II. N. Panthūs, Androgeōs (us), Athōs, Orphēus, Solōn, Solo,
G. Panthi, Androgei, Athō, önis, Orphei (ei), Solōnis,
D. Panthō, Androgeō, Athō, Öna, Orpheō, Solōnī.
Ac. Panthún, Androgeōn, Athō, ön, önum, Ophthalmum (ea), Solōna (em),
N. Panthū, Androgeōs, Athōs, Orphēū, Solōn.
Abl. Panthō, Androgeō, Athōne.

II. III. III.

N. Ādr, air. Xenophōn, Atlās, Thalēs, Paris.
G. Āeis, Xenophontis, Atlantis, Thalēsis, is, Paridis, os.
D. Āē, Xenophonti, Atlantī, Thalēna, i, Parīdi, ī.
Ac. Āera (em), Xenophōnta Atlanta, Thalēna, ēn, em, Parīda, im, in.
Abl. Āere. Xenophōnte. Atlante, Thalē, Paride.

N. Oedere, Achillēs, eus, Socratēs, Didō, hērōs.
G. Oedipodīs, Ī, Achillis, ei, ī, Socratis, ī, Didūs, önis, hērōis.
D. Oedipodī, Achillī, Socratī, Didō, öni, hērōi.
Ac. Oedipum (oda), Achillem, ea, Socratēn, em, Didō, önem, hērōa, em.
V. Oedepe, Achillēs, ē, ēu, Socratē (es), Didō, hērōs.

Remarks.—1. Many other forms are found, for which the dictionaries must be consulted. So poēsis, G. poēsis, eōs, D. poēsi, Acc. poēsin, poesy. Many of them are transliterations of Greek words, quoted as Greek.
2. In transferring Greek nouns into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem.

So κρατήρ, Acc. κρατήρα, (punch) bowl.
crātēr, crātēris (masc.), and crātēra (crāterra) crātērae (fem.)
Σαλαμίς, Acc. Σαλαμίνα, Salamis.
Salamis, Salaminis, and Salamīna, ae.

73. PLURAL FORMS OF GREEK NOUNS.

N. Pl. -oe : canēphoroe, basket-bearers.
-ē : epē, epic poetry.
-ēs : Arcadēs, Arcadians. How often in prose we cannot tell.

G. Pl. -ōn : Geōrgeticōn, of the Georgies.
-eōn : Metamorphōseōn, of the Metamorphoses.
D. Pl. -sī : Lēmniasī (rare), to the Lemnian women.
Acc. Pl. -ās : Macedonas. Common even in words that are not Greek: Allobrogas.
IRREGULAR NOUNS.

74.
I. Redundant Nouns.

ABUNDANTIA.

A. Different genders in the same declension:

- baculus, baculum, staff.
- balteus, balteum, sword-belt.
- clipeus, clipeum, shield.
- calamister, calamistrum, curling-iron.

B. Change of declension:

1. 1st and 2d.
   - esseda, ae, essedum, i, war-chariot, gig.
   - vespera, ae, vesper, i, evening.

2. 1st and 5th.
   - dāritia, ae, dāritēs, hardness.
   - māteria, ae, māterēs, stuff.

3. 2d and 5th.
   - dīluvium, i, dīlūviēs, flood.

4. 2d and 4th.
   - ēventum, ē, ēventus, ēs, issue.

5. 3d and 4th.
   - plēbs, is, plēbēs, ef, commons.
   - tribānus plēbī, tribune of the people.

6. 3d and 2d.
   - imbēcillis, imbēcillus, weak.

And a few others (adjectives).

II. Defective Nouns.

1. Nouns Defective in Number.

A. Nouns used in Singular only: Singulāria tantum.

Most abstract nouns, and names of materials:

- justitia, justice,
- aurum, gold.

B. Nouns used in Plural only: Plūrālia tantum.

- angustiae, straits
- arma, ēorum, arms
- bīgæae, quadrīgæae, two-horse, four-horse chariot,
- cassēs, īum, toils (snare),
- cerviēs, um, neck (preferred to cervix),
- divitiae, riches,
- epulae (epulum), banquet,
- forēs, um, f, door,
- habēnae, reins,
- indūtiae, truce.


- ambāgēs, -um, round about,
- compēdēs, -ium, fetters,

These four have the Ablative Singular in -e: ambāge, compede, fauce, prece.

Akin to Plūrālia tantum are:

C. Nouns used in Plural with a special sense: Heterologa.

- aedēs, is, temple,
- auxilium, help,
- castrum, fort,
- aedēs, ium, house, palace,
- auxilia, auxiliaries, reinforcements,
- castra, camp.
cōpia, abundance, cōpiae, forces, troops.
finis, end, limit, finēs, territory, borders.
litera, letter (of the alphabet), literae, epistle, literature.
opera, work, operaee, workmen.

76. 2. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN CASE.
A. Used only in Nominative and Accusative Singular: fās, right, nefās, wrong, and Greek Neuters in -os.
B. In Ablative Singular: sponte, of free will, and many verbals in ū: promptū, in readiness; jussū, by order; monitū, by advice.
C. In the oblique cases the forms from:
(daps), f., feast, S. and Pl. (ops), f., help (No Dat.), S. and Pl.
(dicēo), f., sway, S. (vix), f., change (No Dat.), S. and Pl.
(frūx), f., fruit, S. and Pl.
D. The Genitive Plural of many monosyllabic words does not occur:
cōs, whetstone, lūx, light, ēs, mouth.
vis, force: G. and D. are wanting; Ac. vim; Abl. vi. Pl. vīrēs, virium, viribus.
nēmo, nobody: G. nullīus hominis; D. nēmini; Ac. nēminem; Abl. nullō homine.

77. III. VARIABLE NOUNS.
A. Heteroclites: Different stems with the same Nominative.
domus (domu- and domo); Abl. domō; Pl. G. domuum, domōrum; Acc. domus and domōs.
pecus (pseud- and pecor-), pecudis, sheep; pecoris, cattle.

ficus, fig-tree; laurus, bay-tree; pīnus, pine-tree; are declined regularly according to the Second Declension, but have secondary forms in use from the Fourth Declension in the Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

senātus, senate; G. senātus or senāti (rare).
requīs, -ētis, f.: Ac. requītem and requiem, rest.
famēs, -is; Abl. famē and famē, hunger.
satrapēs, G. satrapae and satrapis; D. satrapae, &c., Persian governor.

78. B. Heterogeneous Nouns have the same stem with different gender in Singular and Plural:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>frēnum, bridle.</td>
<td>frēni, and frēna.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jocus, jest.</td>
<td>joci, and joca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locus, place.</td>
<td>loci, localities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rāstrum, mattock.</td>
<td>rāstrī, and rāstra.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

79. C. Metaplasts are nouns which have isolated cases from another than the Nominative stem:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vās, vāsīs, n., vessel.</td>
<td>Pl. vāsa, vāsōrum. vāsīs (as if from vāso-).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poēma, poēmatis, n., poem.</td>
<td>Pl. poēmata, poēmatum. ibus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. poēmatōrum,</td>
<td>d. poēmatis (as if from poēmato-).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So all Greek nouns in -a, -atis.

Bacchānālia, -ium (-iōrum), -ibus, feast of Bacchus.
So several other names of feasts in -ia.

80. IV. Peculiarities.

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

81. The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.
Most of the adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in i. They form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in s; but the neuter Nominative weakens the characteristic i into e. (Compare mare, sea.)

Adjectives of Two Endings.

82. Several stems in i, preceded by r (cr, tr, br), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing s, but by dropping the i and inserting e short before the r, as, stem acri, sharp, Nom. Masc. ācer, Nom. Fem. ācris. (Compare 60, 3 c.)

The e belongs to the stem only in celer, celeris, celere, swift.
ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.—N.</td>
<td>facili-s, easy.</td>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>ácer,</td>
<td>ácri-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>facilis,</td>
<td>ácris,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>facili,</td>
<td>ácri,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>facilem,</td>
<td>ácrem,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>facilis,</td>
<td>ácer,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>facili,</td>
<td>ácri,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plur.—N. faciles, facile-a, ácres, ácri-a.

G. facili-um, ácri-um, ácri-bus.

D. facili-bus, ácri-bus.

Ac. facili-s, ácres, ácri-a.

V. faciles, ácres, ácri-a.

Abl. facili-bus.

83. The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—N.</td>
<td>felix, lucky</td>
<td>felix,</td>
<td>prudens, wise, prudens,</td>
<td>prudens,</td>
<td>vetus, old, vetus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>felic-is,</td>
<td>prudent-is,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>felic-i,</td>
<td>prudent-i,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>felic-em,</td>
<td>prudent-em, prudens,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>felix,</td>
<td>prudens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>felici (and -e),</td>
<td>prudenti (and e),</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—N.</td>
<td>felic-es, felicia</td>
<td>prudent-ès, prudentia,</td>
<td>prudens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>felic-i-um,</td>
<td>prudenti-um,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>felic-ibus,</td>
<td>prudent-ibus,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>felic-ès, felicia</td>
<td>prudent-ès, prudentia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>felic-ès, felicia</td>
<td>prudent-ès, prudentia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>felic-ibus,</td>
<td>prudent-ibus,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

84. Adjective stems of one ending close with l, r, s, or a p, k, or t mute.

vigil. alert, memor. mindful, pauper. poor, cicur. tame, pūbēs, adult, vetus. old.
vigil-is, memori-is. Abl. I (e).

partic. sharing, caeleb-s. unmarried, inop-s. poor.
partic. Abl. e.

audax. bold, felix. lucky, duplex. double, ferōx. fierce, trux. savage,
audaci-s. felic-is. duplic-is. ferōc-is. truc-is.
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

dives, rich, déses, slothful, compos, possessed of, prudens, wise, concors, harmonious.
divit is, désid-is, compot-is, prudent-is, concord-is.
Abl. e. Abl. e. Abl. e. Abl. e.

85. Observations.—The adjectives of one ending, including the present participle, follow in part the declension of vowel stems:

1. In the neuter Plural they have -ia; only vetus, old, has vëtera. Many have no neuter.

2. In the Ablative Singular they have i and e—when used as adjectives commonly i; when used as substantives commonly e.

   The participles, as such, have e; but used as nouns or adjectives, either e or i, with tendency to i.

3. In the Genitive Plural the consonant-stems have: -ium, when the characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; -um, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel, as:

   audâx, bold, prudens, wise. Samnîtës, Samnites.
adácium, prudentium, Samnítium.
supplex, supplânt, dives, rich. Supplex, Samnites.
supplicum, divitum or dítum.

   Exce$$tions occur, as:

   multiplex, manifold, multiplicium. Phoenîcës, Phoenicians, Phoenicum.

   The participles have -ium; as, amans, loving, amantium.

   Used as nouns, they have sometimes -um, as:

   sapiens, a sage, sapientum. parens, a parent, parentum.

4. Compound adjectives follow the declension of the word from which they are formed, as:

   concors, harmonious, anceps, double, quadrupês, four-footed,
   concordum, ancipitum, quadrupedum.

   Even these, however, have the neuter plural commonly in -ia, as, ancipítia, quadrupedia.

Comparison of Adjectives.

86. The Degrees of comparison are: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.
The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings -ior for the masculine and feminine, and -ius for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings -issimus, -a, -um.

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus, -a, -um, high</td>
<td>alt-ior, higher</td>
<td>alt-ius, alt-issimus, a, um, highest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, -e, brave</td>
<td>fort-ior</td>
<td>fort-ius, fort-issimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utilis, -e, useful</td>
<td>util-ior</td>
<td>util-ius, util-issimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audax, bold</td>
<td>audac-ior</td>
<td>audac-ius, audac-issimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prudens, wise</td>
<td>prudent-ior</td>
<td>prudent-ius, prudent-issimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

87. Sing.—N.
M. and F. | N.
--- | ---
altior | altius |
G. altioris | altioris |
D. altiori | altiori |
Ac. altiorem | altius |
V. altior | altius |
Abl. altiore and -i | altiore and -i |

Plur.—N.
M. and F. | N.
--- | ---
altioris | altiora |
G. altiorum | altiorum |
D. altioribus | altioribus |
Ac. altioris | altiora |
V. altioris | altiora |
Abl. altioribus, altioribus |

Peculiarities.

88. 1. Adjectives in -er add the Superlative ending -rimus directly to the Nominative Masculine (-rimus for -simus by assimilation).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miser, -a, -um, wretched</td>
<td>miser-ior, miser-ius</td>
<td>miser-riatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celer, -is, -e, swift</td>
<td>celer-ior, celer-ius</td>
<td>celer-riatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acer, acris, acre, sharp</td>
<td>acer-ior, acer-ius</td>
<td>acer-riatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus, old</td>
<td>veterior, vetustior</td>
<td>veter-riatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maturus, ripe, sometimes maturrimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Six adjectives in -ilis add -limus to the stem, after dropping -i, to form the Superlative: perhaps by assimilation.

facilis, easy; difficilis, hard; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; gracilis, slender; and humilis, low.

facilis, Comp. facil-ior, Sup. facil-limus (for facil-simus).
3. The adjectives in *dicus, ficus, volus*, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in *-dicens, -ficens*, and *-volens*.

-benevolus, benevolent, Comp. benevolentior, Sup. benevolentissimus.
maleolus, scurrilus, maledicentior, maledicientissimus.

In like manner:

*egēnus*, needy, *egentior*, egentissimus.
*prōvidus*, far-sighted, *prōvidentior*, prōvidentissimus.

4. Adjectives in *-us*, preceded by a vowel, form the Comparative and Superlative by means of *magis* and *maxime*, more and most:

-idoneus, Comp. magis idoneus, Sup. maxime idoneus.

Remark.—Adjectives in *-quus* are not included under this last rule.

*añtiqus*, old, Comp. antiq-ius, Sup. antiq-issimus.

**Irregular Comparison.**

| bonus | good | melior, melius, optimus |
| malus | bad  | pējor, pējus, pessimus |
| magnum | great | mājor, mājus, maximus |
| parvus | small | minor, minus, minimus |
| multus | much | Pl. plūrēs, complūrēs, plūrēs, G. Pl. plūrium |
| nēquam | worthless | nēquior, nēquis, nēquissimus |
| frugāl (indecl.) frugal | frugālior, frugālissimus |

Remarks.—1. Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

dēterior, worse, dēterrimus.
ūcior, swifter, ūcissimus.
potior, better, potissimus.

exterior, outer, extrēmus, extimus, from *exterus, on the outside*, and prep. extrā. without.
superior, upper, suprēmus, or summus, from *superus, on the top*, and prep. suprā. above.
inferior, lower, infimus, from *inferus, below*, prep. infrā, below.
posterior, hinder, later, postrēmus and postumus, from *posterus, coming after*, and prep. post, after.

2. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is met with only in a preposition or an adverb: as, ante, before; anterior, that is before; prope, near; propior, proximus; citerior, on this side; citimus, from *citrā, ul-terior, further; ultimus, from *ultrā, beyond*, interior, inner; intimus, from *intus, within*; prior, former; primus, first, from prae, before.

3. Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison.

Diversus, different, novus, new, falsus, untrue, meritus, deserved, have no Comparative.

Longinquus, afar, propinquus, near, salūtāris, healthful, juvenis, young (Comparative *jūniōr*, and senex, old (Comparative *seniōr*), have no superlative.

"Youngest" and "oldest" are expressed by *minimus, maximus* (nātā).
ADVERBS.

90. Adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of the adjectives.

1. Adjectives in -us and -er form the adverb in ē (mutilated Ablative).

altus, lofty, altē. pulcher, beautiful, pulchrē. miser, wretched, miserē.

2. The adjectives of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding -ter to the stem; stems in -nt dropping the t, and stems in a K-mute inserting the connecting vowel i before the ending.

fortis, brave, fortiter. ferōx, wild, ferōciter. prūdens, foreseeing, prūdenter.

Exceptions:

audāx, bold, audāc-ter (seldom audāciter). difficilis, hard to do, difficulter and difficiliter.

But instead of these, generally, nōn facile, vīx, aegrē.

3. The Ablative of some adjectives serves as an adverb:

tūtōs, safe, tūtō; falsō, falsely; perpetuō, ceaselessly; continuō, forthwith; imprōvisō, unexpectedly; primō, at first.

consultē and consultō, purposely; certē, at least, and certō, certainly.

rārē, thinly, and rārō, seldom; vērē, in truth, and vērō, true but.

rectē, correctly, and rectā, straightway; dexterā or dextrā, to the right, and dextere, skillfully.

sinistrā and laevā, to the left hand.

4. The Accusative neuter of many adjectives is used as an adverb. This is true of all Comparatives.

Multum, much; paulum, a little; nimium, too much; cēterum, for the rest; primum, first; postrēmum, finally; potissimum, chiefly; facile, easily; dulce, sweetly; triste, sadly; impūne, scot-free.

91. Comparison of Adverbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altē, lofty</td>
<td>altēus</td>
<td>altissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchrē, beautifully</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē, poorly</td>
<td>miserius</td>
<td>miserrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiter, bravely</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāc-ter, boldly</td>
<td>audācius</td>
<td>audācissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūtō, safely</td>
<td>tūtius</td>
<td>tūtissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilē, easily</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene, well</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male, ill</td>
<td>pējus</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[parvus], small</td>
<td>minus, less</td>
<td>minimē, least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[magnus], great</td>
<td>magis, more</td>
<td>maximē, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum, much</td>
<td>plús, more</td>
<td>plurimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cito, quickly</td>
<td>citius</td>
<td>citissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diā, long</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>diūtissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe, often</td>
<td>saepius</td>
<td>saepissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūper, recently</td>
<td>satius, better</td>
<td>nūperrimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NUMERALS.

92. The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: unus, seu, duo, two, tres, three, the hundreds beginning with ducenti, vo hundred, and the plural milia, thousands, which forms illium and milius.

Like duo is declined ambo, -ae, -o, both.

93. 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.  2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1  I  unus, una, unum  primus, -a, -um (prior).
2  II  duo, duae, duo  secundus (alter).
3  III  tres, tria  tertius
4  IV  quattuor  quartus
5  V  quinque  quintus
6  VI  sex  sextus
7  VII  septem  septimus
8  VIII  octo  octavus
9  IX  novem  nonus
10 X  decem  decimus
11 XI undecim undecimus
12 XII duodecim duodecimus
13 XIII tredecim tertius decimus
14 XIV quattuordecim quartus decimus
15 XV quindecim quintus decimus
16 XVI sexdecim sextus decimus
17 XVII septendecim septimus decimus
18 XVIII duodeviginti duodévicensimis
19 XIX undeviginti undévicensimis
20 XX viginti vicësimus
21 XXI viginti unus vicësimus primus
22 XXII viginti duo vicësimus secundus
23 XXIII viginti tres vicësimus tertius
24 XXIV viginti quattuor vicësimus quartus
25 XXV viginti quinque vicësimus quintus
26 XXVI viginti sex vicësimus sextus
1. **Cardinal Numerals.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Roman Numeral</th>
<th>Latin Numeral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>decem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>XL</td>
<td>quadraginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>quinquaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>LX</td>
<td>sexaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>LXX</td>
<td>septuaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>LXXX</td>
<td>octoginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>XC</td>
<td>nonaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>CI</td>
<td>centum et unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>CX</td>
<td>centum et decem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>CXV</td>
<td>centum et quindecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>CXX</td>
<td>centum et viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>CXXI</td>
<td>centum et viginti unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>CC</td>
<td>ducenti, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>trecenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>CCCC</td>
<td>quadringenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>D (IΩ)</td>
<td>quingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>DC</td>
<td>sexcenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>DCC</td>
<td>septingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>DCCC</td>
<td>octingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>DCCCC</td>
<td>nonagenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>M (IΩ)</td>
<td>mille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>MI</td>
<td>mille et unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101</td>
<td>MCI</td>
<td>mille centum unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1120</td>
<td>MCXX</td>
<td>mille centum viginti unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1131</td>
<td>MCXXI</td>
<td>mille centum viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>MCC</td>
<td>mille ducenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>MM</td>
<td>duo milia (millia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2222</td>
<td></td>
<td>duo milia ducenti viginti duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000</td>
<td>IΩ</td>
<td>quinque milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>CCIΩ</td>
<td>decem milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>dēna milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>cen tum milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>decies centena milia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Ordinal Numerals.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Roman Numeral</th>
<th>Latin Numeral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>primus</td>
<td>primus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>duodenum</td>
<td>duodenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tertia</td>
<td>tertia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>quattuor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>quinque</td>
<td>quinque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>septem</td>
<td>septem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>octo</td>
<td>octo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>novem</td>
<td>novem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>decem</td>
<td>decem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>undecim</td>
<td>undecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>duodecim</td>
<td>duodecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>trecdecim</td>
<td>trecdecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>quattuadecim</td>
<td>quattuadecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>sexdecim</td>
<td>sexdecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>septendecim</td>
<td>septendecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>octodecim</td>
<td>octodecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>novemdecim</td>
<td>novemdecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>viginti</td>
<td>viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>duoviginti</td>
<td>duoviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>triviginti</td>
<td>triviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>quattuoviginti</td>
<td>quattuoviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>quinquaviginti</td>
<td>quinquaviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>sexaviginti</td>
<td>sexaviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>septuaviginti</td>
<td>septuaviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>octoviginti</td>
<td>octoviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>nonoviginti</td>
<td>nonoviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>duotriginta</td>
<td>duotriginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>tertriginta</td>
<td>tertriginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>quattuotriginta</td>
<td>quattuotriginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>quinquatriginta</td>
<td>quinquatriginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>sexatriginta</td>
<td>sexatriginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>septuatriginta</td>
<td>septuatriginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>octotriginta</td>
<td>octotriginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>nonotriginta</td>
<td>nonotriginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>quadragesim</td>
<td>quadragesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>duoquadragesim</td>
<td>duoquadragesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>tertquadragesim</td>
<td>tertquadragesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>quattuorquadragesim</td>
<td>quattuorquadragesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>quinquaquadragesim</td>
<td>quinquaquadragesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>sexaquadragesim</td>
<td>sexaquadragesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>septuaquadragesim</td>
<td>septuaquadragesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>octaquadragesim</td>
<td>octaquadragesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>nonaquadragesim</td>
<td>nonaquadragesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>quinquagesim</td>
<td>quinquagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>duoquinquagesim</td>
<td>duoquinquagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>tertquinquagesim</td>
<td>tertquinquagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>quattuorquinquagesim</td>
<td>quattuorquinquagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>quinquatquinquagesim</td>
<td>quinquatquinquagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>sexatquinquagesim</td>
<td>sexatquinquagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>septuatinquagesim</td>
<td>septuatinquagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>octatinquagesim</td>
<td>octatinquagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>nonatinquagesim</td>
<td>nonatinquagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>sexagesim</td>
<td>sexagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>sexualsexagesim</td>
<td>sexualsexagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>sextsexagesim</td>
<td>sextsexagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>septsexagesim</td>
<td>septsexagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>octosexagesim</td>
<td>octosexagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>nonosexagesim</td>
<td>nonosexagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>septuagesim</td>
<td>septuagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>sextuoseptuagesim</td>
<td>sextuoseptuagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>sexseptuagesim</td>
<td>sexseptuagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>septsexuagesim</td>
<td>septsexuagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>octosexuagesim</td>
<td>octosexuagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>nonosexuagesim</td>
<td>nonosexuagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>octogesim</td>
<td>octogesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>octuooctogesim</td>
<td>octuooctogesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>octooctogesim</td>
<td>octooctogesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>nontoctogesim</td>
<td>nontoctogesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>nonagesim</td>
<td>nonagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>nonuononagesim</td>
<td>nonuononagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>nonooononagesim</td>
<td>nonooononagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>ontuonnagesim</td>
<td>ontuonnagesim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>centenarius</td>
<td>centenarius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>centenum</td>
<td>centenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>centum et decem</td>
<td>centum et decem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>centum et viginti</td>
<td>centum et viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>centum et viginti unus</td>
<td>centum et viginti unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>centum et ducenti</td>
<td>centum et ducenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>centum et trecenti</td>
<td>centum et trecenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>centum et quadringenti</td>
<td>centum et quadringenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>centum et quingenti</td>
<td>centum et quingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>centum et sexcenti</td>
<td>centum et sexcenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>centum et septingenti</td>
<td>centum et septingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>centum et octingenti</td>
<td>centum et octingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>centum et nonagenti</td>
<td>centum et nonagenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>centum et mille</td>
<td>centum et mille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>centum et mille et unus</td>
<td>centum et mille et unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101</td>
<td>centum et mille centum unus</td>
<td>centum et mille centum unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1120</td>
<td>mille centum viginti unus</td>
<td>mille centum viginti unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1131</td>
<td>mille centum viginti</td>
<td>mille centum viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>mille ducenti</td>
<td>mille ducenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>duo milia (millia)</td>
<td>duo milia (millia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2222</td>
<td>duo milia ducenti viginti duo</td>
<td>duo milia ducenti viginti duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000</td>
<td>quinque milia</td>
<td>quinque milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>decem milia</td>
<td>decem milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21,000</td>
<td>cen tum milia</td>
<td>cen tum milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>centena milia</td>
<td>centena milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>decies centena milia</td>
<td>decies centena milia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NUMERALS.

Remark.—D is short for IO, M for CIO. Adding C on the right of I multiplies by 10: 
\[\text{C} = 5000; \text{CCI} = 50,000.\] Putting C before as often as \(C\) stands after multiplies by 2: 
\[\text{CCCI} = 10,000; \text{CCCI} = 100,000.\]

94. Compound Numerals.

1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately: _decem et tres._
2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, &c., are commonly expressed by subtraction; occasionally, as in English.
3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as in English: _twenty-one, viginti unus; or one and twenty, unus et viginti._ As 21 years old: _annis unus et viginti (viginti unus), unus et viginti annos natus._
4. From 100 on, _et_ is inserted after the first numeral, or omitted altogether: _mille et centum unus, or mille centum unus = 1101._

Cardinals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>21-27</th>
<th>viginti unus</th>
<th>or unus et viginti</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>centum et unus</td>
<td>centum unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>centum et viginti</td>
<td>centum viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>centum et viginti unus</td>
<td>centum viginti unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>mille et unus</td>
<td>mille unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101</td>
<td>mille et centum unus</td>
<td>mille centum unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1125</td>
<td>mille et centum viginti quinque</td>
<td>mille centum viginti quinque.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2222</td>
<td>duo milia et ducenti viginti duo</td>
<td>duo milia ducenti viginti duo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ordinals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13-17</th>
<th>tertius decimus</th>
<th>or decimus et tertius</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>duodevicesimus</td>
<td>octavus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>undevicesimus</td>
<td>nonus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>vicissimus primus</td>
<td>unus et vicissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>vicissimus secundus</td>
<td>alter et vicissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>vicissimus tertius</td>
<td>tertius et vicissimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

95. 3. Distributive Numerals.

| 1 | singuli, -ae, -a, one each. |
| 2 | bini, -ae, -a, two each. |
| 3 | terni |
| 4 | quaterni |
| 5 | quini |
| 6 | seni |
| 7 | septeni |
| 8 | octoni |
| 9 | noveni |
| 10 | deni |
| 11 | undeni |
| 12 | duodeni |
| 13 | terni deni | 14 | quaterni deni |
| 15 | quini deni |
| 16 | seni deni |
| 17 | septeni deni |
| 18 | octoni deni, duodetriceni |
| 19 | noveni deni, undetriceni |
| 20 | viceni |
| 21 | viceni singuli |
| 22 | viceni bini, bini et viceni |
| 28 | duodetriceni |
| 29 | undetriceni |
| 30 | triceni |
| 40 | quadrageni |
50 quinquagēnī | 60 sexāgēnī | 70 septuāgēnī | 80 octōgēnī | 90 nōnāgēnī | 100 cēntēnī | 200 ducēnī | 300 trecēnī | 400 quadringēnī | 500 quingēnī
600 sexcēnī | 700 septingēnī | 800 octingēnī | 900 nongēnī | 1000 singula milia

**Remarks.—**
1. The distributives are used with an exactness, which is foreign to our idiom, whenever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table. But when singuli is expressed, the cardinal may be used.
2. The distributives are used with Pluralia tantum: binae literae, two epistles. But with these unī is used for one, trīnī for three: unae literae, trīnae literae.
3. The poets occasionally use the distributives for cardinals.

4. **Multiplicative Numerals.**

| 1 | simplex, | single, |
| 2 | duplex, | double, |
| 3 | triplex, | triple, |
| 4 | quadruplex, |

These answer the question, *how many fold?*

5. **Proportional Numerals.**

| 1 | simplus, -a, -um, | single, |
| 2 | duplus, | double, |
| 3 | triplus, |

These answer the question, *how many times as great?*

**Remark.**—Only a few forms can be proved.

96. **Numeral Adverbs.**

| 1 | semel, | once, |
| 2 | bis, | twice, |
| 3 | ter |
| 4 | quater |
| 5 | quinquiēs, quinquīnēs |
| 6 | sexiēs |
| 7 | septiēs |
| 8 | octiēs |
| 9 | noviēs |
| 10 | deciēs |
| 11 | undeciēs |
| 12 | duodeciēs |
| 13 | ter deciēs, tredeciēs |
| 14 | quater deciēs, quattuordeciēs |
| 15 | quinquiēs deciēs, quindeciēs |
| 16 | sexiēs deciēs, sēdeciēs |
| 17 | septiēs deciēs |
| 18 | duodeviciēs, octiēs deciēs |
| 19 | undeviciēs, noviēs deciēs |
| 20 | viciēs |
| 21 | semel et viciēs, viciēs et semel, viciēs semel,* |

* Not semel viciēs, bis viciēs, etc., because that would be, once twenty times = times; twice twenty times = 40 times.
PRONOUNS.

97. Pronouns designate without describing.

Remark.—The pronoun is not a word used instead of a noun. The noun says too much, for all nouns (proper as well as common) are originally descriptive; the pronoun merely points out. The noun says too little, because it cannot express person, as ego, I, thou; it cannot express local appurtenance, as hic, this (here), ille, that (there).

98. A. Personal Pronouns.

I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.

SUBSTANTIVE. POSSESSIVE.

Sing.—N. ego, I, meus, -a, -um, mine or my.
G. mei, of me, Voc. (masc.), mi.
D. mihi, to, for me,
Ac. me, me,
Abl. me, from, with, by me.

Plur.—N. nos, we,
G. nostri, of us,
nostrum, noster, nostra, nostrum, our or ours.
D. nobis, to, for us,
Ac. nos, us,
Abl. nobis, from, with, by us.

II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

SUBSTANTIVE. POSSESSIVE.

Sing.—N. tu, thou,
G. tu, of thee,
D. tibi, to, for thee, tuus, a, um, thy or thine.
Ac. te, thee,
Abl. te, from, with, by thee.

* Not semel viciès, bis viciès, etc., because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times.
### Substantive Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur. — N.</th>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Possessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vōs, ye or you,</td>
<td>vester, vestra, vestrum, your or yours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestrum,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. vōbis, to, for you,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. vōs, you,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. vōbis, from, with, by you.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks.**
1. The forms of the Genitive Plural, nostrum and vestrum, are used as partitive genitives in reference to number.
2. From nōster and vester and also from cūjus, whose? (104) are formed the Gentile adjectives of one ending: nostrās, of our country; vestrās, of your country; cūjās, of whose country? Gen. nostrātīs, vestrātīs, cūjātīs.

### Personal Pronouns of the Third Person

100. The personal pronoun of the third person is represented by the determinative in the oblique cases, with special forms for the reflexive.

#### Determinative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing. — N.</th>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Possessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[is, ea, id], he, she, it,</td>
<td></td>
<td>(supplied by the genitive.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ējus, of him, etc.,</td>
<td>ējus, his, hers, its.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eī, to, for him,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eum, eam, id, him, her, it,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eō, eā, eō, from, with, by him, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur. — N.</th>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Possessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ēi, or ī, eae, ea], they,</td>
<td>eōrum, eārum, eōrum, their, or theirs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eōrum, eārum, eōrum, of them,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eīs, or īs, to, for them,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eōs, eās, ea, them,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eīs, or īs, from, with, by them.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Reflexive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing. — N.</th>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Possessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. suī, of him, her, it(self),</td>
<td>suus, -a, -um, his, her(s), its (own).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. sibī, to, for him(self), her(self),</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. sē (sēsē), him(self), her(self),</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. sē (sēsē), from, with, by him(self).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur. — N.</th>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Possessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. suī, of them(selves),</td>
<td>suus, -a, -um, their (own), theirs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. sibī, to, for them(selves),</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. sē (sēsē), them(selves),</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. sē (sēsē) from, with, by them(selves).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks.**
1. The enclitic -met may be added to all the forms of ego (except nostrum), to all the forms of tū (except tū and vestrum), to sibī, sē, and the forms of suus: egomet, I myself.
2. The enclitic -pte is joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessives; it is especially common with suūs; suūpē ingenīō, by his own genius.
3. From tū are formed tüte and tütemet.
101. B. Determinative Pronouns.

1. is, he, that, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. is, ea, id,</td>
<td>ei, or ii, eae, ea,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eijus,</td>
<td>eorum, eārum, eōrum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ei,</td>
<td>eis, or ii, eis, or ii,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eum, eam, id,</td>
<td>eōs, eās, ea,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eō, ea, eo,</td>
<td>eis, or ii, eis, or ii,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. idem, the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. idem, eadem, idem, eīdem, or īdem, eadem, eadem,</td>
<td>eadem, eadem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eijusdem,</td>
<td>eōrundem, eārundem, eōrundem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eīdem,</td>
<td>eīsdem, or īsdem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eundem, eandem, idem, eōsdem, eōsdem,</td>
<td>eāsdem, eadem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eōdem, eādem, eōdem. eīsdem, or īsdem.</td>
<td>eīsdem, eadem,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. ipse, he, self.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ipse, ipsa, ipsum, ipsī, ipsae, ipsa,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. iPSius,</td>
<td>ipsōrum, ipsārum, ipsōrum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ipsī,</td>
<td>ipsī,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ipsum, ipsam, ipsum, ipsōs, ipsās, ipsa,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. ipsō, ipsā, ipsō. ipsīs,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

102. C. Demonstrative Pronouns.

I. Demonstrative Pronoun for the First Person.

hic, this.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing. N.</th>
<th>Pl. N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hīc, haec, hōc,</td>
<td>hī, hae, naec, these,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. hūjus,</td>
<td>hōrum, hārum, hōrum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. huic,</td>
<td>his,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. hunc, hanc, hōc,</td>
<td>hōs, hās, haec,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. hōc, hāc, hōc,</td>
<td>his,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Second Person.

iste, that.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing. N.</th>
<th>Pl. N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iste, ista, istud,</td>
<td>istī, istae, ista,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. istīus,</td>
<td>istōrum, istārum, istōrum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. isti,</td>
<td>istīs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. istum, istam, istud,</td>
<td>istōs, istās, ista,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. istō, istā, istō.</td>
<td>istīs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE THIRD PERSON.

Sing. N. ille, illa, illud, Pl. N. illi, illae, illa,
G. illius,
D. illi,
Ac. illum, illam, illud,
Abl. illō, illā, illō.

Remarks.—1. Hic: the forms in -ce arise from the enclitic -ce. So hic, hunc, are found in older Latin; and -ci in the interrogative form with nē, hicine? This -ce is sometimes appended to the other forms: hujusce, hōsce.

2. Iste and Ille have, like hic, forms in -e, but only in Nom. Acc. Abl.

103. D. Relative Pronouns.

qui, who.

Sing. N. qui, quae, quod, Pl. N. qui, quae, quae,
G. cūjus, quōrum, quārum, quōrum,
D. cui, quibus,
Ac. quem, quam, quod, quōs, quās, quae,
Abl. quō, quā, quō.

Remarks.—veis, quis, is also found as a Plural Dat. Abl. The form qui is used as the Abl. Sing. quō, qua, quō, chiefly with -cum; quīcum for quōcunq, with whom. Qui, interrogative, means how.

General Relatives are:

Substantive. quisquis, whoever,
Adjective. quiqūi, quaeque, quodquod, quicumque.

104. E. Interrogative Pronouns.

Substantive. quis? who?
quid? what?
Adjective. qui? quae?
quod? which?
Subst. and Adj. uter?
utra? who, which of two?

Sing. N. quis? quid?
G. cūjus? whose?
D. cui? to, for whom?
Ac. quem? whom?
Abl. quō?

Remark.—The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative qui, quae, quod, who, which.

Strengthened Interrogatives.

Substantive. quisnam? who pray?
quidnam? what pray?
Adjective. quinam? quaenam? quodnam? which pray?
105. **F. Indefinite Pronouns.**

1. **Substantive.** aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, } somebody, some one or quis, qua, quid, } other.

   **Adjective.** aliqui, aliquae (or aliqua*), aliquod, } some, any.

   qui, quae (or qua*), quod,

2. quidam, quaedam, quiddam (and quoddam), a certain, certain one.

3. quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam (and quodpiam), some one, some.

4. quisquam, ———, quidquam, any one (at all). No plural.

5. qui vis, quaevis, quidvis (and quodvis), any one you please, quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (and quodlibet), you like.

6. quisque, quaque, quidque and quodque, each one.

   unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquidque and unumquodque, each one severally.

   The distinction between the substantive and adjective form is observed rigorously only in the neuter.

   **Remark.**—Quisquam is used only as a substantive, except with designations of persons; scriptor quisquam, any writer (at all), Gallus quisquam, any Gaul (at all).

   The corresponding adjective is ullus.

   ullus, -a, -um, any; nullus, -a, -um, no one, not one. The corresponding substantives are nemo (76), and nihil, which forms nihilī and nihilō (Abl.) only in certain combinations.

   nonnullus, -a, -um, some, many a.

   alius, -a, -ud, another; alter, -era, -erum, the other, one (of two); neuter, leutra, neutrum, neither of two.

   alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other of the two. Gen.

   alterutrus.

   (or alter uter, altera utra, alterum utrum. Gen. alterius utrius.)

   uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, either. ambo, -ae, -o, both.

   utervis, utravis, utrumvis, } whichever you please of the two.

   uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet,

---

**CORRELATIVES.**

106. **I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quis? who?</td>
<td>is, that</td>
<td>qui, who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quālis? of what kind? tālis, such (of that kind)</td>
<td>quālis, as (of which kind).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quantus? how much? tantus, so much,</td>
<td>quantus, as much,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quot? how many? tot, so many.</td>
<td>quot, as many.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* In neuter plural, aliquae or aliqua, quae or qua.
107. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

1. Pronominal adverbs of place.

ubi? where? ibi, there, ubi, where.
quā? where? which way? hīc, hāc, here, this way, quā, where, which way.

istīc, istāc, there, that way,
illic, illāc, there, yonder way.
unde? whence? inde, thence, unde, whence.
hinc, hence.
istīnc, thence.
illīnc, thence, from yonder.
hūc, hither.
istūc, thither.
illūc, thither, yonder.

2. Pronominal adverbs of time.

quandō? when? tum, then, quandō, quum.
tunc, at that time, quūm.
nunc, now.

quotiēs? how often? totiēs, so often, quotiēs, as often as.

3. Pronominal adverbs of manner.

quōmodo? qui? how? ita, sic, so, thus, ut, utī, as.
quam? how much? tam, so much, quam, as.

108. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become indefinite by prefixing ali-:
   aliquantus, somewhat great; aliquot, several, some; alicūbī, somewhere;
   alicunde, from somewhere; aliquandō, at some time.

2. The simple relatives become universal by doubling themselves, or by suffixing -cunque (cumque):
   quantuscunque, however great; quālis cuntque, of whatever kind; quot;
quot, however many; ubicunque, wheresoever; quandōcunque, whenever;
   quotiēscunque, however often; utut, in whatever way; utcunque, howse-
   ever; quamquam, however, although.

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with -vis or -libet:
   quantuslibet, quantusvis, as great as you please; ubivis, where you will
   quamvis, as you please, though.
THE VERB.

109. The Inflection given to the verbal stem is called Conjugation, and expresses:

1. Person and Number;
2. Voice—Active or Passive;
3. Tense—Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect;

110. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

111. The Inflection of the Verb is effected by means of—

1. Personal endings,
2. Connecting vowels,
3. Tense-signs.

1. The personal endings are pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice.

2. The connecting vowels are either euphonic or symbolic.

3. The tense-signs occur only in the compound tenses (weak tenses).

The compound or weak tenses are:

The Imperfect, Active and Passive. The Perfect in vi (ui) and si.
The Pluperfect Active. The Futures in -bo, -bor.

So in amā-ba-m, I loved, b is the tense-sign, a the connecting vowel, m the personal ending (comp. mē), 1st P. Singular Active.

Remarks.—1. The tense-signs are themselves auxiliary verbs, as: -r(əm) for -s(əm), from (e)s-(se); v(1), u(1) from fu(1); si from (e)s (se); -b(əm) -b(ə) from fu-(əm), fu(ə).
2. No adequate uniform translation can be given to all the moods and tenses. Especially is this true of the subjunctive. See Syntax.

Several parts of the verb are formed with the verb sum, I am.
### The Verb sum, I am (stem es-)

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. sum,</td>
<td>I am, sim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es,</td>
<td>thou art, sis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. est,</td>
<td>he, she, it is, sit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. sumus,</td>
<td>we are, sumus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. estis,</td>
<td>you are, sitis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sunt,</td>
<td>they are, sint,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

| Sing.—1. eram, | I was, essem, | I were (forem), |
| 2. erās, | thou wast, essēs, | thou wert (forēs), |
| 3. erot, | he was, essēt, | he were (foret), |
| Plur.—1. erāmus, | we were, essēmus, | we were, |
| 2. erātis, | you were, essētis, | you were, |
| 3. erant, | they were, essent, | they were (forent). |

#### Future

| Sing.—1. erō, | I shall be, |
| 2. eris, | thou wilt be, |
| 3. erit, | he will be, |
| Plur.—1. erimus, | we shall be, |
| 2. eritis, | you will be, |
| 3. erunt, | they will be, |

#### Perfect

| Sing.—1. fui, | I have been, I was, fuerim, | I have, may have, been, |
| 2. fuisti, | thou hast been, thou fueris, | thou have, mayest have, been, |
| 3. fuit, | he has been, he was, fuerit, | he have, may have, been. |
| Plur.—1. fuimus, | we have been, we fuerimus, | we have, may have, been, |
| 2. fuistis, | you have been, you fueritis, | you have, may have, been, |
| 3. fuērunt, | they have been, they fuerint, | they have, may have, been. |

#### Pluperfect

| Sing.—1. fueram, | I had been, fuissem, | I had, might have, been, |
| 2. fuerās, | thou hadst been, fuissēs, | thou hadst, mightst have, been, |
| 3. fuerat, | he had been, fuisset, | he had, might have, been. |
| Plur.—1. fuerāmus, we had been, fuissēmus, | we had, might have, been, |
| 2. fuerātis, you had been, fuissētis, | you had, might have, been, |
| 3. fuerant, they had been, fuissent, | they had, might have, been. |
### INDICATIVE.
#### Future Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. fueró,</td>
<td>1. fuerimus,</td>
<td>I shall have been, we shall have been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fuerís,</td>
<td>2. fueritis,</td>
<td>thou will have been, you will have been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fuerit,</td>
<td>3. fuerint,</td>
<td>he shall have been, they shall have been,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ——,</td>
<td>1. ——,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es,</td>
<td>2. este,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Pres. esse, to be,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>Perf. fuisse, to have been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>Fut. futūrum (-am, -um), esse (fore), to be about to be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participle</td>
<td>Fut. futūrus, -a, -um, about to be,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 113. Compounds of sum, I am.

| ab-sum, | Obsum, I am against, I hurt. |
| abfui, | Perf. obfui or offui. |
| ad-sum, | Prae-sum, I am over, I superintend. |
| de-sum, | Pro-sum, I am for, I profit. |
| in-sum, | Sub-sum, I am under. No Perf. |
| inter-sum, | Super-sum, I am, or remain, over. |

**Remark.**—Only absum and prae sum form present participles: absens, absent, and prae sens, present.

### Prōsum, I profit.

#### 114. In the forms of prōsum, prōd- is used before vowels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present, prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est,</td>
<td>prō-sim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-sumus, prōd-estis, prō-sunt,</td>
<td>prō-d-essem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect, prōd-erō,</td>
<td>prō-suerim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future,</td>
<td>prō-suissem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect, prō-fui,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect, prō-fueram,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf., prō-fuerō,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.** Pres. prōd-esse; Perf. prō-fuisse.
Possum, *I am able, I can.*

115. Possum is compounded of *pot* (*potis, pote*) and *sum*; *t* becomes *s* before *s*.

**INDICATIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pos-sum, <em>I am able, can,</em></td>
<td>pos-sim, <em>I be able.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-es,</td>
<td>pos-sís,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-est,</td>
<td>pos-sit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pos-sumus,</td>
<td>pos-símus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-estis,</td>
<td>pos-sítis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pos-sunt,</td>
<td>pos-sínt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-eram, <em>I was able,</em></td>
<td>pos-sem, <em>I were, might be, able.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-eras,</td>
<td>pos-sés,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-erat,</td>
<td>pos-set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-eramus,</td>
<td>pos-sémus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-erátis,</td>
<td>pos-sétis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-erant,</td>
<td>pos-sent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-erō, <em>I shall be able.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-eris,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-erit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-erimus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-eritis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-erunt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-ui, <em>I have been able,</em></td>
<td>pot-uerim, <em>I have, may have, been able.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-uiísti,</td>
<td>pot-uerís,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-uiít,</td>
<td>pot-uerit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-uiimus,</td>
<td>pot-uerímus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-uiístis,</td>
<td>pot-uerítis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-uiértunt,</td>
<td>pot-uerínt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Systems of Conjugation.

116. There are two Systems of Conjugation, distinguished by the stem-characteristics, viz., the Vowel Conjugation and the Consonant Conjugation.

117. Vowel verbal stems end in a, e, i (First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations).

Consonant verbal stems end in one of the consonants (Third Conjugation).

Stems in u follow the Consonant Conjugation.

118.

The Stem-Forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRES. IND.</th>
<th>PRES. INFIN.</th>
<th>PERF. IND.</th>
<th>SUPINE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. am-ā,</td>
<td>amā-re,</td>
<td>amā-vī,</td>
<td>amā-tum, to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. dēlē-ō,</td>
<td>dēlē-re,</td>
<td>dēlē-vī,</td>
<td>dēlē-tum, to blot out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mone-ō,</td>
<td>monē-re,</td>
<td>mon-ūi,</td>
<td>mon-i-tum, to remind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statu-ā,</td>
<td>statu-e-re,</td>
<td>statu-ī,</td>
<td>statū-tum, to settle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrib-ō,</td>
<td>scrib-e-re,</td>
<td>scrip-sī,</td>
<td>scrip-tum, to write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. audi-ō,</td>
<td>audī-re,</td>
<td>audī-vī,</td>
<td>audī-tum, to hear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
119. **First Conjugation.**

**Active.**

**Indicative.**

*Am loving, do love, love.*

**Sing.**—
1. am-ō,
2. amā-s,
3. amā-t,

**Plur.**—
1. amā-mus,
2. amā-tis,
3. amā-nt,

*Was loving, loved.*

**Sing.**—
1. amā-ba-ō,
2. amā-bā-s,
3. amā-ba-t,

**Plur.**—
1. amā-ba-mus,
2. amā-bā-tis,
3. amā-ba-nt,

**Imperfect.**

*Shall be loving, shall love.*

**Sing.**—
1. amā-bi-ō,
2. amā-bi-s,
3. amā-bi-t.

**Plur.**—
1. amā-bi-mus,
2. amā-bi-tis,
3. amā-bi-nt.

**Subjunctive.**

*Be loving, may love.*

**Sing.**—
1. amē-m,
2. amē-s,
3. amē-t.

**Plur.**—
1. amē-mus,
2. amē-tis,
3. amē-nt.

**Imperative.**

**Sing.**—
1. ama-o,
2. ama-bi-s,
3. ama-bi-t.

**Plur.**—
1. ama-te, amā-tō, thou shalt love.
2. amā-tō, he shall love.
3. amā-ntō, they shall love.

**Present.** N. ama-n-s, G. ama-nt-is, loving.

**Future.** amā-tūr-us, -a, -um, being about to love.
First Conjugation.

Active.

Indicative.

Have loved, did love.

Sing.—1. amā-vī,
2. amā-vī-stī,
3. amā-vī-t,

Plur.—1. amā-vī-mus,
2. amā-vī-stis,
3. amā-vē-runt,

Perfect.

Have, may have, loved.

Sing.—1. amā-ve-ri-m,
2. amā-ve-ri-s,
3. amā-ve-ri-t.

Plur.—1. amā-ve-ri-mus,
2. amā-ve-ri-tis,
3. amā-ve-ri-nt.

Pluperfect.

Had loved.

Sing.—1. amā-vi-sse-m,
2. amā-vi-sse-s,
3. amā-vi-sse-t.

Plur.—1. amā-vi-sse-mus,
2. amā-vi-sse-tis,
3. amā-vi-sse-nt.

Future Perfect.

Shall have loved.

Sing.—1. amā-ve-rī-ō,
2. amā-ve-rī-s,
3. amā-ve-rī-t.

Plur.—1. amā-ve-rī-mus,
2. amā-ve-rī-tis,
3. amā-ve-rī-nt.

Infinitive.

Pres. amā-re, to love.
Perf. amā-vi-sse, to have loved.
Fut. amā tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to love.

Gerund.

N. [amā-re], loving.
G. ama-nd-ī, of loving.
D. ama-nd-ō, to loving.
Ac. [amā-re], (ad) ama-nd-um, loving, to love. 1. amā-tum, to love.
Abl. ama-nd-ō, by loving. 2. amā-tū, to love, in the loving.
121. First Conjugation.

### Indicative

**Present.**

*Am loved.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>am-o-r,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>ama-ris,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ama-tur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>ama-mur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>ama-mini,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ama-ntur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

*Was loved.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>ama-ba-r,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>ama-ba-ris,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ama-ba-tur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>ama-ba-mur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>ama-ba-mini,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ama-ba-ntur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future.**

*Shall be loved.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>ama-bo-r,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>ama-be-ris,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ama-bi-tur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>ama-bi-mur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>ama-bi-mini,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ama-bi-ntur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

**Present.**

*Be, may be, loved.*

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Be</td>
<td>may be</td>
<td>loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am-o-r,</td>
<td>am-o-ris,</td>
<td>am-o-tur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am-e-mur,</td>
<td>am-e-mini,</td>
<td>am-e-ntur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

*Were, might be, loved.*

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Were</td>
<td>might be</td>
<td>loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-re-r,</td>
<td>ama-re-ris,</td>
<td>ama-re-tur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-re-mur,</td>
<td>ama-re-mini,</td>
<td>ama-re-ntur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

**Sing.**

1. —, | be thou loved, | am-a-tor, | thou shall be loved, |

3. | am-a-tor, | he shall be loved. |

**Plur.**

1. —, | be ye loved. |

3. | ama-ntor, | they shall be loved. |

### Infinitive

**Present.**

*to be loved.*

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am-a-ri,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

*to have been loved.*

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am-a-t-um, -am, -um, esse,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future.**

*to be about to be loved.*

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am-a-t-um iri,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect.**

*to be.*

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am-a-t-um, -am, -um, fore,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
First Conjugation.

Passive.

Indicative.

Perfect.

Have been loved.

Sing.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,
2. es,
3. es-t,

Plur.—1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a,
2. es-tis,
3. s-u-nt,

Have, may have, been loved.

Sing.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,
2. s-i-s,
3. s-i-t.

Plur.—1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus, amā-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,
2. s-i-tis,
3. s-i-nt.

Pluperfect.

Had been loved.

Sing.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m, amā-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,
2. er-a-s, es-se-s,
3. er-a-t, es-se-t.

Plur.—1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a, er-a-mus, amā-t-i, -ae, -a, es-se-mus,
2. er-a-tis, es-se-tis,
3. er-a-nt, es-se-nt.

Future Perfect.

Shall have been loved.

Sing.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,
2. er-i-s,
3. er-i-t.

Plur.—1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,
2. er-i-tis,
3. er-u-nt.

Participle.

Perfect. amā-t-us, -a, -um, loved.

Gerundive. ama-nd-us, -a, -um, (one) to be loved.

3*
123. **SECOND CONJUGATION.**

**INDICATIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Be destroying, may destroy.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. dele-ō,</td>
<td>dele-a-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dele-s,</td>
<td>dele-a-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dele-t,</td>
<td>dele-a-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. dele-mus,</td>
<td>dele-a-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dele-tis,</td>
<td>dele-a-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dele-nt,</td>
<td>dele-a-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Was destroying.</th>
<th>Were destroying, might destroy.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. dele-ba-m,</td>
<td>dele-re-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dele-ba-s,</td>
<td>dele-re-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dele-ba-t,</td>
<td>dele-re-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. dele-ba-mus,</td>
<td>dele-re-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dele-ba-tis,</td>
<td>dele-re-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dele-ba-nt,</td>
<td>dele-re-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shall destroy.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. dele-bō,</td>
<td>dele-tō, thou shalt destroy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dele-bi-s,</td>
<td>dele-tō, he shall destroy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dele-bi-t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. dele-bi-mus,</td>
<td>dele-tōte, ye shall destroy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dele-bi-tis,</td>
<td>dele-ntō, they shall destroy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dele-bi-nt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE.**

| Sing.—1. ——, | dele-ntō, they shall destroy. |
| 2. dele, destroy thou, dele-tō, thou shalt destroy. |
| Plur.—1. ——, | dele-ntōte, ye shall destroy. |
| 2. dele-te, destroy ye, dele-ntō, they shall destroy. |

**PARTICIPLE.**

| Present. | N. dele-n-s; G. dele-nt-is, destroying. |
| Future. | dele-tūr-us, -a, -um, about to destroy. |
### Second Conjugation

#### Active

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING. 1</td>
<td>déle-vi</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-sti</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-t</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR. 1</td>
<td>déle-vi-mus</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-stis</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-runt</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING. 1</td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-m</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>may have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-s</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>may have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-t</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>may have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR. 1</td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-mus</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>may have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-tis</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>may have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-nt</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>may have destroyed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING. 1</td>
<td>déle-vi-sse-m</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-sse-s</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-sse-t</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR. 1</td>
<td>déle-vi-sse-mus</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-sse-tis</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-sse-nt</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING. 1</td>
<td>déle-vi-ro</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>shall have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-rī-s</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>shall have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-rī-t</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>shall have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR. 1</td>
<td>déle-vi-rī-mus</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>shall have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-rī-tis</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>shall have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-vi-rī-nt</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>shall have destroyed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING. 1</td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-m</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-s</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-t</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR. 1</td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-mus</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-tis</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-ve-ri-nt</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>have destroyed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

**Present** déle-re, to destroy.

**Perfect** déle-vi-sse, to have destroyed.

**Future** déle-tūr-um, -am, -um esse, to be about to destroy.

#### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>déle-re</td>
<td>destroying, to destroy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>déle-nd-ī</td>
<td>of destroying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>déle-nd-ō</td>
<td>to, for destroying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>déle-re</td>
<td>(ad) déle-nd-um, destroying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>déle-nd-ō</td>
<td>by destroying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPINE</td>
<td>déle-tūr-um, -am, -um esse, to be about to destroy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-tum, to destroy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to destroy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to destroy, in the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by destroying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the destroying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# 125. Second Conjugation

## Indicative

### Present

**Am destroyed.**

**Sing.**—1. dele-o-r,  
2. dele-ri-s,  
3. dele-tur, 

**Plur.**—1. dele-mur,  
2. dele-mi-ni,  
3. dele-ntur, 

### Passive

**Was destroyed.**

**Sing.**—1. dele-ba-r,  
2. dele-ba-ri-s,  
3. dele-ba-tur, 

**Plur.**—1. dele-ba-mur,  
2. dele-ba-mi-ni,  
3. dele-ba-ntur, 

### Imperfect

**Shall be destroyed.**

**Sing.**—1. dele-bo-r,  
2. dele-be-ri-s,  
3. dele-bi-tur, 

**Plur.**—1. dele-bi-mur,  
2. dele-bi-mi-ni,  
3. dele-bi-ntur, 

## Subjunctive

### Present

**Be, may be, destroyed.**

**Sing.**—dele-a-r,  
**Plur.**—dele-a-mur, 

### Passive

**Were destroyed.**

**Sing.**—dele-re-r,  
**Plur.**—dele-re-mur, 

### Imperfect

**Shall be destroyed.**

**Sing.**—dele-tor, thou shalt be destroyed  
**Plur.**—dele-ntor, they shall be destroyed

## Imperative

**Sing.**—1. ——,  
2. dele-re, be thou destroyed.  
3. 

**Plur.**—1. ——,  
2. dele-mi-ni, be ye destroyed,  
3. dele-ntor, they shall be destroyed
Second Conjugation.

Passive.

Indicative.

Perfect.

Have been destroyed, was destroyed.

Sing.—1. déle-t-us, -a, -um, s-um, déle-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,
2. es,
3. es-t,

Plur.—1. déle-t-i, -ae, -a, s-umus, déle-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,
2. es-tis,
3. s-unt,

Pluperfect.

Had been destroyed.

Sing.—1. déle-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m, déle-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,
2. er-a-s,
3. er-a-t,

Plur.—1. déle-t-i, -ae, -a, er-a-mus, déle-t-i, -ae, -a, es-se-mus,
2. er-a-tis,
3. er-a-nt,

Subjunctive.

Perfect.

Have, may have, been destroyed.

Sing.—1. déle-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-s,
2. s-i-t.

Plur.—1. déle-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus, s-i-tis,
2. s-i-nt.

Future Perfect.

Shall have been destroyed.

Sing.—1. déle-t-us, -a, -um, er-ä, er-ä, er-i-s,
2. er-i-t.

Plur.—1. déle-t-i, -ae, -a, er-i-mus, er-i-tis,
2. er-i-nt.

Participles.

Perfect. déle-t-us, -a, -um, destroyed.

Gerundive. déle-nd-us, -a, -um, [one] to be destroyed.
127. Second Conjugation.

Like delere, to destroy, are conjugated only, nere, to spin, flere, to weep, and the compounds of -plere, fill, and -olere (-olēscere), grow; but aboleo, I abolish, forms abolitum.

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic e in the forms of the Present Stem, and drop it in the rest of the verbal forms. In the Perfect, the ending vi becomes ui. In the Supine, the connecting vowel i is used.

128. Five verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Supine without a connecting vowel, viz.:

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsul, cēnsum, to think.
doceō, docēre, docūl, doctum, to teach.
misceō, miscēre, miscul, mistum (mistum), to mix.
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, to hold.
torreo, torrēre, torrui, to parch.

Synopsis of mone-o, I remind.

129. Active.

Indicative. Subjunctive.

Pres. mone-ō, mone-a-m.
Impf. monē-ba-m, monē-re-m.
Fut. monē-bū, mon-ue-ri-m.
Perf. mon-ui, mon-ue-Ri-m.
Plpf. mon-ue-ra-m, mon-u-isre-m.
F. Pf. mon-ue-rū. mon-ue-rū.
## SECOND CONJUGATION

### ACTIVE

#### IMPERATIVE

- monē,
- monē-to,

#### INFINITIVE

- Pres. monē-re.
- Perf. mon-ui-sse.
- Fut. mon-itūr-um, -am, um, esse.

#### PARTICIPLE

- Pres. mone-n-s.

#### GERUND

- mone-nd-i.

#### SUPINE

- 1. mon-itum.
- 2. mon-itū.

### PASSIVE

#### INDICATIVE

- Pres. mone-o-r,
- Impf. monē-ba-r,
- Fut. monē-bo-r,
- Perf. mon-it-us, -a, -um, s-um,
- Plpf. er-a-m,
- F. Pr.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

- Pres. mone-a-r.
- Perf. mone-re-r.
- Fut. mon-it-us, -a, -um, s-i-m.
- Plpf. er-a-m,
- F. Pr.

#### IMPERATIVE

- monē-re,
- monē-tor.

#### INFINITIVE

- Pres. monē-rī.
- Perf. mon-it-um, -am, -um, -es-se.
- Fut. mon-it-um īrī.
- F. Pr. mon-it-um, -am, -um, fore.

#### PARTICIPLE

- Perfect, mon-it-us, -a, -um.

#### GERUNDIVE

- mone-nd-us, -a, -um.
### Third Conjugation

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Buy</strong></td>
<td><strong>Be buying, may buy</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present**

| SING.— | 1. em-ō, | em-a-m, |
|        | 2. em-i-s, | em-ā-s, |
|        | 3. em-i-t, | em-a-t. |
| PLUR.— | 1. em-i-mus, | em-ā-mus, |
|        | 2. em-i-tis, | em-ā-tis, |
|        | 3. em-u-nt, | em-a-nt. |

**Imperfect**

| SING.— | 1. em-e-ba-m, | em-e-re-m, |
|        | 2. em-e-bā-s, | em-e-re-s, |
|        | 3. em-e-ba-t, | em-e-re-t. |
| PLUR.— | 1. em-e-bā-mus, | em-e-re-mus, |
|        | 2. em-e-bā-tis, | em-e-re-tis, |
|        | 3. em-e-ba-nt, | em-e-re-nt. |

**Future**

| SING.— | 1. em-a-m, |
|        | 2. em-ē-s, |
|        | 3. em-e-t. |
| PLUR.— | 1. em-ē-mus, |
|        | 2. em-ē-tis, |
|        | 3. em-e-nt. |

#### Imperative

| SING.— | 1. ——, | 2. em-e, **buy thou**, em-i-tō, **thou shall buy.** |
|        | 3. | em-i-tō, **he shall buy.** |
| PLUR.— | 1. ——, | 2. em-i-te, **buy ye**, em-i-tōte, **ye shall buy.** |
|        | 3. | em-u-ntō, **they shall buy.** |

#### Participle

**Present.** N. em-e-n-s; G. em-e-nt-is, **buying.**

**Future.** em-tūr-us, -a, -um, **about to buy.**
### Third Conjugation

#### Active

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have bought, bought.</td>
<td>Have, may have, bought.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> - 1. ēm-i,</td>
<td>ēm-e-ri-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ēm-i-sti,</td>
<td>ēm-e-ri-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ēm-i-t,</td>
<td>ēm-e-ri-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong> - 1. ēm-i-mus,</td>
<td>ēm-e-ri-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ēm-i-stis,</td>
<td>ēm-e-ri-tis,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Had bought.</td>
<td>Had, might have, bought.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> - 1. ēm-e-ra-m,</td>
<td>ēm-i-sses-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ēm-e-ra-s,</td>
<td>ēm-i-sses-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ēm-e-ra-t,</td>
<td>ēm-i-sses-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong> - 1. ēm-e-ra-mus,</td>
<td>ēm-i-sses-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ēm-e-ra-tis,</td>
<td>ēm-i-sses-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ēm-e-ra-nt,</td>
<td>ēm-i-sses-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shall have bought.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> - 1. ēm-e-r-ś,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ēm-e-r-ś-s,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ēm-e-r-ś-t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong> - 1. ēm-e-r-ś-mus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ēm-e-r-ś-tis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ēm-e-r-ś-nt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

**Pres.** em-e-re,

**Perf.** ēm-i-sses,

**Fut.** em-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to buy.

### Gerund

**N.** [em-e-re], to buy, buying.

**G.** em-e-nd-i, of buying.

**D.** em-e-nd-ō, to, for buying.

**Ac.** [em-e-re] (ad) em-e-ndum, to buy.

**Abl.** em-e-nd-ō, by buying.

**Supine**

1. em-tūm, to buy.
2. em-tū, to buy, in the buying.
133. THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Am bought. Be, may be, bought.

Sing.—1. em-o-r, em-a-r,
2. em-e-ris, em-a-ris,
3. em-i-tur, em-a-tur.

Plur.—1. em-i-mur, em-a-mur,
2. em-i-mini, em-a-mini,
3. em-u-ntur, em-a-ntur.

Imperfect.

Was bought. Were, might be, bought.

Sing.—1. em-e-ba-r, em-e-re-r,
2. em-e-ba-ris, em-e-re-ris,
3. em-e-ba-tur, em-e-re-tur.

Plur.—1. em-e-ba-mur, em-e-re-mur,
2. em-e-ba-mini, em-e-re-mini,
3. em-e-ba-ntur, em-e-re-ntur.

Shall be bought.

Sing.—1. em-a-r, em-i-tor,
2. em-e-ris, thou shalt be bought.
3. em-e-tur, em-i-tor, he shall be bought.

Plur.—1. em-e-mur, em-i-mini,
2. em-e-mini, be ye bought.
3. em-e-ntur, em-u-ntor, they shall be bought.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.—1.
2. em-ere, be thou bought, em-i-tor, thou shalt be bought.
3. em-e-ris, em-i-tor, he shall be bought.

Plur.—1.
2. em-i-mini, be ye bought.
3. em-i-mini, em-u-ntor, they shall be bought.
THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

Have been, was bought.

Sing.—1. em-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,
2. es,
3. es-t,

Plur.—1. em-t-i, -ae, -a, s-u-mus,
2. es-tis,
3. s-unt,

Had been bought.

Sing.—1. em-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,
2. er-a-s,
3. er-a-t,

Plur.—1. em-t-i, -ae, -a, er-a-mus,
2. er-a-tis,
3. er-a-nt,

Future Perfect.

Sing.—1. em-t-us, -a, -um, er-ë,
2. er-i-s,
3. er-i-t.

Plur.—1. em-t-i, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,
2. er-i-tis,
3. er-u-nt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Have, may have, been bought.

Sing.—1. em-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,
2. s-i-s,
3. s-i-t.

Plur.—1. em-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,
2. s-i-tis,
3. s-i-nt.

Pluperfect.

Had, might have, been bought.

Sing.—1. em-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,
2. es-se-s,
3. es-se-t.

Plur.—1. em-t-i, -ae, -a, es-se-mus,
2. es-se-tis,
3. es-se-nt.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. em-i, to be bought.
Perf. em-t-um, -am, -um, esse, to have been bought.
Fut. em-tum iri, to be about to be bought.
P. P. em-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect. em-t-us, -a, -um, bought.
Gerundive. em-e-nd-us, -a, -um, to be bought.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

135. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The stems in i follow in several forms the Third Conjugation, and take the same connecting vowels.

### ACTIVE

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hear.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Be hearing, may hear.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. audi-ē</td>
<td>1. audi-ē-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-ē-s</td>
<td>2. audi-ē-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-ē-t</td>
<td>3. audi-ē-um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Was hearing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Were hearing, might hear.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. audi-ē-ba-m</td>
<td>1. audi-ē-re-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-ē-ba-s</td>
<td>2. audi-ē-re-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-ē-ba-t</td>
<td>3. audi-ē-re-t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shall hear.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Will hear.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. audi-ē-m</td>
<td>1. audi-ē-tē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-ē-s</td>
<td>2. audi-ē-tē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-ē-t</td>
<td>3. audi-ē-tē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hear.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Thou shalt hear.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. —</td>
<td>1. audi-ē-tō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi, hear thou</td>
<td>2. audi-ē-tō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-ē-te, hear ye</td>
<td>2. audi-ē-tō-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. audi-e-ns</td>
<td>audi-tūr-us, -a, -um, about to hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. audi-e-nt-is, hearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
136. Fourth Conjugation.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

1. audī-vī, Have heard, heard
2. audī-vī-stī,
3. audī-vī-t,

PLUR.-1. audī-vī-mus,
2. audī-vī-stīs,
3. audī-vē-runt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

1. audī-ve-ri-m, Have, may have, heard.
2. audī-ve-ri-s,
3. audī-ve-ri-t.

PLUPERFECT.

1. audī-ve-ra-mus,
2. audī-ve-ra-tis,
3. audī-ve-ra-nt.

Future Perfect.

1. audī-ve-ri-mus,
2. audī-ve-ri-tis,
3. audī-ve-ri-nt.

INFINITIVE.

1. audī-re, to hear.
2. audī-ve-ri-s, to have heard.
3. audī-ve-ri-t.

SUPINE.

1. audī-tūtum, to hear.
2. audī-tū, to hear, in the hearing.
137. **FOURTH CONJUGATION.**

**PASSIVE.**

**INDICATIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Am heard.</th>
<th>Be, may be, heard.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. — 1. audi-o-r,</td>
<td>audi-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-ris,</td>
<td>audi-ā-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-tur,</td>
<td>audi-ā-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. — 1. audi-mur,</td>
<td>audi-ā-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-mini,</td>
<td>audi-ā-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-u-ntur.</td>
<td>audi-ā-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERFECT.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Was heard.</th>
<th>Were, might be, heard.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. — 1. audi-e-ba-r,</td>
<td>audi-re-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-e-ba-ris,</td>
<td>audi-re-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-e-ba-tur,</td>
<td>audi-re-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. — 1. audi-e-ba-mur,</td>
<td>audi-re-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-e-ba-mini,</td>
<td>audi-re-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-e-ba-ntur.</td>
<td>audi-re-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shall be heard.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. — 1. audi-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-e-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-e-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. — 1. audi-e-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-e-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-e-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE.**

| Sing. — 1. ——, |
| 2. audi-re, be thou heard, audi-tor, thou shalt be heard, |
| 3. audi-tor, he shall be heard. |
| Plur. — 1. ——, |
| 2. audi-mini, be ye heard. |
| 3. audi-u-ntor, they shall be heard. |
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

138. Fourth Conjugation.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

*Have been heard, was heard.*   *Have, may have, been heard.*

**Sing.**—1. audi-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m, audi-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,  
   2. es, s-i-s,  
   3. es-t, s-i-t,

**Plur.**—1. audi-t-i, -ae, -a, s-u-mus, audi-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,  
   2. es-tis, s-i-tis,  
   3. s-u-nt, s-i-nt.

Pluperfect.

*Had been heard.*   *Had, might have, been heard.*

**Sing.**—1. audi-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m, audi-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,  
   2. er-a-s, es-se-s,  
   3. er-a-t, es-se-t,

**Plur.**—1. audi-t-i, -ae, -a, er-a-mus, audi-t-i, -ae, -a, es-se-mus,  
   2. er-a-tis, es-se-tis,  
   3. er-a-nt, es-se-nt.

Future Perfect.

*Shall have been heard.*

**Sing.**—1. audi-t-us, -a, -um, er-ö,  
   2. er-i-s,  
   3. er-i-t,

**Plur.**—1. audi-t-i, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,  
   2. er-i-tis,  
   3. er-u-nt.

INFINITIVE.

**Present.** audi-ri, to be heard.  
**Perfect.** audi-t-um, -am, um, esse, to have been heard.  
**Future.** audi-tum iri, to be about to be heard.  
**F. P.** audi-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLE.

**Perfect.** audi-t-us, -a, -um, heard.  
**Gerundive.** audi-e-nd-us, -a, -um, [one] to be heard.
Appendix to the Third Conjugation.

139. Several verbs of the Third Conjugation in the Present-stem add i to the stem. This i is dropped when it would come before ē or ī, except before et; as, cap-it, cap-eret, but capi-et.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Take.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Be taking.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. capi-ō,</td>
<td>capi-ā-m,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-i-s,</td>
<td>capi-ā-s,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-i-t,</td>
<td>capi-ā-t,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. capi-i-mus,</td>
<td>capi-ā-mus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-i-tis,</td>
<td>capi-ā-tis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-i-unt.</td>
<td>capi-ā-nt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

| SING.—1. capi-ē-ba-m, | cap-e-re-m, |
| 2. capi-ē-ba-s, | cap-e-re-s, |
| 3. capi-ē-ba-t, | cap-e-re-t, |
| PLUR.—1. capi-ē-ba-mus, | cap-e-re-mus, |
| 2. capi-ē-ba-tis, | cap-e-re-tis, |
| 3. capi-ē-ba-nt. | cap-e-re-nt. |

**Future.**

| SING.—1. capi-a-m, | |
| 2. capi-ē s, | |
| 3. capi-e-t, | |
| PLUR.—1. capi-ē-mus, | |
| 2. capi-ē-tis, | |
| 3. capi-e-nt. | |

**Imperative.**

| SING.—2. cap-e, take thou, | Pres. cap-e-re, |
| capi-tō, | to take. |
| 3. capi-tō, | |
| PLUR.—2. cap-i-te, take ye, | Pres. cap-i-e-n-s, |
| capi-tōte, | taking. |
| 3. capi-un-tō. | |

**Infinitive.**

| G. capi-e-nd-i, | \ |
| of taking. | |
140.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Am taken.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Be, may be, taken.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. capi-o-r,</td>
<td>capi-a-r,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. cap-e-ris,</td>
<td>capi-a-ris,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. cap-i-tur,</td>
<td>capi-a-tur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.—1. cap-i-mur,</strong></td>
<td>capi-a-mur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. cap-i-mini,</strong></td>
<td>capi-a-mini,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. capi-u-ntur.</strong></td>
<td>capi-a-ntur.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. capi-é-ba-r,</td>
<td>cap-e-re-r,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-é-ba-ris,</td>
<td>cap-e-re-ris,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-é-ba-tur,</td>
<td>cap-e-re-tur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.—1. capi-é-ba-mur,</strong></td>
<td>cap-e-re-mur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. capi-é-ba-mini,</strong></td>
<td>cap-e-re-mini,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. capi-é-ba-ntur.</strong></td>
<td>cap-e-re-ntur.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. capi-a-r,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-é-ris,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-é-tur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.—1. capi-é-mur,</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. capi-é-mini,</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. capi-e-ntur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impenarative.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—2. cap-e-re,</td>
<td>Pres. cap-i,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. be thou taken,</td>
<td>to be taken.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. cap-i-tor,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. thou shalt be taken,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.—2. cap-i-mini,</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. be ye taken, ye shall be taken</td>
<td>GERUNDIVE.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. cap-i-ntor,</td>
<td>capi-e-nd-us, -a, -um,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. they shall be taken.</td>
<td>one] to be taken.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deponent of the First Conjugation

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exhort.</td>
<td>Was exhorting.</td>
<td>Shall exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hort-o-r,</td>
<td>1. hortā-ba-r,</td>
<td>1. hortā-bo-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hortā-ris,</td>
<td>2. hortā-ba-ris,</td>
<td>2. hortā-be-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hortā-tur,</td>
<td>3. hortā-ba-tur,</td>
<td>3. hortā-bi-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hortā-mur,</td>
<td>1. hortā-ba-mur,</td>
<td>1. hortā-bi-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hortā-mini,</td>
<td>2. hortā-ba-mini,</td>
<td>2. hortā-bi-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hortā-ntur.</td>
<td>3. hortā-ba-ntur.</td>
<td>3. hortā-bu-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Be exhorting, may exhort.</td>
<td>Were exhorting, might exhort.</td>
<td>Shall exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horte-r,</td>
<td>hortā-re-r,</td>
<td>hortā-bo-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortē-bris,</td>
<td>hortā-re-bris,</td>
<td>hortā-be-bris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortē-tur,</td>
<td>hortā-re-tur,</td>
<td>hortā-bi-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortē-mur,</td>
<td>hortā-re-mur,</td>
<td>hortā-bi-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortē-mini,</td>
<td>hortā-re-mini,</td>
<td>hortā-bi-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortē-ntur.</td>
<td>hortā-re-ntur.</td>
<td>hortā-bu-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

| **SING.** | **PLUR.** |
| 2. hortā-re, | 2. hortā-mini, |
| exhort thou, | exhort ye, ye shall exhort, |
| hortā-tor, | 3. hortā-ntor, |
| thou shalt exhort, | they shall exhort. |

#### Active Forms

| **PART.** | **FUT.** | **INF.** |
| Present | about to exhort. | to be about to exhort. |
| **horta-n-s,** | **hortā-tūr-us, -a, -um,** | **hortā-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse,** |
| **exhorting,** | **about to exhort.** | **to be about to exhort.** |

**Passive in Meaning.**

**Gerundive.**

| **horta-nd-us, -a, -um,** | **[one] to be exhorted.** |
142. **Deponent of the First Conjugation.**

**INDICATIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have exorted, exhorted.</td>
<td>Have, may have, exhorted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,</td>
<td>1. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es,</td>
<td>es-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

| Had exorted. | Had, might have, exhorted. |
| Sing.-1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, | Plur.-1. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a, |
| 2. er-a-m, | 2. er-ā-mus, |
| es-a-s, | er-ā-s, |
| 3. er-a-t, | er-a-tis, |

**Future Perfect.**

| Shall have exorted. | |
| Sing.-1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, | Plur.-1. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a, |
| 2. er-o, | 2. er-i-t, |
| es-se-s, | es-se-tis, |
| 3. | 3. es-se-nt. |

**INFINITIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortā-ri,</td>
<td>hortā-tum, -am, -um,</td>
<td>hortā-tum, -am, -um,</td>
<td>hortā-us, -a, -um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to exhort.</td>
<td>esse,</td>
<td>to have exorted.</td>
<td>having exorted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>to exhort, for exhorting.</td>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>to exhort, in the exhorting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortā-tum, -am, -um, esse,</td>
<td>2. hortā-tu,</td>
<td>hortā-tum, -am, -um,</td>
<td>G. hortā-and-ī,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to exhort, for exhorting.</td>
<td>fore.</td>
<td>of exhorting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND.**

| [hortā-ri], | G. hortā-and-ī, |
| to exhort, exhorting. | of exhorting. |
143. **Deponent of the Second Conjugation.**

**Indicative.**

*Fear.*

**Present.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. vere-o-r</td>
<td>vere-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. vere-ri,</td>
<td>vere-ri-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vere-tur,</td>
<td>vere-ri-tur,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plur.**

| 1. vere-mur, | vere-a-mur, |
| 2. vere-mini, | vere-a-mini, |
| 3. vere-ntur. | vere-a-ntur. |

*Was fearing.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. vere-ba-r,</td>
<td>vere-re-ba-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. vere-ba-ri,</td>
<td>vere-re-ba-ri,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vere-ba-tur,</td>
<td>vere-re-ba-tur,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plur.**

| 1. vere-ba-mur, | vere-re-ba-mur, |
| 2. vere-ba-mini, | vere-re-ba-mini, |
| 3. vere-ba-ntur. | vere-re-ba-ntur. |

*Shall fear.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. vere-bo-r,</td>
<td>vere-re-bo-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. vere-bo-ri,</td>
<td>vere-re-bo-ri,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vere-bo-tur,</td>
<td>vere-re-bo-tur,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plur.**

| 1. vere-bo-mur, | vere-re-bo-mur, |
| 2. vere-bo-mini, | vere-re-bo-mini, |
| 3. vere-bo-ntur. | vere-re-bo-ntur. |

**Imperative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PART. PRES. vere n-s,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. vere-re,</td>
<td>fear thou,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vere-tor,</td>
<td>thou shalt fear,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vere-tor,</td>
<td>he shall fear,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plur.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. vere-mini,</th>
<th>PART. PRES. vere n-s,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vere-ntor,</td>
<td>fear ye, ye shall fear,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vere-ntor,</td>
<td>they shall fear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Active Forms.**

**Part. Pres.** vere n-s, fearing,

**Fut.** ver-i-tur-us, -a, um, about to fear.

**Inf. Fut.** ver-i-tur-um, -am, -um, esse to be about to fear.

**Passive in Meaning.**

**Gerundive.** vere-n-d-us, -a, -um, [one] to be feared.
DEPONENT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

144. DEPONENT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

**INDICATIVE.**

**PERFECT.**

*Have feared, feared.*

Sing.—1. ver-i-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m, s-u-m,  
2. es, s-i-s,  
3. es-t, s-i-t,  

Plur.—1. ver-i-t-i, -ae, -a, s-u-mus, ver-i-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,  
2. es-tis, s-i-tis,  
3. s-u-n-t, s-i-n-t.

**PLUPERFECT.**

*Had feared.*

Sing.—1. ver-i-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m, s-e-s, s-e-s,  
2. er-a-s, es-se-s,  
3. er-a-t, es-se-t,  

Plur.—1. ver-i-t-i, -ae, -a, er-a-mus, ver-i-t-i, -ae, -a, es-sê-mus,  
2. er-a-tis, es-sê-tis,  
3. er-a-nt, es-se-nt.

**FUTURE PERFECT.**

*Shall have feared.*

Sing.—1. ver-i-t-us, -a, -um, er-ê,  
2. er-i-s,  
3. er-i-t,  

Plur.—1. ver-i-t-i, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,  
2. er-i-tis,  
3. er-i-nt.

**INFINITIVE.**

Pres. verë-ri,  

**PARTICIPLE.**

Perfect. ver-i-tus, -a, -um.

**VERUM.**

Perf. ver-i-tum, -am, -um, esse,  

F. P. ver-i-tum fore.

1. ver-i-tum,  
   to fear, for fearing.  
2. ver-i-tû,  
   to fear, in fearing.

**GERUND.**

[verë-ri],  
   to fear, fearing.  
G. vere-nd-i,  
   of fearing.
145. **Deponent of the Third Conjugation.**

**Indicative.**

*SING.*

1. loqu-o-r,
2. loqu-e-ris,
3. loqu-i-tur,

*PLUR.*

1. loqu-i-mur,
2. loqu-i-mini,
3. loqu-u-ntur,

**Subjunctive.**

*Present.*

Speak.

*SING.*

1. loqu-a-r,
2. loqu-a-ris,
3. loqu-a-tur,

*Plur.*

1. loqu-a-mur,
2. loqu-a-mini,
3. loqu-a-ntur.

**Imperfect.**

Was speaking.

*SING.*

1. loqu-e-ba-r,
2. loqu-e-ba-ris,
3. loqu-e-ba-tur,

*Plur.*

1. loqu-e-ba-mur,
2. loqu-e-ba-mini,
3. loqu-e-ba-ntur,

**Future.**

Shall speak.

*SING.*

1. loqu-a-r,
2. loqu-a-ris,
3. loqu-a-tur,

*Plur.*

1. loqu-a-mur,
2. loqu-a-mini,
3. loqu-a-ntur.

**Imperative.**

*SING.*

2. loqu-e-re,

speak thou,

loqu-i-tor,

thou shalt speak,

3. loqu-i-tor,

he shall speak.

*Plur.*

2. loqu-i-mini,

speak ye,

3. loqu-u-ntor,

they shall speak.

**Active Forms.**

*PART.*

Pres. loqu-e-n-s,

speaking.

Fut. locū-tūr-us, -a, -um,

about to speak.

INF. Fut. locū-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse,

to be about to speak.

**Passive in Meaning.**

Gerundive, loqu-e-ndus, -a, -um,

to be spoken.
### Deponent of the Third Conjugation.

#### INDICATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Have spoken, spoke.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Have, may have, spoken.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. locū-t-us, -a, -um,</td>
<td>s-u-m, locū-t-us, -a, -um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>es, s-i-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>es-t, s-i-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. locū-t-ī, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>s-u-mus, locū-t-ī, -ae, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>es-tis, s-i-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>s-u-nt, s-i-tis,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Had spoken.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Had, might have, spoken.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. locū-t-us, -a, -um,</td>
<td>er-a-m, locū-t-us, -a, -um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er-a-s, es-se-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er-a-t, es-se-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. locū-t-ī, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>er-a-mus, locū-t-ī, -ae, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er-a-tis, es-se-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er-a-nt, es-se-tis,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shall have spoken.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Shall have spoken.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. locū-t-us, -a, -um,</td>
<td>er-ō, locū-t-us, -a, -um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er-i-s, es-se-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er-i-t, es-se-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. locū-t-ī, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>er-i-mas, locū-t-ī, -ae, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er-i-tis, es-se-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er-u-nt, es-se-nt,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE.

| Pres. loqu-i, | to speak. |
| Perf. locū-t-us, -a, -um, having spoken. |
| Perf. locū-t-um, -am, -um, esse, to have spoken. |
| F. Pr. locū-t-um, -am, -um, fore. |
| Supine. 1. locū-tum, to speak, for speaking. |
| Gerund. [loqu-i], to speak, speaking. |
| Gerund. loqu-ēnd-i, to speak, in speaking. |
| Gerund. loqu-ēnd-i, of speaking. |
147. **Deponent of the Fourth Conjugation.**

**Indicative.**

*Lie.*

**Sing.**—1. menti-o-r,
2. menti-ris,
3. menti-tur,

**Plur.**—1. menti-mur,
2. menti-mini,
3. menti-untur,

**Was lying.**

**Sing.**—1. menti-e-ba-r,
2. menti-e-ba-ris,
3. menti-e-ba-tur.

**Plur.**—1. menti-e-ba-mur,
2. menti-e-ba-mini,
3. menti-e-ba-ntur.

**Shall lie.**

**Sing.**—1. menti-a-r,
2. menti-e-ris,
3. menti-e-tur.

**Plur.**—1. menti-e-mur,
2. menti-e-mini,
3. menti-e-ntur.

**Subjunctive.**

**Present.**

*Be lying, may lie.*

**Sing.**—menti-a-r,
menti-a-ris,
menti-a-tur.

**Plur.**—menti-a-mur,
menti-a-mini,
menti-a-ntur.

**Imperfect.**

*Were lying, might lie.*

**Sing.**—menti-re-r,
menti-re-ris,
menti-re-tur.

**Plur.**—menti-re-mur,
menti-re-mini,
menti-re-ntur.

**Future.**

**Imperative.**

**Sing.**—2. menti-re,
lie thou,
menti-tor,
 thou shalt lie,
3. menti-tor,
he shall lie.

**Plur.**—2. menti-mini,
lie ye,
3. menti-untor,
they shall lie.

**Active Forms.**

**Sing.**—2. menti-e-n-s,
lying.

**Plur.**—2. menti-e-n-s,
about to lie.

**Passive in Meaning.**

**Gerundive.** menti-e-n-d-us, -a, -um.
Deponent of the Fourth Conjugation.

Indicative.

Perfect.

Sing.—1. menti-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m;  menti-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,
2. es, s-i-s,
3. es-t, s-i-t.

Plur.—1. menti-t-i, -ae, -a,  s-u-mus;  menti-t-i, -ae, -a,  s-i-mus,
2. es-tis, s-i-tis,
3. s-u-nt, s-i-nt.

Pluperfect.

Sing.—1. menti-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m;  menti-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,
2. er-a-s, es-sē-s,
3. er-a-t, es-se-t.

Plur.—1. menti-t-i, -ae, -a,  er-a-mus;  menti-t-i, -ae, -a,  es-sē-mus,
2. er-a-tis, es-sē-tis,
3. er-a-nt, es-se-nt.

Future Perfect.

Sing.—1. menti-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,  menti-t-us, -a, -um, er-ē,
2. er-i-s, er-e-t.
3. er-i-t, er-e-nt.

Plur.—1. menti-t-i, -ae, -a,  er-i-mus,  menti-t-i, -ae, -a,  er-i-mus,
2. er-i-tis, er-e-tis,
3. er-u-nt, er-e-nt.

Infinitive.

Pres. menti-ri, to lie.

Perfect. menti-t-us, -a, -um, having lied.

Perf. menti-t-um, -am, -um, esse, to have lied.

F. P. menti-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

Supine. 1. menti-tum, to lie, for lying,
2. menti-tā, to lie, in lying.
3. menti-tū, of lying.

Gerund. [menti-ri], to lie, lying.

G. menti-e-nd-i, of lying.
149. Periphrastic Conjugation.

**ACTIVE.**

**INDICATIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Active Form</th>
<th>Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amātūr-us, -a, -um, sum,</td>
<td>amātūr-us, -a, -um, sim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Am about to love.</td>
<td>Be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>amātūrus eram,</td>
<td>amātūrus essem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Was about to love.</td>
<td>Were about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātūrus erō, Shall be about to love.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuī,</td>
<td>amātūrus fuerim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Have been, was, about to love.</td>
<td>Have, may have, been about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fueram,</td>
<td>amātūrus fuissem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Had been about to love.</td>
<td>Had, might have, been about to love.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PASSIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Passive Form</th>
<th>Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amand-us, -a, -um, sum,</td>
<td>amand-us, -a, -um, sim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>Have to be loved.</td>
<td>Have to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>amandus eram,</td>
<td>amandus essem, forem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>Had to be loved.</td>
<td>Had to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amandus erō, Shall have to be loved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amandus fuī,</td>
<td>amandus fuerim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>Have had to be loved.</td>
<td>Have had to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>amandus fueram,</td>
<td>amandus fuissem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>Had had to be loved.</td>
<td>Should have had to be loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Active Form</th>
<th>Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>amātūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to love.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>amand-um fuisse, to have been about to love.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
151. **Abbreviations occurring in certain Forms of the Verb.**

1. The Perfects in -āvī, -ēvī, -īvī, drop the V before S or R, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in -īvī, which admit the contraction only before S.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Infinitive Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.-1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāvisti, amāstī</td>
<td>dēlēvisti, dēlēstī</td>
<td>audīvisti, audīstī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.-1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāvistis, amāstis</td>
<td>dēlēvistis, dēlēstis</td>
<td>audīvistis, audīstis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāvērunt, amārunt</td>
<td>dēlēvērunt, dēlērunt</td>
<td>audīvērunt, audīrunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subj. amāverim, amārim</td>
<td>dēlēverim, dēlērim</td>
<td>audīverim, audīerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ind. amāveram, amāram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subj. amāvissem, amāsse</td>
<td>dēlēveram, dēlēram</td>
<td>audīveram, audieram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvero, amāro</td>
<td></td>
<td>audīvero, audiero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvisse, amāsse</td>
<td>dēlēvisse, dēlēsse</td>
<td>audīvisse, audisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In like manner, nōvī, *I know*, and mōvī, *I have moved*, are, in their compounds especially, contracted:

**Sing.-2. nōsti. Plur.-2. nōstis. 3. nōrunt. Subj. nōrim.**

**Pluperfect. nōram. Subj. nōsse. Inf. nōsse.** But the Future is nōvero, uncontracted.

**Remark.**—In petere, *to fall upon*, dēsinere, *to give over*, and in the compounds of ire, *to go*, the V of the Perfect is dropped in 1 and 3 Pers. Sing., and in 1 Pers. Pl., but no contraction ensues, as:

petīvī, petī; petīvit, petīt. So dēsivī, dēsī; dēsivit, dēsiit, etc.

And redī, redīt, from redīre, *to go back.*

2. In 3 Pl. Perf. Act. instead of the ending -ērunt, -ēre is often found, but never in the contracted Perfects mentioned above: amāvēre, *they have loved*; dēlēvēre, *they have destroyed*; emēre, *they have bought*; audīvēre, *they have heard*. But amāre, for amārunt, is not admissible.

3. Instead of -ris in 2 Sing. Pass. we find often -re:

amābāre, thou wast loved; amārēre, thou mightest be loved; amābere, thou wilt be loved.

This is rare, however, in Present Indicative.

4. The Imperatives of dicere, *to say*, dūcere, *to lead*, facere, *to make*, and ferre, *to bear*, are dic, dūc, fac, fer. These shortened forms occur in their respective compounds, except in those compounds of facio, which change a into i, as: perfice, achieve thou. (188 R.)

5. The Gerund and Gerundive of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of -endi, -endus, may, especially after i, end in -undi and -undus, as:

faciundus, to be done; gerundus, to be carried.
THE STEM.

152. THE STEM.

I. In the Present.

The stem of many verbs appears in the Present, not in the pure, but in a strengthened form.

Hence verbs are classified according to the relation of the Present Stem to the Verb Stem.

I. Stem class: To this class belong those verbs whose present stem is the same as the verb stem.

Such are the verbs of the vowel conjugations; and in the Third Conjugation such verbs as leg-o, I read, ed-o, I eat, em-o, I buy.

II. The Protracted or Intensified class: In this class the vowel of the Verb Stem is lengthened in the Present Stem:

duc-o, I lead, stem duc-; dic-o, I say, stem dic.

Remark.—This change arises from a diphthongal strengthening of the stem: douc-o, deic-o; but the class is treated as a stem-class in formation.

III. The Nasal class: In this class the stem is strengthened by n.

A. In vowel-stems: si-, sino, I let; li-, lino, I besmear.

B. After the characteristic r or m: cer-, cerno, I sift, separate; tem-, temno, Iscorn.

C. Before the characteristic mute: vic-, vinco, I conquer; frag-, frango, I break; fud-, fundo, I pour.

Before a P-mute N becomes M: rup-, rumpo, I rend; cub-, cumbo, I lie down.

IV. The T class: flec-, flecto, I bend.

V. The Inchoative class: The stem strengthened by sc or isc: sc after vowel stems, isc after consonant stems.

1. ira-, irascor, cre-, crē-sco, dormi-, obdormi-sco,
   I am in a rage. I grow. I fall asleep.

2. ap-, ap-iscor, fac-, profic-iscor, nac-, nanc-iscor,
   I reach. I set out. I get.

VI. Reduplicated class: Reduplication in the Present stem:

gen-, gi-gno, I beget, (for gi-gen-o); sta-, si-sto, si-st-ere, to set, stand.

Compare stāre, to stand.

VII. U-class: U suffixed to the stem:

ting-, tingu-o, I soak,
VIII. I-class: I suffixed to the stem:

cap-, capi-o, I take.

IX. Geminated class:
The Liquids l and r may be doubled: pel-, pello, I drive; cur-, curro, I run.
So t is doubled in mit-, mitto, I send.

REMARK.—This small class is probably a subdivision of the 8th class (I-class); pello, for peljo, pello; curro, for curjo, curio.

X. Change of Conjugation:
Many consonant-stems assume in the Present the characteristic of one of the three vowel-conjugations:

vid-, vide-o, I see, vidē-re.  
ven-, veni-o, I come, veni-re.

153. II. IN THE PERFECT.
The Perfect is formed from the pure stem.
EXCEPTIONS: see change of conjugation. (156, 176).

1. The vowel-stems take -vi: amā-vi, I have loved; déle-vi, I have destroyed; audī-vi, I have heard.

However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the vowel-characteristic, and change -vi into -ui. (See 128.)

2. Consonant-stems with short stem-syllable take i in the Perfect, before which the stem-syllable becomes long, and ā is changed into ē.

lego, I read, vid-eo, I see, fodi-o, I dig, fug-io, I flee, ag-o, I do,
leg-ī, vid-ī, fōd-ī, fug-ī, ēgī.

3. Consonant-stems with long stem-syllables take si in the Perfect:

rēp-o, I creep, rēp-si. scribo, I write, scrip-si dic-o, I say, dixī = dic-si.
aug-eo, I increase, auxī = aug-sī. rād-o, I scrape, rā-sī = rad-sī.

Even when the stem-syllable is long by position only:

carp-o, I pluck, carp-si. ping-o, I paint, pinxi = ping-si.

EXCEPTIONS.—Exceptions are stems in -nd, which take i in the Perfect: défend-o, I strike (ward) off, défend-ī; perhaps because the stems in -nd formed originally a reduplicated perfect:

mand-o, I chew, man(di)di; so (fe)fendi, I have struck.
4. The stems in \textit{u} have \textit{i} in the Perfect: \textit{acu-o}, \textit{I sharpen}, \textit{acu-i}.

5. Sundry verbs reduplicate in the Perfect, \textit{i.e.}, repeat the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it:

When a change of vowel occurs in the stem, \textit{e} is always found in the syllable of reduplication:
\begin{align*}
\textit{cad-o}, \textit{I fall}, & \textit{ce-cid-i}. \\
\textit{parc-o}, \textit{I spare}, & \textit{pe-perc-i}. \\
\end{align*}

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in \textit{-i}. They do not lengthen the stem-vowel, but change \textit{a} into \textit{i}, \textit{ae} into \textit{i}, \textit{a} before two consonants into \textit{e}, and \textit{e} and \textit{o} into \textit{u} before \textit{l}.

\textbf{Remark.}—In compounds with monosyllabic prepositions reduplication is generally dropped except in \textit{disco}, \textit{I learn}, \textit{dō}, \textit{I give}, \textit{posco}, \textit{I demand}, \textit{stō}, \textit{I stand}. The compounds of \textit{curr-o}, \textit{I run}, sometimes retain it, \textit{excucurri}. With dissyllabic prepositions the reduplication is commonly retained.

\section*{III. The Supine.}

154. I. The Supine is formed from the \textit{pure stem}.

1. Vowel-stems and stems in \textit{U} take \textit{-tum} in the Supine:
\begin{align*}
\textit{am-o}, \textit{I love}, & \textit{amā-tum}. \\
\textit{audi-o}, \textit{I hear}, & \textit{audī-tum}. \\
\textit{dele-o}, \textit{I destroy}, & \textit{dēlē-tum}. \\
\textit{tribu-o}, \textit{I allot}, & \textit{tribū-tum}. \\
\end{align*}

Most verbs of the Second Conjugation drop, however, their own characteristic vowel before \textit{-tum}, and insert the connecting-vowel \textit{i}: \textit{mone-o}, \textit{I remind}, \textit{moni-tum}. Some have no connecting-vowel. (See 128.)

2. Consonant-stems in a \textit{P-} or \textit{K-mute} take \textit{-tum} in the Supine:
\begin{align*}
\textit{cap-io}, \textit{I take}, & \textit{cap-tum}. \\
\textit{dic-o}, \textit{I say}, & \textit{dic-tum}. \\
\textit{rep-o}, \textit{I creep}, & \textit{rep-tum}. \\
\textit{fac-io}, \textit{I do}, & \textit{fac-tum}. \\
\end{align*}

\textbf{Exceptions.}—1. Among the \textit{P-stems}, only \textit{lābor}, \textit{I slip}, \textit{lap-sus}.

2. Among the \textit{K-stems}, the Supine in \textit{-sum} occurs:
\begin{itemize}
\item[A.] In verbs whose Present-stem is strengthened by \textit{t}:
\begin{align*}
\textit{flect-o}, \textit{I bend}, & \textit{flexum}. \\
\textit{pect-o}, \textit{I comb}, & \textit{pexum}. \\
\textit{plect-o}, \textit{I plait}, & \textit{plexum}. \\
\textit{nec-t-o}, \textit{I knot}, & \textit{bind}, \textit{nexum}. \\
\end{align*}


\item[C.] In some the ending \textit{-sum} prevents confusion with other words: \textit{fingo}, \textit{I shape}, makes \textit{fic-tum}; but \textit{figo}, \textit{I fasten}, \textit{fix-um}. So \textit{mul-sum}, from \textit{mulce eo}, \textit{I stroke}, distinguishes it from \textit{multum}, \textit{much}.
Remark.—The K-mutes are dropped in the Perfect and Supine between l-s, l-t, r-s, r-t: fulc-io, I prop, ful(c)-si, ful(c)-tum; torqu eo, I twist, tor(qu)-si, tor(qu)-tum. (See 160.)

3. Consonant-stems in a T-mute take -sum in the Supine:
ed-o, I eat, ē-sum (for ed-sum); lūd-o, I play, lū-sum; dēfend-o, I ward off, dēfensum.

4. Liquid-stems have partly -tum, partly -sum. Stems in m and n take -tum; stems in l and r take -sum:
em-o, I buy, em-tum; veni-o, I come, ven-tum; can-o, I sing, can-tum.
ver-sum, from ver-ro, I sweep; fal-sum, from fall-o, I cheat; vul-sum, from vell-c, I pluck.

Exceptions.—A. Liquid-stems which in the Perfect pass over to the 2d Conjugation have -tum, with or without connecting-vowels: al-o, I nourish, al-i-tum or al-tum.

B. To be distinguished from other forms: par-turn, from pari-o, I bring forth; but par-sum, from parc-ere, to spare: sal-tum, from sali-o, I leap; but sal-sum, from sali-o, I salt.

C. Man-sum, from mane-o, I remain.

II. The Future Active Participle is formed regularly from the Supine; in some verbs, however, from the Present-stem.

Juvātūrus, about to help, from juveno; secātūrus, from secāre, to cut; sonātūrus, from sonāre, to sound; lavātūrus, from lavāre, to wash; but adjūtūrus, from adjuvāre, to help; morītūrus, from morior, I die; ortūrus, from orio, I rise; paritūrus, from pario, I bring forth; agnōtūrus, from agnōisco, I recognize; nāscitūrus, from nāscor, I am born.

In some U-stems it is formed by means of the connecting-vowel I: arguitūrus, from arguo, I accuse; abnuitūrus, from abnuo, I refuse; luitūrus, from lu-o, I wash off;ruitūrus, from ruo, I rush; fruitūrus, from fruor, I enjoy.

155. Euphonic Laws
In the Conversion of the Consonant-Characteristic.

Characteristic b before s and t becomes p:
scrīb-o, I write, scrīp-si, scrīp-tum.

Characteristic g and qu before t become c:
leg-o, I read, lec-tum; coqu-o, I bake, coc-tum.

Characteristic c, g, and qu with s become x:
dic-o, I say, dixi (= dic-si).
jung-o, I join, junxī (= jung-si).
coqu-o, I cook, coxi (= coqu-si).
stingu-o, I poke (out), stinxii.

Characteristic t and d before s are dropped, or become by assimilation ss:
ed-o, I eat, ē-sum (= ed-sum); cēd-o, I give way, cēs-si (= ced-si).
mitt-o, I send, mi-si (= mit-si), mis-sum (= mit-sum).

156. Change of Conjugation.

A change of Conjugation arises when a vowel (e, i, a), or one of the strengthening suffixes of the Present, is added to the pure stem. The following instances occur:

1. Consonant-stems, regular in the Perfect and Supine, pass over in the Present-stem into one of the vowel-conjugations.
   - aus-e-o, aux-e-re, aux-i, aux-tum, to increase.
   - aug-e-o, aug-e-re, aux-i, aux-tum, to increase.
   - sent-i-o, sen-si, sen-sum, to feel.
   - sen-ti-o, sen-re, sen-si, sen-sum, to feel.
   - ē-si, ē-sum, to hedge in.
   - ē-tum, ē-tum, to hedge in.
   - ven-e-o, vēn-i, vēn-tum, to come.
   - ven-e-re, vēn-i, vēn-tum, to come.
   - vide-o, vid-e-re, ē-i, ē-sum, to see.
   - vide-o, vid-e-re, ē-i, ē-sum, to see.
   - vinc-e-o, vinc-e-re, vinc-i, vinc-tum, to bind.
   - vinc-e-o, vinc-e-re, vinc-i, vinc-tum, to bind.

   Remark.—As these verbs form Perfect and Supine from the pure stem regularly, like the others of the 3d or Consonant-Conjugation, they are placed among the verbs of the 3d Conjugation in the list below.

2. Vowel-stems, in consequence of a strengthened Present, pass over into the 3d Conjugation, but form Perfect and Supine from the vowel-stem.
   - crep-e-o, crep-e-re, crep-uī, crep-tum, to grow.
   - li-n-e, lin-e-re, li-vi (li-vī), li-tum, to besmear.

3. Consonant-stems form the Present regularly according to the 3d Conjugation, but pass in the Perfect and Supine into the 2d or 4th Conjugation.
   - frem-o, frem-e-re, frem-uī, frem-i-tum, to growl.
   - pet-o, pet-e-re, pet-i-vi, pet-itum, to fall upon.

4. Vowel-stems vary among the Vowel-Conjugations.
   - crep-o, crep-a-re, crep-uī, crep-itum, to crackle.
   - aper-i-o, aper-i-re, aper-uī, aper-itum, to uncover.

5. dare, to give, and stāre, to stand, in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication, pass over to the 3d Conjugation.

   Remark.—Verbs mentioned under 2, 3, 4, and 5 as suffering change of Conjugation, are specially marked in 176-180.
MTJTE-STEMS.

Stems in a P-mute.

Supine: -tum.


capi-o (cap-), cap-ere, cap-I, cap-tum, to take.
ac-cipi-o, ac-cip-ere, ac-cáp-I, ac-cerp-tum, to receive.
rump-o (rup-), rump-ere, ráp-I, rup-tum, to break.

158. 2. After a long stem-syllable, Perfect in -SI.
carp-o, carp-ere, carp-SI, carp-tum, to pluck.
dé-cerp-o, dé-cerp-ere, dé-cerp-SI, dê-cerp-tum, to pluck off.
núb-o, nubb-ere, núp-SI, nup-tum, to put on a veil (as a bride).
rép-o, rép-ere, ráp-SI, rep-tum, to creep.
sculp-o, sculp-ere, sculp-SI, sculptum, to scrape.
scrib-o, scrib-ere, scrip-SI, scriptum, to write.
serp-o, serp-ere, serp-SI, sculptum, to chisel.

carp-O, carp-ere, carp-SI, carp-tum, to pluck.
dé-cerp-o, dé-cerp-ere, dé-cerp-SI, dê-cerp-tum, to pluck off.
núb-o, nubb-ere, núp-SI, nup-tum, to put on a veil (as a bride).
rép-o, rép-ere, ráp-SI, rep-tum, to creep.
sculp-o, sculp-ere, sculp-SI, sculptum, to scrape.
scrib-o, scrib-ere, scrip-SI, scriptum, to write.
serp-o, serp-ere, serp-SI, sculptum, to chisel.

With change of Conjugation.

sépi-o (saepi-o), sêpI-re, sepi-SI, sepi-tum, to hedge in.
sorbe-o, sorbè-re, (sorp-SI) sorbuî, to sup up.

Exceptions.
clep-o, clep-ere, clep-SI(clêp-I), clep-tum, to filch.
lamb-o, lamb-ere, lamb-I, (lamb-I-tum), to lick.

Stems in a K-mute.

Supine: -tum.

159. Perfect.—After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -I.

a. Pure stem.

ag-o, ag-ere, ag-I, ag-tum, to do, drive.
cô-g-o, cô-g-ere, co-g-I, co-ag-tum, to compel.
dê-g-o, dê-g-ere, dê-g-I, dê-ag-tum, to pass (time).
red-ig-o, red-ig-ere, red-I, red-ag-tum, to bring back.
faci-o, fac-ere, fêc-I, fac-tum, to make.
cale-faci-o(calf.), cale-fac-ere, cale-fêc-I, cal-e-fac-tum, to make warm.
per-fici-o, per-fic-ere, per-fêc-I, per-fec-tum, to achieve.
fugi-o, fug-ere, fug-I, fug-i-tum, to flee.
jaci-o, jac-ere, jêc-I, jac-tum, to cast.
con-jici-o, con-jic-ere, con-jêc-I, con-jec-tum, to gather.
ág-o, leg-ere, lêg-I, lec-tum, to pick up, read.

So the other compounds, except dî-lig-o, intel-lig-o, neg-lig-o, see 161.
b. Stem strengthened by N.

frang-o,  
per-frang-o,  
linqu-o,  
re-linqu-o,  
pang-o),  
com-ping-o,  
vinc-o (vio),

frag-ere,  
per-frang-ere,  
linqu-ere,  
re-linqu-ere,  
pang-ere),  
com-ping-ere.com-pēg-I,  
vinc-ere.  

frac-tum,  
per-fractum,  
re-lic-tum,  
(pac-tum),

val-tum,  
artic-tum,  
(ant-um),

to break.  
to shiver.  
to leave.  
to leave behind.  
comp. 2 b and 3,
to drive in.

to drive tight.  
to conquer.

160.  
2. After long stem-syllable, Perfect in -si.

a. Pure stem.

dic-o,  
dūc-o,  
fig-o,  
-fig-o (con-, af-, in-),  
frig-o,  
sug-o,
dic-ere,  
dūc-ere,  
fig-ere,  
-fig-ere,  
frig-ere,  
sug-ere,  

dic-tum,  
duc-tum,  
fixum,*

fric-tum,  
suc-tum,

to say.  
to lead.  
o fasten.  
to strike.  
to parch.  
to suck.  

With change of Conjugation.

auge-o,  
frige-o,  
lūce-o,  
lūge-o,  

aug-ere,  
frig-ere,  
lūc-ere,  
lūg-ere,  

auc-tum,  
fric-tum,  
lūc-tum,  
lūg-tum,

(auxi),  
(frixi),

(to cause to wax.  
to be chilled.  
to give light.  
to be in mourning.

b. Stem strengthened by N, which is retained in Perfect and generally in Supine; the stem-syllable is therefore long by Position.

Supine without N.

fing-o,  
ping-o,  
string-o,
fing-ere,  
ping-ere,  
string-ere,  

finxi,  
pinxi,  
strinxī,

fic-tum,  
pic-tum,  
stric-tum,

to form.  
to paint.  
to draw tight.

Supine with N.

ang-o,  
cing-o,  
ē-mung-o,  
jung-o,  
ling-o,  
ning-o,  
pang-o,  
plang o.  
-stingu-o (ex-, dis-, re-),  
ing-o (tingu-o),  
-ung-o (ungu-o),

ang-ere,  
cing-ere,  
ē-mung-ere,  
jung-ere,  
ling-ere,  
ning-ere,  
pang-ere,  
plang-ere,  

anxi,  
cinxi,  
ē-munxi,  
junxi,  
linxi,  
ninxi,  
panxi,  
planxi,

(to throttle, vex.  
to gird.  
to wipe the nose.  
to yoke, join.  
to yoke.  
to snow.  
to drive in.  
to smile.  
to (stick) put out.  
to wet, dye.  
to anoint.

With change of Conjugation.

sanci-o,  
vinci-o,
sanci-ere,  
vinci-re,  
sanxi,  

sanc-tum and  
vinc-tum,

sanc-tum,  
vinc-tum,

to hallow.  
to bind.
c. Stem strengthened by \( T \), Supine in -\text{sum}.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Strengthened Stem</th>
<th>Flexum*</th>
<th>Flex-o, Flex-e, Flex-i, Flex-um*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flect-o</td>
<td>flect-e, flect-i</td>
<td>flexum*</td>
<td>to bend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nect-o</td>
<td>nect-e</td>
<td>nect-i</td>
<td>to knot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pect-o</td>
<td>pect-e, pect-i</td>
<td>pectum*</td>
<td>to comb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plect-o</td>
<td>plect-e, (plex-i)</td>
<td>plexum*</td>
<td>to plait.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \text{d. The } K\text{-mute dropped after } L \text{ or } R, \text{ and before } S \text{ or } T. \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Strengthened Stem</th>
<th>Flex-o, Flex-e, Flex-i, Flex-um*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>merg-o</td>
<td>merg-e, mer-si</td>
<td>mer-sum*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sparg-o</td>
<td>sparg-e, spar-si, spar-um*</td>
<td>to strew.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-sperg-o</td>
<td>con-sperg-e, con-sper-si, con-sper-sum.</td>
<td>to besprinkle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terg-o (( \text{e-o} ))</td>
<td>terg-(( \text{e-re} )), ter-si, ter-sum*</td>
<td>to wipe.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With change of Conjugation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Al-o, Alg-e, Al-si, Al-lec-tum</th>
<th>to freeze.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fari-o (-ferci-o)</td>
<td>fari-e, far-si, far-tum (-sum),</td>
<td>to stuff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fulci-o</td>
<td>fulci-e, ful-si, ful-tum,</td>
<td>to prop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fulge-o</td>
<td>fulge-e, ful-si,</td>
<td>to glow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indulge-o</td>
<td>indulge-e, indul-si, (indul-tum),</td>
<td>to give way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulce-o</td>
<td>mulce-e, mul-si, mul-sum*,</td>
<td>to stroke.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulge-o</td>
<td>mulge-e, mul-si, mul-sum (ctum)*</td>
<td>to milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sarci-o</td>
<td>sarci-e, sar-si, sar-tum,</td>
<td>to patch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torque-o</td>
<td>torque-e, tor-si, tor-tum,</td>
<td>to twist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turge-o</td>
<td>turge-e, tur-si,</td>
<td>to swell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urge-o</td>
<td>urge-e, ur-si,</td>
<td>to press.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \text{Exceptions.} \)

161. 1. Stem-syllable short, but Perfect in -\text{si}. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Al-o, Alg-e, Al-si, Al-lec-tum</th>
<th>to cook.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coqu-o</td>
<td>coqu-e, coxi, coc-tum.</td>
<td>to cook.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-lig-o (leg-)]</td>
<td>-lig-e, -lexi, -lec-tum.</td>
<td>to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirig-o</td>
<td>dirig-e, dir-lexi, dilec-tum,</td>
<td>to allure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inteligo or intellego, intellig-e-re, intel-lec-tum,</td>
<td>to love forth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negligo or neg-leg-o, neg-li-ge, neg-lexi, neg-lec-tum,</td>
<td>to neglect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(col-lig-e-re, ( \text{e-lig-e} ), 159)</td>
<td>(ad-, con-, d\text{-e}, in-),</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-lici-o (lac),</td>
<td>lic-e, lic-si, lic-tum,</td>
<td>to lure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(al-, il-) pellici-o</td>
<td>pellic-e, pel-si, pel-lec-tum,</td>
<td>to allure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{e-lici-o}, \ (\text{-spici-o (serc)}), )</td>
<td>( \text{e-lici-e, e-lici-si, e-lici-tum,} )</td>
<td>to lure forth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ad-, con-, d\text{-e}, in-), per-spici-o,</td>
<td>-spici-e, -spexi, -spectum,</td>
<td>to peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg-o</td>
<td>reg-e, rexi, rec-tum,</td>
<td>to see through.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirig-o</td>
<td>dirig-e, dir-si, dir-rec-tum,</td>
<td>to see through.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-g-o</td>
<td>per-g-e, per-si, per-rec-tum,</td>
<td>to keep right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surg-o</td>
<td>surg-e, surg-si, surg-rec-tum,</td>
<td>to guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teg-o</td>
<td>teg-e, texi, tec-tum,</td>
<td>to go on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Stem-syllable long, but Perfect in -\text{i}.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Al-o (defective), Ic-e, Ic-i, Ic-tum,</th>
<th>to strike.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ic-o (defective)</td>
<td>Ic-e, Ic-i, Ic-tum,</td>
<td>to strike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present stem rare: Ic-it, Ic-itur, Ic-imur.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
162.

3. With reduplicated Perfect.

disc-o,  disc-ere,  di-die-i,  (disc-iturus),  to learn.

Compounds retain reduplication.

(pang-o, 159, b),  (pang-ere),  pe-pig-i,  pac-tum,  to drive a bargain.

parc-o,  parc-ere,  pe-perc-i (par-si),  (par-surus),  to spare.

com-parco (-perco), com-par-ere,  com-par-si,  com-par-sum,  to save.

posc-o,  posc-ere,  po-pose-i,  to claim.

pung-o,  pung-ere,  pu-pug-i,  punc-tum,  to be pricked.

inter-pungo,  inter-pungere,  inter-punxi,  inter-punc-tum,  to place points between.

tang-o (tag),  tang-ere,  te-tig-i,  tac-tum,  to touch.

at-ting-o,  at-ting-ere,  at-tig-i,  at-tac-tum,  to border upon.

163.

Aspirate Stems in H and V.

The stems in H, and some in V, follow the Conjugation of the K-mute stems.

Remark.—In these stems an original K-mute reappears, as, viv-o for vign(v)vo, and vixi for vign(v)sii. Compare nix for vign(v)s, snow.

Perfect, -si. Supine, -sum.

flu-o (flugv-),  flu-ere,  fluxi,  (flux-us),  to flow.

stru-o (strugv-),  stru-ere,  struxi,  struct-tum,  to build.

trah-o,  trah-ere,  traxi,  tract-tum,  to drag.

veh-o,  veh-ere,  vexi,  vec-tum,  to carry.

viv-o (vigv-),  viv-ere,  vivxi,  vic-tum,  to live.

With change of Conjugation.

cô-nive-o (nigv-),  cô-nive-re,  cô-nixi and ivi,  — to close the eyes.

164.

Stems in a T-mute.

Supine: -sum.

Perfect.—1. The stems in D with short stem-syllable and all stems in -nd, have Perfect in -i.

(Many stems in -nd, with reduplicated Perfect, see 4 below.)

ac-cend-o,  ac-cend-ere,  ac-cend-i,  ac-cen-sum,  to kindle.

dé-fend-o,  défend-ere,  défend-i,  défen-sum,  to strike away, defend.

ed-o,  ed-ere,  ēd-i,  ē-sum (es-sum), to eat.


fund-o (fud),  fund-ere,  fūd-i,  fū-sum,  to pour.

mand-o,  mand-ere,  mand-i,  man-sum,  to chew.

prehend-o,  prehend-ere,  prehend-i,  prehen-sum,  to seize.

scand-o,  scand-ere,  scand-i,  scan-sum,  to climb.

a(d)-, dé-scend-o,  dé-scend-ere,  dé-scend-i,  dé-scen-sum,  to climb up, down.

With change of Conjugation.

prande-o,  prande-re,  prand-i,  pran-sum,  to breakfast.

vide-o,  vidé-re,  vid-i,  vi-sum,  to see.
### 165. 2. Stems in D and T, with long stem-syllable, have Perfect in -si.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Infinitive Stem</th>
<th>Stem-syllable</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>claud-o</td>
<td>claud-ere</td>
<td>clau-si</td>
<td>clau-sum</td>
<td>to shut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-</td>
<td>ex-clūd-ere</td>
<td>ex-clū-si</td>
<td>ex-clū-sum</td>
<td>to shut up, out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laed-o</td>
<td>laed-ere</td>
<td>lae-si</td>
<td>lae-sum</td>
<td>to harm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūd-o</td>
<td>lūd-ere</td>
<td>lū-si</td>
<td>lū-sum</td>
<td>to play.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plaud-o</td>
<td>plaud-ere</td>
<td>pla-si</td>
<td>pla-sum</td>
<td>to clap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-plōd-o</td>
<td>ex-plōd-ere</td>
<td>ex-plō-si</td>
<td>ex-plō-sum</td>
<td>to hoot off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rād-o</td>
<td>rād-ere</td>
<td>rā-si</td>
<td>rā-sum</td>
<td>to scratch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōd-o</td>
<td>rōd-ere</td>
<td>rō-si</td>
<td>rō-sum</td>
<td>to gnaw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trūd-o</td>
<td>trūd-ere</td>
<td>trū-si</td>
<td>trū-sum</td>
<td>to push.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vād-o</td>
<td>-vād-ere</td>
<td>vā-si</td>
<td>vā-sum</td>
<td>to go.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With change of Conjugation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Stem-syllable</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arde-o</td>
<td>arsi</td>
<td>arsum</td>
<td>to be on fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride-o</td>
<td>rsi</td>
<td>rsum</td>
<td>to laugh (at),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senti-o</td>
<td>sensi</td>
<td>sensum</td>
<td>to feel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suāde-o</td>
<td>suāsi</td>
<td>suāsum</td>
<td>to (make sweet) counsel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 166. 3. With assimilation.

#### a. In the Supine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Stem-syllable</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fodi-o</td>
<td>fōd-i</td>
<td>fos-sum</td>
<td>to dig.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitt-o</td>
<td>mi-si</td>
<td>mis-sum</td>
<td>to send.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pand-o</td>
<td>pand-i</td>
<td>pas-sum</td>
<td>to spread out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sede-o</td>
<td>sed-i</td>
<td>ses-sum</td>
<td>to sit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### b. In the Perfect and the Supine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Stem-syllable</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēd-o</td>
<td>ces-si</td>
<td>ces-sum</td>
<td>to yield.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qua-ti-o</td>
<td>(quas-si)</td>
<td>quas-sum</td>
<td>to shake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-cutio</td>
<td>con-cus-si</td>
<td>con-cus-sum</td>
<td>to shatter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 167. Exceptions.

#### 1. With short stem-syllable, but Perfect in -si.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Stem-syllable</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dī-vid-o</td>
<td>dī-vid-ere</td>
<td>dī-vi-si</td>
<td>dī-vi-sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quat-o</td>
<td>quat-ere</td>
<td>(quas-si)</td>
<td>quas-sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2. With long stem-syllable, but Perfect in -i.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Stem-syllable</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cūd-o</td>
<td>cūd-ere</td>
<td>cūd-i</td>
<td>cū-sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīd-o</td>
<td>sīd-ere</td>
<td>sīd-i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In composition -sēdi, -sessum, from sede-o.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Stem-syllable</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>con-sīd-o</td>
<td>con sīd-ere</td>
<td>con-sēd-i</td>
<td>con-ses-sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stride-o</td>
<td>stridere (-ere), strid-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>to whistle, screech.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vert-o</td>
<td>vert-ere</td>
<td>vert-i</td>
<td>ver-sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-vert-or</td>
<td>re-vert-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>re-ver-sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


168. 4. With reduplicated Perfect.

The reduplication of the Perfect is dropped in compound verbs. (153 R.)

- cad-o, cad-ere, ce-cid-I, cā-sum, to fall.
- caed-o, caed-ere, ce-cid-I, cae-sum, to fell.
- pend-o, pend-ere, pe-pend-I, pen-sum, to hang (transit.).
- tend-o, tend-ere, te-tend-I, ten-sum and -tum, to stretch.
- ex-tend-o, ex-tend-ere, ex-tend-I, ex-ten-sum and -tum, to stretch out.
- os-tend-o, os-tend-ere, os-tend-I, os-ten-sum (tus), to show (obs-t.).

With change of Conjugation.

- morde-o, morde-re, mo-mord-I, mor-sum, to bite.
- pende-o, pende-re, pe-pend-I, spon-sum, to hang (intr.).
- sponde-o, sponde-re, spo-pond-I, spon-sum, to pledge oneself.
- tonde-o, tonde-re, to-tond-I, ton-sum, to shear.

In some verbs the strengthening N of the Present has been dropped. In two verbs even the reduplicated syllable has been dropped.

- find-o, find-ere, fid-I, fis-sum, to cleave.
- scind-o, scind-ere, scid-I, scis-sum, to split.
- tund-o, tund-ere, tu-tud-I, tun-sum and tū-sum, to thump.

169. LIQUID-STEMS.

1. All liquid-stems have the stem-syllable short.

   Exceptions.—1. Contracted forms: sū-mo (sub-imo); pō-no (po-sinc or posi-n-o).
   2. Original sibilant stems: haere-o, haes-
   2. Most liquid-stems, by means of the suffix e, pass over into the 2d Conjugation, or in the Perfect, at least, suffer change of Conjugation.
   3. Those which follow the 3d Conjugation throughout take in the Perfect, and in the Supine either -sum or -tum. They lengthen the stem-syllable in the Perfect, or retain the double letter (rr, ll). Some form the reduplicated Perfect.

   - em-o, em-ere, ēm-I, em-tum, to take, to buy.
   So, too, co-em-o, I buy up. But the compounds with ad-, ex-, inter-red-, take -im-o. So dir-im-o, I sever.
   - inter-im-o, inter-im-ere, inter-ēm-I, inter-em-tum, to make way with.

   The other compounds of em-o contract: cō-mo, dē-mo, prō-mo, sū-mo and have -sī in the Perfect, generally with a p between, which is generated by the coming together of a labial and sibilant or dental. Comp hiem(p)s.
170. 1. With the characteristic doubled.

\[ \text{om-o, oem-ere, cemp-si, cemp-tum,} \quad \text{to adorn.} \]
\[ \text{om-o, dem-ere, demp-si, demp-tum,} \quad \text{to take away.} \]
\[ \text{rom-o, pröm-ere, prömp-si (pröm-si), prömp-tum (prömtum),} \quad \text{to take out.} \]
\[ \text{um-o, säm-ere, sämp-si (säm-si), sämp-tum (sämtum),} \quad \text{to take.} \]

The same formation occurs in the stem \(-\text{tem-}\). Present, temn-o, \(I\) scorn.

ontemn-o, temn-ere, temp-si (msi), temp-tum (mtum), to despise.

2. With change of Conjugation in the Present.

\[ \text{an-o, can-ere, ce-cin-i, can-tum,} \quad \text{to sing.} \]
\[ \text{urr-o, curr-ere, cu-curr-i, cur-sum,} \quad \text{to run.} \]
\[ \text{all-o, fall-ere, fe-fell-i, fal-sum,} \quad \text{to cheat.} \]
\[ \text{ari-o, par-ere, pe-per-i, par-tum} \quad \text{paritürus, to bring forth.} \]
\[ \text{com-peri-o, com-peri-re, com-per-i, com-per-tum,} \quad \text{to find out.} \]
\[ \text{re-peri-o, re-peri-re, rep-per-i, re-per-tum,} \quad \text{to find.} \]
\[ \text{bell-o, pell-ere, pe-pul-i, pul-sum,} \quad \text{to push, drive back.} \]
\[ \text{per-cell-o, per-cell-ere, per-cul-i, per-cul-sum,} \quad \text{to smile down.} \]
\[ \text{oll-o, toll-ere, sus-tul-i, sub-lä-tum,} \quad \text{to lift up.} \]

171. APPARENT LIQUID-STEMS IN \(r\).—In the liquid-stems in with long stem-syllable, the \(r\) has arisen from \(s\). The original reappears in the Perfect and Supine: hence the endings \(-\text{si}\) in the Perfect (or by assimilation \(-\text{ssi}\)), and \(-\text{stum} (-\text{sum})\) in the Supine.

haere-o, haerë-re, hæ-si, haes-um, to stick (to).
haauri-o, haurë-re, hau-si, haus-tum, to drain.
ir-o, iber-re, iber-si, ûst-tum, to burn.
com-bür-o, com-bür-ere, com-büs-si, com-büs-tum, to burn up.

With short stem-syllable.

ger-o, ger-ere, ges-si, ges-tum (see tostum, 128), to carry.

172. 1. The stems in \(s\) preceded by a vowel have in general changed it to \(r\). Unchanged appears only:

\[ \text{vis-o, vis-ere, vis-si, vis-sum,} \quad \text{to visit.} \]

2. Stems in \(s\) preceded by a consonant are:

leps-o, leps-ere, leps-ui, leps-tum, to knead.
com-bür-o, com-bür-ere, com-büs-si, com-büs-tum, to burn up.

These have undergone change of Conjugation in the Perfect. (See 76.)
STEMS IN U.

PERFECT IN -I. SUPINE IN -tum.

173. 1. With characteristic preceded by a consonant.

ab-lu-o, ab-lu-ere, ab-lu-i, ab-lū-tum, to wash off.
ab-nu-o, ab-nu-ere, ab-nu-i, (ab-nu-itur-us), to dissent.
acu-o, acu-ere, acu-i, acū-tum, to sharpen.
ad-nu-o (an-nu-o), ad-nu-ere, ad-nu-i, to nod assent.
argu-o, argu-ere, argu-i, argū-tum, to accuse.
con-gru-o, con-gru-ere, con-gru-i, —
ex-u-o, ex-u-ere, ex-u-i, exū-tum, to agree.
lu-o, lu-ere, lu-i, lu-itūr-us, to put on, don.
metu-o, metu-ere, metu-i, —
minu-o, minu-ere, minu-i, minū-tum, to atone for.
plu-o, plu-ere, plu-it, plūv-it, —
ru-o, ru-ere, ru-i, rū-tum (ruiturus), to fear.
spu-o, spu-ere, spu-i, spū-tum, to lessen.
sternu-o, sternu-ere, sternu-i, stū-tum, to rain.
su-o, su-ere, su-i, su-tum, to wash.
tribu-o, tribu-ere, tribu-i, tribū-tum, to roll.

cave-o, cavē-ere, cāv-i, cau-tum, to take heed.
fave-o, favē-ere, faū-vi, fau-tum, to be well-disposed.
fove-o, fovē-ere, fōv-i, fō-tum, to keep warm.
juv-o, jovā-ere, jūv-i, jū-tum (jvāturus), to help.
ad-juv-o, ad-juvā-ere, jūv-i, jū-tum (jū tūrūs), to stand by aid.
lav-o, (lav-e-re,) laū-v-, lau-tum (lū-tum), to wash.
mov-e-o, movē-re, mōv-i, mō-tum, to wash.
pave-o, pavē-re, pāv-i, —

vove-o, vovē-re, vōv-i, vō-tum, to keep warm.

The same reappearance of v occurs in:

ferve-o (o), fervē-re (ere), ferv-i (ferb-ul), —
solv-o, solv-ere, solv-i, solū-tum, to wash.
volv-o, volv-ere, volv-i, volū-tum, to wash.
175. **Remarks.**—1. Deponent verbs are passive forms which have lost their passive or reflexive signification.

2. Stems strengthened by sc or isc have generally an inchoative meaning.  Comp. 152, V.

1. **Stems in a P-mute.**

   1. ad-ip-isc-or,  ad-ip-isc-I,  ad-ep-tus sum,  to (fasten to one's self) attain.
   2. lāb-or,  lāb-I,  lāp-sus sum,  to glide.

2. **Stems in a K-mute.**

   1. a. pro-fic-isc-or,  pro-fic-isc-I,  pro-fec-tus sum,  to (get forward) set out.
   2. b. fung-or,  fung-I,  func-tus sum,  to discharge.
   3. nanc-isc-or,  nanc-isc-I,  nac-tus (nanc-tus) sum,  to get.
   4. c. am-plex-or,  am-plex-I,  am-plex-us sum,  to twine round, embrace.
   5. d. ulc-isc-or,  ulc-isc-I,  ul-tus sum,  to avenge.
   6. Ex.e.experg-isc-or, (reg-) ex-per-g-isc-I,  ex-per-rec-tus sum,  to (right one's self up) awake.

3. **Stems in H and V.**

   1. fru-or (frugv-),  fru-I,  fruc-tus, fru-i-tus sum,  to enjoy.
   2. veh-or,  veh-I,  vec-tus sum,  to (waggon) ride.

4. **Stems in a T-mute.**

   1. assenti-or,  assenti-ri,  assen-sus sum,  to assent.
   2. fate-or,  fatē-ri,  fas-sus sum,  to confess.
   3. con-fite-or,  con-fite-ri,  con-fes-sus sum,  to confess.
   4. grad-i-or,  grad-I,  gres-sus sum,  to step.
   5. ag-gred-i-or,  ag-gred-I,  ag-gres-sus sum,  to attack.
   6. nit-or (gnict-) from genŭ,  nit-I,  ni-sus (nix-us) sum,  to stay one's self on.
   7. ordi-or,  ordi-ri,  or-sus sum,  to begin.
   8. pat-i-or,  pat-I,  pas-sus sum,  to suffer.
   9. per-pet-i-or,  per-pet-I,  per-pes-sus sum,  to endure to the end.
   10. obt-or.  obt-I,  ū-sus sum,  to use.

5. **Stems in a Liquid.**

   1. com-min-isc-or,  com-min-isc-I,  com-men-tus sum,  to think up, devise.
   2. ex-peri-or,  ex-peri-ri,  ex-per-tus sum,  to try.
   3. misere-or,  miserē-ri,  miser-i-tus sum,  to pity.
   4. quer-or,  quer-I,  ques-tus sum,  to complain.

6. **Stems in R for S.**

   1. loqu-or,  loqu-I,  locū-tus sum,  to speak.
   2. sequ-or,  sequ-I,  secū-tus sum,  to follow.
   3. ob-liv-isc-or,  ob-liv-isc-I,  ob-li-tus sum,  to forget.
176. 1. Verbs of the first Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

**WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.**

crep-o, crepā-re, crep-ui, crep-itum, to rattle.

cub-o, cubā-re, cub-ui, cub-itum, to lie.

dom-o, domā-re, dom-ui, dom-itum, to tame.

mic-o, micā-re, mic-ui, —

dǐ-mic-o, dǐ-micā-re, dǐ-micā-vi, dì-micā-tum, to fight (out).

plic-o (ex-plic-o), plicā-re, plic-ui (plicā-vi), plic-itum (-ā-tum), to fold.

son-o, sonā-re, son-ui, son-itum (sonā-tū-rus), to sound.

ton-o, tonā-re, ton-ui, — to thunder.

vet-o, vetā-re, vet-ui, vet-itum, to forbid.

**WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.**

fric-o, fricā-re, fric-ui, fric-tum (-ā-tum), to rub.

nec-o, necā-re, necā-vi, necā-tum, to kill.

ē-nec-o, ē-necā-re, ē-nec-ui (-ā-vi), ē-nec-tum, to kill off.

sec-o, secā-re, sec-ui, sec-tum, to cut.

2. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

**WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.**

ac-cumb-o, ac-cumb-ere, ac-cub-ui, ac-cub-itum, to lie down.

frem-o, frem-ere, frem-ui, frem-itum, to roar, rage.

mol-o, mol-ere, mol-ui, mol-itum, to grind.

vom-o, vom-ere, vom-ui, vom-itum, to vomit.

**WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.**

al-o, al-ere, al-ui, al-tum, al-itum, to nourish.

col-o, col-ere, col-ui, cul-tum, to cultivate.

consul-o, consul-ere, consul-ui, consul-tum, to consult.

frend-o (e-o), frem-ere, frem-ui, frem-tum, to gnash.

occu-l-o, occu-lere, occu-ui, occu-tum, to snatch.

rap-i-o, rap-ere, rap-ui, rap-tum, to seize.

ser-o, ser-ere, —

dē-ser-o, dē-ser-ere, dē-ser-ui, dē-ser-tum, to abandon.

So, too, deps-o, I knead, tex-o, I weave, and pinso, I pound. (See 172.)

**WITHOUT SUPINE.**

compes-c-o, compesc-ere, compesc-ui, to curb in.

con-cin-o (oc-, praev-), con-cin-ere, con-cin-ui, to sing together.

ex-cell-o (ante-, prae), ex-cell-ere, ex-cell-ui, ex-cel-sus, to surpass.

stert-o, stert-ere, stert-ui, to snore.

trem-o, trem-ere, trem-ui, to tremble.
3. Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

amici-o, amici-re, amici-ui (amixi), amici-tum, to clothe.
aperi-o, aperi-re, aper-ui, aper-tum, to open.
operi-o, operi-re, oper-ui, oper-tum, to cover up.
sali-o, sali-re, sal-ui, sal-tum, to leap.
dē-sili-o, dē-sili-re, dē-sil-ui, (dē-sil-tum,) to leap down.

4. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 4th in the Perfect and Supine.

arcess-o, arcess-ere, arcess-ivi, arcess-itum, to send for.
incess-o, incess-ivi (cessi), to attack.
cupi-o, cup-ere, cup-ivi, cup-um, to desire.
pet-o, pet-ere, pet-ivi, pet-um, to seek (fly at).
quaer-o, quaer-ere, quaes-ivi, quaes-itum, to seek.
quaeso, quaesumus, are old colloquial forms, prythee.

5. Verbs which vary between the 2d and the 4th Conjugation.
cie-o (ci-o), cie-re (cl-re), ci-tum (ci-tum), to stir up.
concitus, percitus, excitatus, or excitus, but acitus.

6. Verbs which pass over into the 3d Conjugation in the Supine.
pōt-o, pōtā-re, pōtā-ivi, pōt-tum (po) or pōt-um, pōt-turus, pōtā-turus, to drink.

B. Change of Conjugation as Result of Reduplication.

dō. da-re, ded-i, da-tum, to give, put, do.

Remark.—Everywhere a-short, except in dās, thou givest, and dā, give thou.

1. Like dō, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as:
circum-dō, I surround; satis-dō, I give bail; pessum dō, I ruin; vēnum-dō, I sell; as:
circum-dō, circum-da-re, circum-de-di, circum-da-tum, to surround.

2. The compounds of da-re with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the 3d Conjugation.

ab-dō, ad-dō, con-dō, abs-con-dō, to put away.
ab-dere, ad-dere, con-dere, abs-con-dere, (didī),
ab-did-i, ad-did-i, con-did-i, to put to.
ab-d-itum, ad-d-itum, con-d-itum, to put up (found).

3. Change of Conjugation not resulting from Reduplication.

crē-dō, crē-dere, crē-did-i, crē-d-itum, to put faith.
dē-dō, dē-dere, dē-did-i, dē-d-itum, to give up.
ed-dō, ed-dere, ed-did-i, ed-d-itum, to put out.
in-dō, in-dere, in-did-i, in-d-itum, to put in.
per-dō, per-dere, per-did-i, per-d-itum, to fordo (ruin).
prō-dō, prō-dere, prō-did-i, prō-d-itum, to betray.
red-dō, red-dere, red-did-i, red-d-itum, to give back.
trā-dō, trā-dere, trā-did-i, trā-d-itum, to give over.
vēn-dō, vēn-dere, vēn-did-i, vēn-d-itum, to put up to sale.
178. Change of Conjugation.

sto, *I stand.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb stem</th>
<th>1st person singular</th>
<th>2nd person singular</th>
<th>3rd person singular</th>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>st-o</td>
<td>stā-ere</td>
<td>stēt-i</td>
<td>(stātus)</td>
<td>to stand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad-st-o</td>
<td>ad-stā-ere</td>
<td>ad-stit-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-st-o</td>
<td>con-stā-ere</td>
<td>con-stit-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand fast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-st-o</td>
<td>in-stā-ere</td>
<td>in-stit-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand upon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob-st-o</td>
<td>ob-stā-ere</td>
<td>ob-stit-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand out against</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-st-o</td>
<td>per-stā-ere</td>
<td>per-stit-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand firm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praest-o</td>
<td>praestā-ere</td>
<td>praestit-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand ahead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-st-o</td>
<td>re-stā-ere</td>
<td>re-stit-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand over</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>di-st-o</td>
<td>di-stā-ere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand apart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-st-o</td>
<td>ex-stā-ere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circum-st-o</td>
<td>circum-stā-ere</td>
<td>circum-stet-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>to stand round</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Like *circum-sto*, all compounds of *stāre* with dissyllabic prepositions have -steti in the Perfect, as:


2. In other compounds the reduplicated form *sisto* is used, which, as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, *I (cause to) stand*, but in its compounds, the intransitive, *I stand*.

sist-o,  sist-ere,  (stit-i),  statum,  to (cause to) stand.

con-sist-o,  con-sist-ere,  con-stit-i,  consti-tum,  to come to a stand.

dē-sist-o (ab-),  dē-sist-ere,  dē-stit-i,  dē-sti-tum,  to stand off.

ex-sist-o,  ex-sist-ere,  ex-stit-i,  ex-sti-tum,  to take a stand against.

ob-sist-o,  ob-sist-ere,  ob-stit-i,  ob-sti-tum,  to withstand.

re-sist-o,  re-sist-ere,  re-stit-i,  re-sti-tum,  to stand near.

ad-sist-o,  ad-sist-ere,  ad-stit-i,  to stand upon.

in-sist-o,  in-sist-ere,  in-stit-i,  to take a stand round.

circum-sist-o,  circum-sist-ere,  circum-stet-i,  to stand round.

179.

C. Change of Conjugation as Result of Strengthened Present.

1. Present strengthened by *n*.

li-n-o,  lin-ere,  li-vī, or lēvī,  li-tum,  to besmear.

si-n-o,  sin-ere,  si-vī,  si-tum,  to let.

dē-sin-o,  dē-sin-ere,  de-si-vī (id),  de-si-tum,  to leave off.

pōn-o (po-sino),  pōn-ere,  pos-ūl,  posi-tum,  to place, leave behind.

2. Present strengthened by *sc-*: compare E (181).

cre-sc-o,  cre-sc-ere,  cre-vī,  cre-tum,  to grow.

no-sc-o,  no-sc-ere,  no-vī,  (Adj. nōtus),  to learn to know.

co-gnōsc-o,  co-gnōsc-ere,  co-gnō-vī,  co-gn-ītum,  to recognize.

So the other compounds of nōsco, except ignōsc-o, *I pardon, take no notice of*, which has Sup. ignōtum (adj. ignotus, unknown).

pa-sc-o,  pase-ere,  pā-vī,  pas-tum,  to graze (trans.).

qui-sc-o,  qui-sc-ere,  quiē-vī,  quiē-tum,  to rest.

sue-sc-o (as-, con-),  sues-ere,  suē-vī,  suē-tum,  to accustom oneself.
D.

180. Some stems in -r(-er) undergo change of conjugation as result of Metathesis, which also is a strengthening of the Present. Ser-o, I sow, is a reduplicated form for se-so.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Vocal-stems</th>
<th>Perfect-stems</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cern-o</td>
<td>cern-ere</td>
<td>(crē-vi)</td>
<td>(crē-tum)</td>
<td>to separate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-cern-o</td>
<td>dē-cern-ere</td>
<td>dē-crē-vi</td>
<td>dē-crē-tum</td>
<td>to decide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ser-o</td>
<td>ser-ere</td>
<td>sé-vi</td>
<td>sa-tum</td>
<td>to sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-ser-o</td>
<td>con-ser-ere</td>
<td>con-sē-vi</td>
<td>con-situm</td>
<td>to despise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sper-n-o</td>
<td>spern-ere</td>
<td>sprē-vi</td>
<td>sprē-tum</td>
<td>to strew.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ster-n-o</td>
<td>stern-ere</td>
<td>strā-vi</td>
<td>strā-tum</td>
<td>to rub.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ter-o</td>
<td>ter-ere</td>
<td>trī-vi</td>
<td>trī-tum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E.

INCHOATIVE VERBS.

181. 1. The inchoatives are formed by adding to the vowel-stems -sc-.

Perfect and Supine are formed from the pure stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Vocal-stems</th>
<th>Perfect-stems</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inveterā-sc-o</td>
<td>inveterāsc-ere</td>
<td>inveterā-vi</td>
<td>inveterā-tum</td>
<td>to grow old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nā-sc-o</td>
<td>nāsc-ī</td>
<td>nā-tus sum</td>
<td></td>
<td>to be born.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-olē-sc-o</td>
<td>ex-olēsc-ere</td>
<td>ex-olē-vi</td>
<td>ex-olē-tum</td>
<td>to get one's growth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like exolēsc-o, conjugate obsolēsc-o, I grow old; but abolēsc-o, I disappear, follows aboleo, and inolēsc-o has no supine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Vocal-stems</th>
<th>Perfect-stems</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad-olē-sc-o</td>
<td>ad-olēsc-ere</td>
<td>ad-olē-vi</td>
<td>ad-ul-tum</td>
<td>to grow up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>co-alē-sc-o</td>
<td>co-alēsc-ere</td>
<td>co-al-ui</td>
<td>(co-al-itum)</td>
<td>to grow together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-valē-sc-o</td>
<td>con-valēsc-ere</td>
<td>con-val-ui</td>
<td>con-val-itum</td>
<td>to get well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-calē-sc-o</td>
<td>in-calēsc-ere</td>
<td>in-cal-ui</td>
<td></td>
<td>to get warm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exardē-sc-o</td>
<td>exardēsc-ere</td>
<td>ex-ar-sī</td>
<td>ex ar-sum</td>
<td>to take fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sci-sc-o</td>
<td>sciisc-ere</td>
<td>sci-vī</td>
<td>sci-tum</td>
<td>to decree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad-sci-sc-o</td>
<td>ad-sisc-ere</td>
<td>ad-sci-vī</td>
<td>ad-sci-tum</td>
<td>to take on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob-dormi-sc-o</td>
<td>ob-dormisc-ere</td>
<td>ob-dormi-vī</td>
<td>ob-dormi tym</td>
<td>to fall asleep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-cupisc-sc-o</td>
<td>con-cupisc-ere</td>
<td>con-cup-īvi</td>
<td>con-cupitum</td>
<td>to long for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cup-ere)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-gemisc-o</td>
<td>in-gemisc-ere</td>
<td>in-gem-ui</td>
<td></td>
<td>to sigh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-sipisc-o</td>
<td>re-sipisc-ere</td>
<td>re-sip-īvi</td>
<td></td>
<td>to come to one's senses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sap-ere)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-vivisc-o</td>
<td>re-vivisc-ere</td>
<td>re-vi-xī</td>
<td>re-victum</td>
<td>to come to life again.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Inchoative Verbs may be formed likewise from Nouns or Adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Vocal-stems</th>
<th>Perfect-stems</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ē-vān-esc-o</td>
<td>ē-vānesc-ere</td>
<td>ē-vān-ūi</td>
<td>(vānus), I am angry,</td>
<td>to disappear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irā-sc-or</td>
<td>irā-sci</td>
<td>irā-tus sum</td>
<td>(ira), I am angry,</td>
<td>to grow angry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōt-esc-o</td>
<td>nōtesc-ere</td>
<td>nōt-ūi</td>
<td>(nōtus),</td>
<td>to become known.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vesper-asc-o</td>
<td>vesperasc-ere</td>
<td></td>
<td>(vesper),</td>
<td>to become evening.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
182. **Change of Voice.**

**Neuter Passive Verbs.**

- **aude-ō**, **audē-re**, **an-sus sum**, to dare.
- **fid-ō**, **fid-ere**, **fi-sus sum**, to trust.
- **gaude-ō**, **gaude-re**, **gav-lsus sum**, to rejoice.
- **re-vert-or**, **re-vert-I**, **re-vert-I.,** **re-versus sum**, to turn back.
- **sole-ō**, **sole-re**, **sol-itus sum**, to be wont.

**Remarks.**—1. Some Active Verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning, as: **cēnātus**, one who has dined, from **cēnāre**, to dine; **prānsus**, having breakfasted, from **prandēo**, I breakfast; **pōtus**, drunken, from **pōto**, I drink; **jūrātus**, having taken the oath, sworn, from **jūro**, I swear; **conjūrātus**, a conspirator, from **conjūro**, I conspire. Many such are used purely as Adjectives: **considerātus**, circumspect, from considero; **cautus**, wary, from **caveo**, I beware.

2. The Perfect Participle of many Deponent Verbs has both Active and Passive meaning: **adēptus** (adipiscor), having acquired, or being acquired; **comitātus** (comitor, I accompany); **expertātus** (experior, I try); **exsecrātus** (exsecror, I curse); **imitātus** (imitor, I copy); **meritus** (merceor, I deserve); **opinātus**, necopīnātus (opinor, I think); **pactus** (paciscor, I contract); **partītus** (partior, I distribute); **sortītus** (sortior, I cast lots); **tueor**, I protect; **tūtus**, safe; the Perf. Participle in ordinary use is **tūtātus**.

183. **Irregular Verbs.**

**A. Irregular in the Formation of the Tense-Stems.**

Irregular in the formation of the tense-stems are:

1. Two Verbs in a **P-mute** of the 3d conjugation, viz.:
   - **clepo**, I filch.
   - **lambo**, I lick. See 158.

2. Six Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a **K-mute**, which have, in spite of the short stem-syllable, the Perfect in **-si**, viz.:
   - **rego**, I keep right.
   - **tego**, I cover in.
   - **coquo**, I bake, and the compounds of **specio**, I spy (-ligo, -licio, -spicio).

   From **lego**, however, only **diligo**, I love; **intellego**, I understand; and **neglego**, I neglect; are irregular. The other compounds are regular. See 161.

3. Two Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a **T-mute**, which, in spite of the short stem-syllable, have the Perfect in **-si**, viz.:
   - **divido**, I part.
   - **quatio**, I shake. See 167.

4. Four Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a **T-mute**, which, in spite of long stem-syllable, have the Perfect in **-i**, viz.:
   - **cūdo**, I hammer; **sido**, I sit; **strīdeo**, I whistle; **vertō**, I turn. See 167.
5. Assimilation between bs and ms occurs in the Perfect and Supine of

\[
jube-o, \quad jube-re, \quad jus-si, \quad jus-sum, \quad to~order.
\]
\[
prem-o~(-prim-o), \quad prem-ere, \quad pres-si, \quad pres-sum, \quad to~press.
\]

6. Special irregularities occur in:

\[
bib-o, \quad bib-ere, \quad bib-i, \quad (bib-itum), \quad to~drink.
\]
\[
man-e-o, \quad man-e-re, \quad man-si, \quad man-sum, \quad to~remain.
\]
\[
merti-or, \quad meti-ri, \quad men-sus~sum, \quad to~measure.
\]
\[
met-o, \quad met-ere, \quad mes-suf, \quad mes-sum, \quad to~mow.
\]
\[
mori-or, \quad mori, \quad mortuus~sum, \quad to~die.
\]
\[
rauci-o, \quad rau-ci-re, \quad rau-si, \quad rau-sum, \quad to~be~hoarse.
\]
\[
re-or, \quad re-r, \quad ra-tus~sum, \quad to~think.
\]

This verb has no present participle.

7. Formed from different tense-stems, are:

\[
fer-o, \quad fer-re, \quad tul-i, \quad lâ-tum, \quad to~bear.
\]
\[
toll-o, \quad toll-ere, \quad sus-tul-i, \quad sub-lâ-tum, \quad to~lift.
\]

See 186.

184.  

B.  

Irregular in the Conjugation of the Present-Stem.

Irregular in the conjugation of the Present-stem are:

1. ori-or, ori-ri, or-tus~sum, to~arise.

Present: ori-or, or-eris, or-itur, or-imur, or-imini, ori-untur.

Imperfect: ori-er and or-erer. Gerund: ori-undus.

The compounds follow the simple verb, except ad-ori-ri, rise~up~at, attack, which follows the Fourth Conjugation.

2. i-re, to~go. Stem i, which, before a, o, u, becomes e.

185. INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

\[
\begin{align*}
I~go. \\
\text{Sing.} & -1. \quad e-o, \quad I-am, \\
& 2. \quad e-s, \quad e-a-s, \\
& 3. \quad e-t, \quad e-a-t, \\
\text{Plur.} & -1. \quad i-mus, \quad e-a-mus, \\
& 2. \quad i-tis, \quad e-a-tis, \\
& 3. \quad e-u-nt, \quad e-a-nt.
\end{align*}
\]

Imperative.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Sing.} & -2. \quad i, \quad \text{go~thou}, \quad i-tō, \quad thou~shall~go, \\
& 3. \quad \text{go~ye}, \quad i-tō, \quad he~shall~go, \\
\text{Plur.} & -2. \quad i-te, \quad ye~shall~go, \\
& 3. \quad \text{they~shall~go}.
\end{align*}
\]
IRREGULAR VERBS.

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

I-ba-m, I went,

Future.

I-b-ô, I shall go.

Perfect.

I-vi (compos. -i-i), I have gone,

Pluperfect.

I-vera-m (ex-i-era-m), I had gone,

Future Perfect.

I-verô (ex-i-erô).

INFINITIVE: Pres. i-re. Perf. i-visse (i-sse).
GERUND: e-u-nd-i.
SUPINE: i-tum, to go.

The Passive occurs in some of the compounds: circum-i-ri.

Compounds of eo are: vên-eo, I am for sale, and per-eo, I perish, which serve as passives to vên-do and per-do, whose regular passives occur only in the forms vênd-itus, vênd-endus, and per-ditus.

The compound ambi-o, I solicit, follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout.

Like i-re, to go, are conjugated quî-re, to be able, and ne-quî-re, to be unable, which, however, are usual only in Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

3. fer-re, to bear.

186. The connecting-vowel i is dropped before t and s, and ô before r.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

I bear.

Sing.—1. fer-ô,
2. fer-s,
3. fer-t,

Plur.—1. fer-i-mus,
2. fer-tis,
3. fer-u-nt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I be bearing.

fer-a-m,
fer-ä-s,
fer-a-t,

fer-a-mus,
fer-ä-tis,
fer-a-nt.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

IMPERATIVE.

| SING. | 2. fer, | bear thou, | fer-tō, | thou shalt bear, |
|       | 3.     |           | fer-tō, | he shall bear,   |
| PLUR. | 2. fer-te, | bear ye, | fer-tōte, | ye shall bear, |
|       | 3.     |           | fer-u-ntō, | they shall bear. |

INDICATIVE.

| IMPERF. | fer-ēba-m, | I was bearing, |
| FUTURE  | fer-a-m,   | I shall bear. |
| PERF.    | tul-i,     | I have borne, |
| PASSIVE  | la-tum (t(o)la-tum). |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| IMPERF. | fer-re-m, | I were bearing. |
| FUTURE  | fer-a-r. |
| PERF.    | tul-eri-m. |


PART. fer-e-ns, bearing.
SUPINE: la-tum (t(o)la-tum).

PASSIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am borne.</td>
<td>I be borne.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| SING. | 1. fer-o-r, |
|       | 2. fer-ris, |
|       | 3. fer-tur, |
| PLUR. | 1. fer-i-mur, |
|       | 2. fer-i-mini, |
|       | 3. fer-u-ntur. |

| IMPERF. | fer-ēba-r, |
| FUTURE  | fer-a-r. |
| PERF.    | la-tus sum, |
| INF.     | fer-ri, to be borne. |

GER. : fer-e-nd-us.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

COMPOUNDS.

af-fer-o, af-fer-re, at-tul-i, al-lā-tum, to bear to.
au-fer-o, au-fer-re, abs-tul-i, ab-lā-tum, to bear away.
con-fer-o, con-fer-re, con-tul-i, col-lā-tum, to collect.
dif-fer-o, dif-fer-re, dis-tul-i, di-lā-tum, to put off.
ef-fer-o, ef-fer-re, ex-tul-i, e-lā-tum, to carry out.
of-fer-o, of-fer-re, ob-tul-i, ob-lā-tum, to offer.

Remark.—Suffero, I undergo, has the Perfect sustin-ui (sus-tul-i, sub-lā-tum, being appropriated to toll-o). (183.)

4. ed-ere, to eat.

187. In certain forms the connecting-vowels i and e are dropped before s, t, and r; d before s (r) is dropped or assimilated (as ss), and before t becomes s.

INDICATIVE.

Sing.—1. ed-o,
   2. ed-i-s, ē-s,
   3. ed-i-t, ē-st,

Plur.—1. ed-i-mus,
   2. ed-i-tis, ēs-tis,
   3. ed-u-nt.

I eat.

I be eating.

ed-a-m, ed-ē-a-m,
   ed-ē-a-s, ed-ē-a-t,
   ed-ē-a-mus,
   ed-ē-a-tis,
   ed-ē-a-nt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

ed-ēba-m, I ate,

ed-ere-m, ēs-sem, I were eating.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.—2. ed-e, ēs, eat thou,
   3.

Plur.—2. ed-i-te, ēs-te, eat ye,
   3.

Imbecility, ēs-tōte, ye shall eat.

ed-ū-ntō, they shall eat.

ed-ere, ēs-se, to eat.

5. fi-erī, to become.

188. Fi-o is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the 4th Conjugation, but receives a connecting-vowel in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive, viz., fi-e-reñ, I were becoming; fi-e-ri, to become. In these forms the i is short, but elsewhere it is long, even before another vowel,
The Infinitive ends in -ri, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to facio, I make. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from facio.

**ACTIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>facio, I make</td>
<td>fio, I am made</td>
<td>fis, fit (fimus, fitis), fiunt</td>
<td>fiëbam, I was made, I became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>faciēbam, I made</td>
<td>fiēbam, I was made</td>
<td>fiēbam, I was made</td>
<td>fiēbam, I was made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>faciam, I shall make</td>
<td>fiām, I shall be made (become)</td>
<td>fiām, I shall be made (become)</td>
<td>fiām, I shall be made (become)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>fēcī</td>
<td>fēcī</td>
<td>fēcī</td>
<td>fēcī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>fēceram</td>
<td>fēceram</td>
<td>fēceram</td>
<td>fēceram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Perf.</td>
<td>fēcero</td>
<td>fēcero</td>
<td>fēcero</td>
<td>fēcero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PASSIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td>fierem, fierēs, etc.</td>
<td>fierem, fierēs, etc.</td>
<td>fierem, fierēs, etc.</td>
<td>fierem, fierēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>factum esse, to have become</td>
<td>factum esse, to have become</td>
<td>factum esse, to have become</td>
<td>factum esse, to have become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>futūrum esse or fore</td>
<td>futūrum esse or fore</td>
<td>futūrum esse or fore</td>
<td>futūrum esse or fore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>factum</td>
<td>factum</td>
<td>factum</td>
<td>factum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remark.**—The compounds of facio with Prepositions change the a of the stem into i, and form the Passive regularly from the same stem: perficio, I achieve, Pass. perficiō; interficio, Pass. interficiō, I am destroyed. But when compounded with words other than prepositions, facio retains its a, and uses fio as its Passive:


The accent remains the same as in the simple verb: calefācis, thou warmest.

189. 6. Vel-le, to be willing.

nōlle, to be unwilling; mālle, to be willing rather.

**INDICATIVE.**

**Present.**

| | volo, | nōlo, | mālo, |
| | vis, | nōn vis, | māvis, |
| | vult, | nōn vult, | māvult, |
| | volumus, | nōlumus, | mālumus, |
| | vultis, | nōn vultis, | māvultis, |
| | volunt. | nōlunt. | mālunt. |

**Imperfect.**

| | volēbam, | nōlēbam, | mālēbam. |

**Future.**

| | volam, | nōlam, | mālam, |
| | volēs, | nōlēs, | mālēs. |

**Perfect.**

| | volui, | nōlui, | mālui. |
190. **Defective Verbs.**

1. **ājo, I say ay.**

**IND.**

- Pres. 1. ājo, 2. ais, 3. ait.
- Plur. 3. ājunt.

**IMPERF.**

- ājēbam, etc.

**SUBJ.**

- ājās, ājat, ājant.

**PART.**

- ājens (as adj.), affirmative.

2. **inquam, I say, quoth I.**

**IND.**

- Pres. 1. inquam, 2. inquis, 3. inquit.
- Plur. 3. inquit, 3. inquitant.

**IMPERF.**

- 3. inquīēbat.

**FUT.**

- 2. inquiēs, 3. inquiet.

**PERF.**

- 2. inquistī, 3. ineuit.

**Plur.**

- 2. inquistīs.

3. **fā-ri, to speak.**

**Pres.**

- fātur.

**FUT.**

- fābor, fābitur.

**PERF.**

- fātus sum, etc.

**SUP.**

- fātū

**IMP.**

- fāre.

**GER.**

- fandi, fando.

**PART.**

- Pres. fantis, fantem,

4. **avē-re, salvē-re, valē-re.**

- avē, salvē, salvēbis, hail thou!
- avēte, salvēte, hail ye!
- avēre, salvēre.
- age, agite, come!
- cedo, give!

**Plur.**

- cēt este, farewell.
5.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are *coepī*, I have begun, to which *incipio* serves as a Present; *meminī*, I remember; *ōdī*, I hate; *nōvī* (from *nōscō*, see 179), I know, am aware; *consuēvī* (from *consuēscō*), I am wont.

IND. *coepī*, I have begun.

SUBJ. *coeperim*,

INF. *coepisse*, to have begun.

IND. *meminī*, I remember,

memineram,

meminerō.

SUBJ. *meminerim*,

meminissem.

INF. *meminisse*, to remember.

IMPER. SING.—*mementō*.

Plur.—*mementōte*.

IND. *ōdī*, I hate,

ōderam,

ōderō.

SUBJ. *ōderim*,

ōdissem.

INF. *ōdisse*, to hate.

*coepī* and *ōdī* have passive forms of the same meaning:

*coeptus* sum, I have begun (which is used with the Passive Inf.).

*ōsus* sum, I hate.

191. Obsolete Forms of the Verb.

1. The Future of Verbs in -io is sometimes formed like *ibo*, I shall go: *venibō*, I shall come; *scibō*, I shall know.

2. The Pres. Inf. Pass. was originally longer by -er: *monstrāriēr*, *miscēriēr*, *admittēriēr*.

3. The Pres. Subj. Act. had an ending -im (compare *sim*, *velim*): *edīm*, *edīs*, *edint*, eat; *effodint*, dig out; *coquint*, cook. Stem vowels were dropped: *temperint*, *carint*. Dare formed *duim*; so, *perduim*, *crēduim*.

4. In older poetry *ie* of the Imperf. Ind. Act. 4th conj. is sometimes contracted into $i$: *scibam*.

5. In the Perfect stem there was a shorter formation. So in the 2 Pers. Perf. Act. Ind. 3 conj., *diēxi*, *diēxit* (only from mute stems). The terminations -sim and -sem (Perf. and Pluperf. Subj.), -so (Fut. Perf.), -se (Perf. Inf.), are added to the verb stem. After a vowel s becomes ss. So *dixim*, *faxim*, *adaxim*, *rapsim*; *locāssim*, *negāssim*; *faxem*, *extinxem*; *fazo*, *capso*, *jusso*, *amāsso*; *surrexe*, *prōtraxe*, *dixe*. The Inf. forms of the vowel conjugations coincide with *amāsse*, *flēsse*, *audisse*, as *creāstī*, *dēlēstī*, *audistī* with *diēxi*. A Future Inf. in -sere is also found: *impetrās-sere*, *prohibēssere*. Compare, however, *facesserē*, *capessēre*.

The antiquated forms of *facio* are often found in old formulae.

6. Old forms of esse.

(1) *siem*, *siēs*, *siet*, Pr. Subj.

(2) *escit*, *escunt*, Inchoative for Fut.

(3) *fuam*, *fuās*, *fuat*, *fuant*, Pr. Subj. (stem *fu-*)

(4) *fūvī*, *fōvī*, Pf. Ind.
INDEX OF VERBS.

This Index is intended to serve as a supplement also, and contains many verbs not mentioned in the text, defectives in supine or in perfect and supine, compounds, isolated forms, rare words.

A.

Ab-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Ab-igo (ago), ere, -ētī, -actum, 159.
Ab-jicio (Jacio), ere, -iectī, -jectum, 159.
Ab-lando, ere, -lūtī, -lūtum, 173.
Ab-rico, ere, -nut (-nuitūrus), 173.
Ab-olo, ere, évi, itum, 127.
Ab-olīscō, ere, -olēvī, 181.
Ab-rigio (Rapo), ere, -ripūi, -rep-tum, 176.
Abs-condo (do), ere, -dī (-didī), ditum, 178.
Abs-sto, ere, -stītī, 178.
Ab-sum, -esse, ab-fui, ā-fuī, 113.
Ac-cendo, ere, -cendī, -censum, 164.
Ac-cido (Cado), ere, -cidī, 168.
Ac-cipio (Capio), ere, -cepī, -ceptum, 157.
Ac-colo (colo), ere, -coluī, -cultum, 176.
Ac-cumo, ere, -cubuī, -cultum, 176.
Ac-curro, ere, ac-curri, -cursum, 170.
Aceso, ēre, acui, to be sour.
Acēsco, ere, acui, 181, to get sour.
Ac-quinō (Quaero), ere, -quisīvī, -quisītum, 176.
Acūo, ere, acui, acūtum, 173.
Ad-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Ad-ino (emo), ere, -ēmi, -emtum, 131.
Ad-ipsor, i, ad-emptum, 175, 182.
Ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -ultum, 181.
Ad-orior, -ortī, -ortum, 184.
Ad-sciscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, 181.
Ad-sisto, ere, -stītī, 178.
Ad-spicio, ere, -spēxi, -spectum, 161.
Ad-sto, -stāre, -stītī, 178.
Ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuī, af-fuī, 113.
Aegresco, ere, to fall sick.
Af-ero, -ferre, at-tulī, al-lūtum, 186.
Age, 190.
Ag-gredior, -gredī, -gressus, 175.
Ag-nōscō, ere, agnōvī, agnītum (agnōtūrus), 179.
Ago, ere, ēgī, actum, 159.
 Ağjo, 190.
Albeo, ēre, to be white.
Algeo, ēre, alīt, 160.
Al-lico, ere, -lexī, -lec-tum, 161.
Al-luo, ere, -lūtī, lūtum, 176.
Alo, ere, alīt, ali(tum), 176.
Amb-igo (ago), ere, 159.
Amb-īo (eo), īre, ivī (ii), itum, 185.
Amicio, īre, (amicītūs), amictum, 176.
Amo, ēre, āvī, ātum. See 119.
Amplectō, ī, amplexus, 175.
Ango, ere, anxtī, 160.
An-nuo, ere, annūtum, 173.
Ante-cello, ere, 176.
Ante-sto, -stāre, -stītī, 178.
Apāge, 190.
A-peria, -re, aperuī, apertum, 176.
Apiscor, ī, aptus sum. See adipiscor, 175.
Ap-peto, ere, ivī, itum, 176.
Ap-plico (176), āre, -plicūi, -plicitum, -plicātum.
Ap-prōno (179), ere, -posui, -positum.
Arceo, ēre, arcui (arcus, (comp. 128) (artus (adj.))
Arcesso (accerso), ere, arcessīvī, -itum, 176.
Ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, 165.
Arēscō, ere, ārui, 181, to become dry.
Arguo, ere, argui, (argūtum, ) 173.
Ar-ripio (Rapio), ere, ul, -reptum, 176.
A-scendo (Scando), ere, ī, scantum, 164.
A-spicio, ere, a-spectūs, a-spectum, 161.
As-sentiōr, irī, assensus sum, 175.
As-sideo (Sedeo), ēre, -sedī, -sessum, 166.
As-suesco, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, 179.
At-texo, ere, -texui, -textum, 172.
At-tineo (Teneo), ēre, ui, -tentum, 128.
INDEX OF VERBS.

At-tingo (tango), ere, attigí, attac-tum, 162.
At-tollo, ere, to raise up.
Audeo, ere, ausus sum, 182.
Audio, ire, tvi, tum. See 136.
Au-fero, -ferre, abstuli, ablatum, 186.
Augeo, ere, auxí, auctum, 156.
Avé, 190.

B.
Balbútio, ire, to stutter.
Batuo, ere, ut, to pummel, fence.
Bibo, ere, bibí, (bibitum), 183.

C.
Cado, ere, cecidi, cásum, 168.
Caecrietio, ire, to be blind.
Caedo, ere, cecidi, caesum, 168.
Calefacio, ere, -feci, -fectum, 159, 188.
Calésco, ere, calu, to get warm.
Calleo, ere, ut, to be skilled.
Calveo, ere, ut, to be bold.
Candeo, ere, ut, to shine.
Cáneo, ere, ut, to be gray.
Cano, ere, cæcin, cantum, 170.
Cappresso, ere, capessi, itum, 176.
Capio, ere, cæpi, captum, 157. See 139.
Carpo, ere, carpsi, carpitum, 158.
Caveo, ere, cávi, cautum, 174.
Cedo, ere, cessi, cæsum, 166.
Cénatus, 182, R. 1.
Censeo, ere, uf, cæsum, 128.
Cerno, ere, (crevi), (cre tum), 180.
Cieo, ¡ cière, cive, cítum, 176.
Cío, ¡ círe.
Cingo, ere, cinxii, cinctum, 160.
Circum-do, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 177.
Circum-sisto, ere, steti, 178.
Circum-sto, stáre, steti, 178.
Claudo, ere, clausi, clausum, 165.
Clepo, ere, clepsi, cleptum, 158, 183.
Co-álesco, ere, -alui, (-alitum), 181.
Co-arguo, ere, uf, 173.
Co-emó, ere, -emí, -emítum, 169.
Coepti, coepisset, 190.
Co-gnósco, ere, -gnóvi, -gnitum, 156, 179.
Có-go (ago), ere, co-égí, co-actum, 159.

Col-ìdo (laedo), ere, -istí, -isum, 165.
Col-ligo (lego), ere, -légí, -lectum, 159.
Col-lúceo, ere, -lúxi, 160.
Colo, ere, colui, cultum, 176.
Com-buro, ere, -bussi, -bustum, 171.
Com-edeo, ere, -édí, -èssum (estum), 164.
Comitátus, 182, R. 2.
Comminiscor, i, commentus sum, 175.
Com-moveo, ere, -móvi, -mórum, 174.
Cò-mo (emo), ere, cómpi, cómpitum, 169.
Com-parco, ere, -parsi, -parsum, 162.
Com-pello, ere, com-puli, -pulsum, 168, 170.
Com-perio (pario), ire, com-perfi, com-per-tum, 170.
Compelso, ere, uf, 176.
Com-lingo, ere, -pégi, -pectum, 159.
Com-plector, i, com-plexus, 175.
Com-pleo, ere, eví, étum, 127.
Com-primo (premo), ere, -pressi, -pressum, 183.
Com-pungo, ere, -punxi, -punctum, 162.
Con-cido (cado), ere, -cidi, 168.
Con-cído (caedo), ere, -cidi, -cisum, 168.
Con-cino (cano), ere, -cini, 176.
Con-citus (cieo), 176.
Con-clúdo (claudi), ere, -clusi, -clusum, 165.
Con-cupisco, ere, -cupi, cupitum, 181.
Con-cutio (quatío), ere, -cussi, -cussum, 167.
Con-do, ere, -didí, -ditum, 177.
Con-fécio (farcio), ire (feri), fertum, 160.
Con-fero, -ferre, -tuli, collátum, 186.
Con-ficio (facio), ere, -feci, -fectum, 159, 188.
Con-fiteor (fateor), ei, -festus, 175.
Con-fringo (frango), ere, -frígí, -fractum, 159.
Con-gruo, ere, congrui, 173.
Con-jicio (jacio), ere, -jécí, -jectum, 159.
Conjúrátus, 182, R. 1.
Con-níveo, ere, (conníxi), 163.
Con-quiró (quaero), ere, -quisívi, -quisitum, 176.
Con-sero, ere, -serui, -sertum, 176.
Con-sero, ere, -savi, -situm, 180.
Con-sideratus, 182, R. 1.
Con-sidro, ere, consedui, -sessum, 167.
Con-sistio, ere, -stifi, -stitum, 178.
Con-spicio, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 161.
Con-stituio (statuo), ere, ui, -stitum, 173.
Con-sto, -stare, -stiti, (constaturus), 178.
Con-sucesco, ere, -suavi, -suetum, 179, 190.
Consulo, ere, consului, -sulum, 176.
Con-tenno, ere, -tempsi, -temptum, 169.
Con-texto, ere, -textui, -textum, 172.
Con-tineo (teneo, 128), ere, ui, -tentum.
Con-tingo (tango), ere, contigui, -contactum, 162.
Convalesco, ere, -valui, -valitum, 181.
Coquo, ere, coxi, coctum, 161, 183.
Cor-rpio (rapio), ere, -rijui, -repillum, 176.
Cor-rulo, ere, corrui, 173.
Crbriscosco, ere, crbrui, to get frequent.
Crdo, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.
Crepo, ere, crepui, crepitum, 176.
Cresco, ere, crevi, cretum, 179.
Cubo, are, cubui, cubitum, 176.
Cudo, are cudui, cuisum, 167.
Cupio, ere, cupiui, cupitum, 176.
Curro, ere, curcurri, cursum, 170.

D.
De-cerno, ere, -crevi, -cretum, 180.
De-cerpo (carpo), ere, si, tum, 158.
De-do, dedere, dedidii, deditum, 177.
De-fendo, ere, -fendi, -fensum, 164.
Defetiscor, i, to be worn out.
De-go (ago), ere, 159.
Deleo. See Paradigm, 123–126.
De-ligo (lego), ere, -legi, -lectum, 159.
De-mo (emo), ere, dempsi, demptum, 169.
Depello (170), ere, depuli, depulsun.
De-primo (premo, 183), ere, -pressi, pressum.
Depso, ere, depsiui, depstum, 172.
De-scendo (scando), ere, -scendi, -scensus, 164.
De-sero, ere, -serui, -sertum, 176.
De-silio (salio), ire, (ir), (desultum), ut, 176.
De-sino, ere, desvi, desitum, 179.
De-sipio (sapio), -cre, 176.
De-sisto, ere, -stifi, -stitum, 178.
De-sipio, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 161.
De-sum, esse, -ful, 113.
De-tendo (168), ere, -tendi, -tentum.
De-tineo (teneo, 128), ere, -ui, -tentum.
De-vertor, -i, 182.
De-co, ere, dixi, dictum, 160.
Diff-fero, -ferre, distulii, dilatum, 186.
Di-gnosco (noscio, 179), ere, -gnovi.
Di-ligo, ere, -lexi, -lectum, 161.
Di-mico, are, avi, atum, 176.
Di-rigo, ere, -rexi, -rectum, 161.
Dir-imo (emo, 169), ere, -emi, -emtum.
Dis-crepo, are, -crepui (avi), 176.
Dis-cumbo (176), ere, -cubui, -cubitum.
Dis-pesco, ere, [-pesciui,] -pestum, to divide.
Dis-sideo (sedeo, 166), ere, -sedii.
Di-stinguo, ere, -stinxii, -stinctum, 160.
Di-sto, -stare, 178.
Di-tesco, ere, to grow rich.
Divido, ere, divisi, divisum, 167.
Do, dare, dedi, datum, 177.
Doceo, ere, docui, doctum, 128.
Domo, are, ui, itum, 176.
Dugo, ere, duxii, ductum, 160.
Dulcesco, ere, to grow sweet.
Duresco, ere, durui, to grow hard.

E.
E-do, ere, edi, esum, 164, 187.
E-do (po), edere, edidi, editum, 177.
Eff-fero, -ferre, extulii, elatum, 186.
Egeo, are, egui, to want.
Elicio, ere, -licui, -licitum, 161.
E-lico (lego), ere, -legi, -lectum, 159.
Emico (176), are, ui (aturus).
Emineo, ere, ut, to stand out.
Emo, ere, emui, emtum, 169. See 131.
Eneco, are, enecui, enectum, 176.
Eo, ere, iveri, itum, 185.
Evado, ere, evasi, evasum, 165.
Evanesco, ere, evaiui, 181.
Ex-ardecso, ere, exarsi, exarsum, 181.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX OF VERBS.</th>
<th>113</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ex-cello, ere, ut (excelsus), 176.</td>
<td>Frico, are, ut, fructum (utum), 176.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceitus, 176.</td>
<td>Frigo, are, fritxi, fructum (frixum), 160.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-ciño (clando), ere, -sti, -sum, 165.</td>
<td>Frondeo, are, ut, to be leafy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-curo (170), ere, excucurri, -cursum.</td>
<td>Frur, I, fructus (fruits) sum, 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-olisco, ere, -olévi, -olétem, 181.</td>
<td>Fugio, ere, fugi, fugitum, 159.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-pello (170), ere, -pult, -pulsum.</td>
<td>Fulcio, ere, fulsi, fultum, 160.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-pergiscor, I, experrectus sum, 175.</td>
<td>Fulgoe, are, fulsi, 160.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-perior, intim, -pertus sum, 175, 182, R. 2.</td>
<td>Fundo, ere, fudti, fusum, 164.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-pleo, ere, evi, etum, 127.</td>
<td>Fungor, I, functus sum, 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-plico, are, ut (aví), itum (utum), 176.</td>
<td>(Furo, def.), furere, to rave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-plódo (plaudo), ere, -sti, -sum, 165.</td>
<td>G.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-stinguo, ere, -stinci, -stinctum, 160.</td>
<td>Gaudeo, are, gavisus sum, 182.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-sto, 184, 186.</td>
<td>Gerno, ere, ut, itum, 176.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-teudo, ere, -u, -utum (utum), 173.</td>
<td>Gero, ere, gessi, gestum, 171.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.</td>
<td>Gigno, ere, genufi, genitum, 176.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facesso (176), ere, 1vi (-i), itum.</td>
<td>Glisco, ere, to excl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facio, ere, feci, factum, 159, 188.</td>
<td>Gradior, I, gressus sum, 175.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fallo, ere, fefell, falsum, 170.</td>
<td>H.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farcio, ire, farci, fartum (-sum), 160.</td>
<td>Haeréo, are, haest, haesum, 171.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farsi, 190.</td>
<td>Haurio, are, hausti, haustum, 171.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fateor, fieri, fassus sum, 175.</td>
<td>(haustus, hausturus),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatisco, ere, to fall apart.</td>
<td>Hisco, ere, to yawn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatiscor, I (fessus, adj.).</td>
<td>Horreo, are, ut, to stand on end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faveo, are, favi, fautum, 174.</td>
<td>Hortor, ari, atus sum, 141, 142.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferio, are, ire, to strike.</td>
<td>I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferro, ferre, tul, latum, 183, 186.</td>
<td>Ico, are, ici, ictum, 161.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fervo, ere, fervi, factum, 160.</td>
<td>Ignotico, ere, -gnóvi, -gnótum, 179.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fido, ere, fìsus sum, 182.</td>
<td>Il-licio, ere, -lexi, -lectum, 161.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figo, ere, fixi, fixum, 160.</td>
<td>Il-lido (laedo), ere, -lisli, -lisum, 165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Findo, ere, fidii, fissum, 168.</td>
<td>Imbuco, ere, ut, itum, 173.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flingo, ere, finxi, factum, 160.</td>
<td>Imittatus, 182, R. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fio, fieri, factus sum, 188.</td>
<td>Immineo, are, to overhang.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flecto, ere, flexi, flexum, 160.</td>
<td>Im-pingo (pango, 160), ere, -pëgil, -pactum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fleo, ere, aví, etum, 137.</td>
<td>In-calêso, are, -cali, 181.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fligo, ere, flixi, flectum, 160.</td>
<td>In-cendo, ere, -cendi, -censum, 164.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flóreo, are, ut, to bloom.</td>
<td>Incesso, ere, 1vi (i), 176.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluo, are, fluxi (fluxus, adj.), 163.</td>
<td>In-cido (cado, 168), ere, -cidii, -cäsum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fodio, ere, fódi, fóssum, 106.</td>
<td>In-cido (caedo, 168), ere, -cidii, -ci-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forem, 112.</td>
<td>sum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Foveo, are, fóvi, fótem, 174. | In-cipio (capio, 157), ere, -cëpi, -cep-
| Frango, ere, frégi, fractum, 159. | tum. |
| Fremo, ere, ut, itum, 176. | In-crepo (crepo, 170), are, ut, itum. |
| Frendo (eo), ere (ui), frésum, fraissum, 176. | In-cumbo (176), ere, -cubui, -cubitum. |
INDEX OF VERBS.

In-cutio (quatio, 167), ere, -cussi, -cussum.
Ind-igeo (Egeo), ere, ut, to want.
Ind-ipsor, i, indeptus sum, 175.
Indo, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.
Indulgeo, ere, induls (indultum), 160.
Indo, ere, -dui, -datum, 173.
Inceptio, ere, to be silly.
Inemisco, ere, ingenui, 181.
Ingruo, ere, ut. See congruo, 173.
Ino, i, nōlus (nōtul), 161.
Inolisco, ere, -olvī, -olitum, 181.
Inquam, 190.
In-sideo (Sdeo, 166), ere, -sēdi, -ses-sum.
In-sisto, ere, -stiti, 178.
In-spicio, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 161.
Inter-ficio, ere, -feci, -fectum, 159.
In-sto, āre, -stī, (instātūrus), 178.
Insum, -esse, -fui, 113.
Intel-ligo, ere, -lexi, lectum, 161, 183.
Inter-imo (Emo), ere, -emī, -emtum, 169.
Inter-pungo, ere, -punxi, -punctum, 162.
Inter-sto, āre, -stetī, 178.
Inter-sum, -esse, -fui, 113.
Inveterasco, ere, -āvi, 181.
In-vādo, ere, invāxi, -vāsum, 165.
Irāscor, i, irātus sum, 181.
Irāso, ēre, irācui, to lie.
Jaceo, ēre, jacui, to lie.
Jacio, ere, jecī, jactum, 159.
Jubeo, ēre, jussī, jussum, 183.
Jungo, ēre, junxi, junctum, 160.
Juratus, 182, R. 1.
Juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum (juvātūrus), 174.

L.

Labor, i, lapsus sum, 175.
Lacesso, ere, lacessivi, -tum, 176.
Lacio, 161.
Laedo, ere, laesi, laesium, 165.
Lambo, ere, 158, 183.
Langent, ēre, i, to be languid.
Lateo, ere, ut, to lie hid.
Lavo, āre (ere), lāvi, lauitum, lōtum, lāvtum, 174.
Lego, ere, lægti, lectum, 159.
Libet, libēre, libuit (licitum est), it
pleases.
Licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), it is
ermitted.
Lingo, ere, linxi, linctum, 160.
Lino, ere, livī (liui), litum, 179.
Linguo, ere, licuit, to be clear.
Līveo, ēre, to be livid.
Loquor, i, locūtus sum. Paradigm, 145, 146.
Lūceo, ēre, læxi, 160.
Lūdo, ere, lūsi, lūsum, 165.
Lūgeo, ēre, læxi, 160.
Luo, ere, lui | litum, to wash, 173.
| luitum, to atone for.

M.

Maereo, ēre, to grieve.
Mālo, mālle, mālui, 189.
Mando, ere, mandī, mansum, 164.
Mancio, ēre, manī, mansum, 183.
Medeor, ēri, to heal.
Memini, 190.
Mentior, ēri, itus. Paradigm, 147.
Mereor, ēri, meritum sum, 182, R. 2.
Mergo, ēre, mersī, mersum, 160.
Mētior, ēri, mensum sum, 183.
Meto, ere, messuī (rare), messum, 183.
Metuo, ere, ut, 173.
Mico, ēre, ut, 176.
Minuo, ere, minut, minūtum, 173.
Miscio, ēre, ut, mixtum, (mistum), 128.
Misereor, ēri, miseritus, (misertus)
sum, 175.
Mitto, ere, mīsī, missum, 166.
Molo, ere, molū, molitum, 176.
Moneo, ēre, ut, itum, 129, 130.
Mordeo, ēre, momordi, morsum, 168.
Morior, mori, mortus sum, 183.
Moritz, mortūrus sum, 183.
Moveo, ēre, movī, mōtum, 174.
Mulceo, ēre, mulī, mulsum, 160.
Mulgeo, ēre, mulū, mulsum(ctum),
160.
Mungo, ere, munxi, mucntum, 160.

N.

Nancisco, i, nactus (nactus), 175.
Nācor, i, nātus sum (nāsciturus)
181.
Neco, ēre, āvi, ātum, 176.
Necto, ere, necti, nectum, 160.
Neg-lico, ere, -lexi, -lectum, 161.
Neconditus, 182, R. 2.
Neo, nēre, nēvi, nētum, 127.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERBS</th>
<th>INDEX OF VERBS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nequeo, ere, 185.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nôtesco, ere, nôtui, 181.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ningo, ere, ninxi, 160.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niteo, ere, ut, to shine.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nótor, i, nixus (nîlus) sum, 175.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nólo, nôlle, nôlu, 189.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neceo, ere, uf (nocitûrus), to be hurtful.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nôsco, ere, nôvi, nôtum, 179.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nûbo, ere, nûpsi, nûuptum, 158.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ob-do, ere, -didî, -ditum, 177.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ob-dormisco, ere, -dormîvi, -dormîtum, 181.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obliviscor, i, oblitus sum, 175.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ob-sideo (sedeo, 166), ere, -sêdi, -sessum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ob-sisto, ere, -stîfî, -stîtum, 178.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obs-olêsco, ere, -olôvi, -olôtum, 181.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ob-stô, stâtre, stîtum (obstâtûrus), 178.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obtîneo (teneo, 128), ëre, -tinuî, -tenûm.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oc-cido, (cado), ere, -cidî, -câsum, 168.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oc-cido (caedo), ere, -cidî, -càsum, 168.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oc-cino (cano), ere, -cînuî, 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oc-cipio (capio), (157), ere, -cêpi, -ceptum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occulo, ere, occului, occultum, 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odî, def., 190.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of-fendo (164), ere, -fendî, -fensum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of-fero, -ferre, obtuli, oblâtum, 186.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oleo, ere, uf, to smell.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olêsco. See 181.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operio, ire, operuî, opertum, 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opînâtus, 182, R. 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opperior, irî, oppertus (or ëtus). Comp. 175, 5.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordior, irî, orsus sum, 175.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orior, irî, ortus sum (oritûrus), 184.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Os-tendo, ere, -tendî, -ten-sum (-tenûs), 168.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paciscor, i, pactus sum, 175, 182, R. 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paleo, ere, -ui, to be pale.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pando, ere, pandî, passum (pansum), 166.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pango, ere  { pepigî, 162, } pactum.  { paunxî, 160, }</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parco, ere, pepereî (parsî), parsûrus, 162.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pario, ere, peperî, partum (paritûrus), 170.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partior, irî, ëtus, 182, R. 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pasco, ere, pâvî, ëtatum, 179.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pate-facio, ere, -fêci, -factum, 188.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pateo, ere, ut, to be open.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patior, i, passus sum, 175.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paveo, ere, pâvî, 174.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pecto, ere, pexî, pexûm, 160.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pel-licio, -licere, -lexî, -lectum, 161.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pello, ere, pepuli, pulsum, 170.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pendeo, ere, pependî, 168.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pendo, ere, pependî, pensum, 168.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-cello, ere, perculû, perculsum, 170.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percenseo (censeo), ere, -cënsû, -cënsum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percitus (cieo), 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-do, ere, -didî, -ditum, 177.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-eo, ire, perīt, ëtum, 185.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-ficio, ere, -fêci, sectum, 188.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pergo (rego), ere, perrexi, perrec- tum, 161.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-petior (patior, 175), i, perppessû sum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-spicio, ere, -spexî, -spectum, 161.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-stó, -stâre, -stît, 178.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-tîneo (teneo, 128), ëre, uf.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pessum-do, -dare, -dedî, -datum, 177.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peto, ere, ëvi (iû), ëtum, 156, 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piget, pigere, piguit, pigitum est, ët urks.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pingo, ere, pinxî, pictum, 160.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pinso, ere, uf (iû), pinsitum (pistum, pinsum), 172.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plango, ere, planxî, planctum, 160.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plauo, ere, plauî, plausum, 165.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plecto, ere, plexî, plexum, 160.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plector, i, to be punished.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleo. See 127.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plico, ëre, uf (iû), ëtum (âtum), 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluo, ere, pluit, 173.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polleo, ëre, to be potent.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pôno (169), ere, posui, positum, 179.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posco, ere, poposcl, 163.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos-sideo (sedeo, 166), ere, -sêdi, ses- sum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos-sum, posse, potui, 115.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pôto, ëre, àvi, ëtum, potâtum, 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pôtus, 182, R. 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prae-cello, ere, cellû, 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prae-cino, ere, cinû, 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prae-curro, ere, -cucurrî, -cursum, 170.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prae-sideo (sedeo, 166), ëre, sêdi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Praecum, esse, fini, 113.
Praecuro, stare, siti, (status), 178.
Praeundo, ere, prandii, pransum, 164, 182, R. 1.
Prehendo, ere, prehendi, prehensum, 164.
Premo, ere, pressi, pressum, 183.
Prudigo (ago, 159), ere, -ezi.
Prudore, ere, -didu, -ditum, 177.
Proficiscor, i, profectus sum, 175.
Proficior (fateor, 175), eri, -fessus sum.
Primo (emo), ere, prompst, prontum, 169.
Prontendo, prodesse, pronsus, 114.
Prontendo (tendo, 168), ere, -tendi, -tentum, -tensum.
Psallor, ere, I, 170.
Pudet, ere, puduit, pudium est, it shames.
Puerasco, ere, to become a boy.
Pungor, ere, pupugit, punctum, 162.

Q.
Quaero, iere, quaesivi, quaesitum, Quaeso, i, 176.
Quatio, ere, (quasit), quassum, 166.
Queo, quire, 185.
Queror, queri, questus sum, 175.
Quiesco, ere, quiivi, quietum, 179.

R.
Rado, ere, rasi, rassum, 165.
Rapio, ere, rapui, ruptum, 176.
Raucio, ire, rauisi, rausum, 183.
Re-censeo (censeo, 128), ere, -censui, -censum (recensitum).
Recrudescor, ere, -cruduli, to get raw again.
Redarguo (173), ere, -argui.
Redo, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.
Redizo (ago), ere, -egi, -actum, 159.
Re-fello (fallo, 170), ere, refelli.
Refero (183, 186), -ferre, -fut, -latum.
Regio, ere, rexi, rectum, 161, 183.
Re-linguo, ere, -limit, -lactum.
Reminiscor, i, to recollect.
Renideo, ere, to glitter.
Reror, reri, ratus sum, 183.
Re-perio, ire, repentii, repertum, 170.
Repio, ere, repst, reptum, 158.
Re-sipisco, ere, -sippi (-sipi), 181.
Re-sisto, ere, -stii, -stitum, 178.

Re-spondeo (168), ere, -spondi, -spou.
Re-sto, stare, -stii, 178.
Resinguo, ere, -stincto, -stintum, 160.
Re-lineo (teneo, 128), ere, ui, -tenum.
Re-vertor, i, reverti, reversum, 167.
Re-vivisco, ere, vixi, victum, 181.
Rideo, ere, risi, rium, 165.
Rigo, ere, ui, to be stiff.
Rudo, ere, rudvi, ium, 176.
Rumpo, ere, rupi, ruptum, 157.
Ruo, ere, ru, rutum (ruiturus), 173.

S.
Salio, ire, (sali), saltum, 176.
Sallo, ere, salii, salsum, 170.
Salm, def., 190.
Sancio, ire, sanxi, sanctum, 160.
Sapio, ere (sapti), sapii, 176.
Sarcio, ire, sarxi, sartum, 160.
Satis-do, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 177.
Scabo, ere, scabi, to scratch.
Scalpo, ere, scalpsi, scalpum, 158.
Scando, ere, scandi, scasum, 164.
Sceato, ere, to gush forth.
Scindo, ere, scidi, scissum, 168.
Seisco, ere, sevi, sectum, 181.
Scribo, ere, scripti, scriptum, 158.
Sculplo, ere, scalpsi, scalpum, 158.
Seko, are, secul, sectum, 176.
Sedeco, ere, sedi, sessum, 166.
Seligio (lego, 159), ere, -legi, -lectum.
Sentio, ire, sensi, sensum, 165.
Selpio, ire, evi, sepultum, 176.
Sepio, ire, sequi, septum, 158.
Sequor, i, secatus sum, 175.
Sero, ere, 176.
Sero, ere, sevi, satum, 180.
Serpo, ere, serpsi, scriptum, 158.
Sido, ere, sidi, 167.
Sileo, ere, ui, to be silent.
Sino, ere, sivi, situm, 179.
Sisto, ere, stii, statum, 178.
Sitio, ire, evi, to thirst.
Solaco, ire, solitus sum, 182.
Solve, ere, salvi, solutum, 174.
Sono, are, soni, sonitum, 176.
Sorbeo, ere (sorp-si), sorbus, 158.
INDEX TO VERBS.

Sordeo, ère, ut, to be dirty.
Sortior, irt, sortitus sum, 182, R. 2.
Spargo, ère, sparsi, sparsum, 160.
Sperno, ère, sprævi, spretum, 180.
- Spicio. See ad-spicio.
Splendeo, ère, ut, to shine.
Spondeo, ère, spopondi, sponsum, 168.
Spuo, ère, spui, spútum, 173.
Squaleo, ère, to be rough, foul.
Statuo, ère, statui, statitum, 173.
Sterno, ère, strævi, strætum, 180.
Sternuo, ère, sternui, sternum, 173.
Sterto, ère, stertui, 176.
Tego, ère, to be covered, covered.
Tango, -cendl, -cessum.
Taedet, pertaesum est, it tires.
Tango, ère, tetigt, tactum, 162.
Tego, ère, texi, tectum, 161, 183.
Temno, ère, 169.
Tendo, ère, tetendī, tensum (-tum), 168.
Teneo, ère, tenui, (tentum), 128.
Tergo (eo), ère, tersi, tersum, 160.
Tero, ère, trivi, tritum, 180.
Texo, ère, texui, textum, 172.
Timeo, ère, ut, to fear.
Tinguo, ère, tinxi, tink tum, 160.
Tolluo, ère, sustuli, sublātum, 170.
Tondeo, ère, totondi, tonsum, 168.
Tono, ère, ut, 176.
Torpeo, ère, ut, to be torpid.
Torqueo, ère, torsi, tortum, 160.
Tordeo, ère, torruui, tostum, 128.
Trā-do, ère, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Traho, ère, traxi, tractum, 163.
Tremo, ère, ut, 176.
Tribuo, ère, ut, tributum, 173.
Trū-do, ère, trūsi, trūsum, 165.
Tueor, ēri (tuitus) tuitūsus sum, 182, tūtus, R. 2.
Tumeo, ère, ut, to swell.
Tundo, ère, tutūdi, tunsum, tūsum, 168.
Turgeo, ère, tursi, 160.

U.

Ulciscor, irt, ultus sum, 175.
Ungo, ère, unxi, uncum, 160.
Urgeo, ère, ursi, 160.
Uro, ère, ussi, ustum, 171.
Utcor, ēri, 175.

V.

Vādo, ère, 165.
Valē, 190.
Velo, ère, vexi, vectum, 163.
Vello, ère, velii (vulis), vulsum, 170.
Ven-do, ère, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Ven-eo, ère, ivi (ii), 185.
Venio, ère, věni, ventum, 170.
Vēnum-do, -dare, ēdī, -datum, 177.
Vercor, ēri, veritus sum. See 143.
Verro, ère, verrī, versum, 170.
Verto, ère, verūi, versum, 167.
Vescor, ēri, to feed.
Vesperasco, ère, 181.
Veto, ère, veuti, vetum, 176.
Video, ère, vidi, visum, 164.
INDEX OF VERBS.

Vieo, ēre, ētum, to plait. See 127.
Vigeo, ēre, ut, to flourish.
Vincio, ēre, vinxit, vincum, 160.
Vinco, ere, vici, victum, 159.
Viso, ēre, visī, visum, 172.

Vivo, ere, vixit, victum, 163.
Volo, velle, volui, 189.
Volvo, ere, voluit, volūtum, 174.
Vomo, ere, vomui, vomitum, 176.
Voveo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, 174.
SYNTAX.

SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

192. Syntax treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

Sentences are divided into simple and compound.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once.

The necessary parts of the sentence are the subject and the predicate.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

Lūna splendet, The moon shines.

Lūna is the subject; splendet, the predicate.

193. The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb:

-u-m, I am; docē-s, thou teachest; scrib-i-t, he writes.

Remark.—Here the form contains in itself all the necessary elements (compare 111):

n is the first person, s the second, t the third. From the expansion and modification of the finite verb arise all the complicated forms of the compound sentence.

194. The subject of the finite verb is always in the Nominative Case, or so considered.

Remarks.—1. The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.

2. The use of the Nominative in Latin is the same as in English.

3. The Vocative (the case of Direct Address) is not affected by the structure of the sentence, and does not enter as an element into Syntax, except in the matter of Concord. The form differs from the Nominative in the Second Declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose. (See further, 324, R. 1.)

Almae filius Mājae. Hor. Son of mild Maia!

Audi tū, populus Albānus. Liv. Hear thou, people of Alba!

ō is prefixed to give emphasis to the address:
Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.
Ego régés ejēci, I drove out kings.
Sapiens rēs adversās nōn timet, The sage does not fear adversity.
Victi in servitūtem rediguntur, The vanquished are reduced to slavery.
Contendissē decōrum est. Ov. To have struggled is honorable.
Magnum est beneficium nātūrae quod necesse est mori. Sēn. It is
a great boon of nature, that we must needs die.
Vidēs habet duās syllabās, (The word) "vides" has two syllabes.

FORMS OF THE SUBJECT.

195. The Subject may be a noun or pronoun, or some other word or phrase used as a noun:

Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.
Ego régés ejēci, I drove out kings.
Sapiens rēs adversās nōn timet, The sage does not fear adversity.
Victi in servitūtem rediguntur, The vanquished are reduced to slavery.
Contendissē decōrum est. Ov. To have struggled is honorable.
Magnum est beneficium nātūrae quod necesse est mori. Sēn. It is
a great boon of nature, that we must needs die.
Vidēs habet duās syllabās, (The word) "vides" has two syllabes.

The following remarks may be omitted by the beginner.

Remarks.—1. Masculine and Feminine adjectives and participles are used as substantives, chiefly in the plural number: pauperēs, the poor; dévitēs, the rich; doctī, the learned; whereas, in the singular, the substantive is generally expressed: vir bonus, a good man; homo doctus, a learned person; muliēr peregrīna, a foreign woman.

When persons are not meant, a substantive is understood: cānī (capillī), grey hairs; calīda (aqua), warm water; dextra (manus), right hand.

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers: medium, the midst; extrēmum, the end; reliquium, the residue; futūrum, the future; bonum, good; bona, blessings, possessions; malum, evil; mala, misfortunes.

The plural is frequently employed when the English idiom prefers the singular: vēra, the truth; omnia, everything.

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Genitive case, after words of quantity or pronouns: a·liquid bōnī, something good; nihil mālī, nothing bad. Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus employed only in combination with those of the Second. (See 371, R. 2.)

4. Instead of the neuter adjective the word rēs, thing, is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders; so bonārum rērum, of blessings, rather than bonōrum (m. and n.).

5. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns occurs more frequently than in English: adventūs imperātōrum, the arrival(s) of the generals (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Pluralizing abstract nouns makes them concrete: fortitūdīnēs, gallant actions; formīdīnēs, bugbears; Irae, quarrels.

6. Other plural expressions to be noted are: nivēs, snow-(flakes); grandīnēs, hail-(stones); pluviae, (streams of) rain; ligna, (logs of) wood; carnēs, pieces of meat; aera, articles of bronze; also symmetrical parts of the human body: cervīcēs, neck; pectora, breast.

The Plural is freely used in poetry:
Ōtia si tollās, perīère Cupidinis arcās. Ov. If you do away with holidays, Cupid's bow (and arrows) are ruined.

7. The rhetorical Roman often uses the First Person plural for the First Person singular. The usage originates in modesty, but mock modesty is the worst form of pomposity. In poetry there is often an element of shyness.

Librum dé senectūte ad tē misimus. Ctc. We (I) have sent you a treatise on old age.

Sitque memor nōstrī necne. referte mīhi. Ov. Bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us (me among others) or no.
The Singular, in a collective sense, is also used for the Plural, but more rarely: faba, beans; porcus, pig (meat); gallina, fowl (as articles of food); vestis, clothing; hostis, he enemy; miles, the soldiery; pedes, infantry; eques, cavalry.

196. Copula.—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, the so-called Copula is generally employed, in order to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject.

The chief Copula is the verb sum, I am.

Fortūna caeca est. Cic. Fortune is blind.

Usus magister est optimus. Cic. Practice is the best teacher.

Remark.—Strictly speaking, the Copula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb: est Deus, there is a God; Deus est, God exists; rectē semper erunt rēs, things will always be (go on) well; sic vita hominum est, such is human life; "So runs the world away."

197. Other copulative verbs are: vidērī, to seem; appārēre, to appear; manēre, to remain; nāscī, to be born; fierī, to become; śvādēre, to turn out; creārī, to be created; dēlīgī, to be chosen; putārī, to be thought; habērī, to be held; dicī, to be said; appellārī, to be called; nōminārī, to be named. Hence the rule:

Verbs of Seeming, Remaining, Becoming, with the Passive of verbs of Making and Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two nominatives, one of the Subject, one of the Predicate:

Nēmo dives nāscitur. Sen. No one is born rich.

Aristidēs jūstus appellātur, Aristides is called just.

Servius Tullius rēx est dēclārātus. Liv. Servius Tullius was declared king.

Thūcýdidēs nunquam numerātus est ērātor. Cic. Thucydides has never been accounted an orator.

Remarks.—1. All copulative verbs retain the Nominative with the Infinitive after auxiliary verbs. (424.)

2. On the Double Accusative construction after Active Verbs, see 334.

198. Subject Omitted.—The personal pronoun is not expressed, unless it is emphatic, as for example in contrasts:

Amāmus parentēs, We love (our) parents.

Ego rēgēs eĪēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis. Cic. I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.

199. Verbs that have no definite subject are called Impersonal Verbs, chiefly relating to the state of the weather:
Tonat, it thunders; fulgurat, fulminat, it lightens; pluit, it rains; ningit, it snows.

Remarks.—1. The passive of intransitive verbs (201) is often used impersonally: vivitur, people live; curritur, there is a running. The subject is contained in the verb itself: sic vivitur = sic vita vivitur, such is life. In the same way explain taedet, it wears; miseret, it moves to pity; piget, it disgusts; pudet, it puts to shame.

2. All other so-called Impersonal Verbs have an infinitive or an equivalent for a subject.

3. Other uses coincide with the English. So the third person plural of verbs of saying, thinking, and calling. So the ideal second person singular. (252.)

To be noticed is the occasional use of inquit, quoth he, of an imaginary person:

Non concedo, inquit, Epicurus. Cic. I do not yield the point, quoth he (one), to Epicurus.

200. Copula Omitted.—Est or sunt is often omitted in saws and proverbs, in short questions, in rapid changes, and in tenses compounded with participles:

Summum jūs summa injūria, The height of right (is) the height of wrong. Nemo malus fēlix. Juv. No bad man (is) happy. Quid dulcius quam habēre quicum omnia audeās loquī. Cic. What sweeter than to have some one, with whom you can venture to talk about everything? Aliquamdiū cēr-tātum. Sall. The struggle was kept up for some time.

So also esse with participles and the like.

Caesar statuit exspectandam clāssem. Caes. Caesar resolved that the fleet must be waited for.

Concord.

201. The Three Concers.—There are three great con-cords in Latin:

1. The agreement of the predicate with the subject.
2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive. (281, 319.)
3. The agreement of the Pronoun with the Noun (Relative with ante-cedent.) (616.)

Remark.—It may be well for the beginner to study these together.

202. Agreement of the Predicate with the Subject.

The verbal predicate agrees with its subject in number and person.

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject in number, gender, and case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.
Substantīva mōbilia (21) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject.

Ego rēgēs ējēci, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis (198).

Vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt. Cic. True friendships are abiding.

Dōs est decem talenta. Ter. The dowry is ten talents.

Ūsus magister est optimus. Cic. Practice is the best teacher.

Athēnae sunt omnium doctrinārum inventricēs. Cic. Athens is the inventor of all branches of learning.

Arx est monosyllabum. "Arx" is a monosyllable.

Remarks.—1. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two causes:

i. The natural relation is preferred to the artificial (constructio ad sensum, per synesin, according to the sense).

ii. The nearer is preferred to the more remote. Hence:

Exceptions.—1) Nouns of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural: pars, part; vis, quantity; multitūdo, crowd; organized bodics more rarely.

Pars mājor recēperant sēsē. Liv. The greater part had retired.

Omnis multitūdo abeunt. Liv. All the crowd depart.

2) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject:

Capita conjūrātiōnis virgis caesi sunt. Liv. The heads of the conspiracy were flogged.

3) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate ("the wages of sin is death"): Amantium Irae (195, R. 5) amōris integratio est. Ter. Lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.

2. A superlative adjective defined by a partitive genitive follows the gender of the subject when it precedes:

Hordeum omnium frūgum mollissimum est. Pltn. Barley is the softest of all grains.

Otherwise it follows the genitive:

Vēlōcissimum omnium animālium est delphīnus. Pltn. The dolphin is the swiftest of all animals.

3. The Vocative is sometimes used by the poets in the predicate, either by anticipation or by assimilation. (See 324, R. 1.)

4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject:

Triste lupus stabulis. Verg. The wolf is destruction to the folds.

Omnium rērum (195, R. 4) mors est extrēmum. Cic. Death is the end of all things.

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate:
Voices.

Ea nōn media sed nulla via est. Līv. That is not a middle course, but no course at all.

Nōn ego illam mihi dūco dōtem esse, quae dōs dicitur. Plaut. That which is called a dowry I deem not my dowry, no, not I.

When the pronoun is the predicate there is no change. So in definitions.

Quid est Deus? What is God?

Forms of the Verbal Predicate.

Voices of the Verb.

203. There are two Voices in Latin—Active and Passive. The latter seems to have been Reflexive in its origin.

204. The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject.

Verbs are called Transitive when their action goes over to an object; Intransitive when their action does not go beyond the subject: occidere, to fell = to kill (Transitive); occidere, to fall (Intransitive).

Remark.—Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, and Intransitive verbs transitively: suppedītāre, to supply (Transitive), to be on hand (Intransitive); queror, I complain (Intransitive), I complain of (Transitive). When transitive verbs are used intransitively they serve simply to characterize the agent. When intransitive verbs are used transitively it is chiefly with an accusative of the Inner object. (331, R. 2.)

205. The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb.

The instrument is put in the Ablative.

Virgis caeditur, He is beaten with rods.

The agent is put in the Ablative with ab (ā).

Ā patre caeditur, He is beaten by (his) father.

Remarks.—1. Intransitive verbs of Passive signification are construed as Passives: famē perire, to perish of hunger.

Ab reō fustibus vāpulāvit. Quint. He was whacked with cudgels by the defendant.

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed:

Vinci ā Voluptāte, to be overcome by Pleasure. Cic.

Poenō militē portās frangimus. Juv. We break down the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like Persons.

Ā cane nōn magnō saepe tenētur aper. Ov. A boar is often held fast by a little dog.
Animals, as instruments, are treated like Things.

Equō veht, to ride a horse (to be borne by a horse); in equō, on horseback.

206. The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence, the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent.

With the Perfect Passive it is the natural inference, and common in prose.

Rēs mihi tōta prōvisa est. Cic. I have had the whole thing provided for.

Carmina scripta mihi sunt nulla. Ov. Poems—I have none written (I have written no poems).

With the Gerundive it is the necessary inference, and the Dative is the reigning combination.

Nihil est homini tam timendum quam invidia. Cic. There is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy. See 352.

207. The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.

Alexander Dārīum vicit, Alexander conquered Darius.
Dārīus ab Alexandrō victus est, Darius was conquered by Alexander.

208. The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object. (331, R. 2.)

Active: Miseri invident bonis, The wretched envy the well-to-do.
Passive: mihi invidētur, I am envied, tibi invidētur, thou art envied, ei invidētur, he is envied, nōbis invidētur, we are envied, vōbis invidētur, you are envied, iīs invidētur, they are envied, ab aliquō, by some one.

Nihil facile persuādētur invitīs. Quint. People are not easily persuaded of anything against their will.

Ānulis nostrīs plūs quam animīs crēditur. Sēn. Our seals are more trusted than our souls.
Remark.—The same rule applies to Genitive and Ablative. The poets are more free in imitation of the Greek. Cur invideor? Hor. for Cur invidetur mihi? Why am I envied?

209. Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English:

Omne animal se ipsum dilig. Cic. Every living creature loves itself.

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the Passive is employed:

Lavor, I bathe, I bathe myself.
Purgari nequiverrunt. Liv. They could not clear themselves.
Curabar propriis aeger Podalirius herbis. Ov. A sick Podalirius, I was trying to cure myself by my own herbs.

210. As the Active in all languages is often used to express what the subject suffers or causes to be done, so the Passive in Latin in its reflexive sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself: trahor, I let myself be dragged; tondeor, I have myself shaved.

Ipse docet quid agam; fas est et ab hoste doceri. Ov. He himself teaches (me) what to do; it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe).

211. The Deponent is a Passive form which has lost, in most instances, its Passive (or Reflexive) signification. It is commonly translated as a Transitive or Intransitive Active: hortor, I am exhorting (Trans.); morior, I am dying (Intrans.).

212. Reciprocal relations ("one another") are expressed by inter, among, and the Personal Pronouns, nos, us; vos, you; se, themselves: Inter se amant, They love one another.

TENSES.

213. The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:
1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).
The first tells whether the action is going on, or finished. The second tells whether the action is past, present, or future. Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.
214. There are six tenses in Latin:
1. The Present, denoting continuance in the present.
2. The Future, denoting continuance in the future.
3. The Imperfect, denoting continuance in the past.
4. The Perfect, denoting completion in the present.
5. The Future Perfect, denoting completion in the future.
6. The Pluperfect, denoting completion in the past.

215. An action may further be regarded simply as attained, without reference to its continuance or completion. Continuance and completion require a point of reference for definition; attainment does not. This gives rise to the aoristic or indefinite stage of the action, which has no especial tense-form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance is the Indefinite or Historical Perfect (Aorist), which differs materially in syntax from the Definite or Pure Perfect.

216. The Tenses are divided into Principal and Historical. The Principal Tenses have to do with the Present and Future. The Historical Tenses have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are Principal Tenses.

The Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are Historical Tenses.

Remark.—The Historical Tenses are well embodied in the following distich:

Tālia tentābat, sic et tentāverat ante,
Vixque dēdit victās utītātē manūs. Ov.

217. Table of Temporal Relations.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Continuance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Completion</th>
<th>[Attainment]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>scribo (scripio)</td>
<td>scripsī (scripsī)</td>
<td>scribo,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am writing.</td>
<td>I have written.</td>
<td>I write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>scribam (scripsero),</td>
<td>scripsero,</td>
<td>scribam (scripsero),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I shall be writing.</td>
<td>I shall have written.</td>
<td>I shall write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>scribēbam (scripsī)</td>
<td>scripseram,</td>
<td>scripsī,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was writing.</td>
<td>I had written.</td>
<td>I wrote.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PASSIVE.

Continuance. Completion. Attainment.

**Present:** scribe\textit{tur} (epistola), scripta est, scribe\textit{tur},

The letter is written, has been written, is written,

(writing),

**Future:** scrib\textit{et}ur, scripta erit, scribe\textit{tur},

The letter will be written, will have been, will be written,

(writing),

**Past:** scrib\textit{eb}at\textit{ur}, scripta erat, scripta est,

The letter was written, had been written, was written,

(writing),

Remark.—The English Passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the Active.

Continuance, Some one was writing a letter.

A letter was written; Completion, Some one had written a letter.

Attainment, Some one wrote a letter.

The detailed consideration of the Tenses may be omitted by the beginner.

Present Tense.

218. The Present Tense is used as in English of that which is going on now (Specific Present), and of statements that apply to all time (Universal Present).

Specific Present:

Auribus tene\textit{o} lupum. TER. I am holding the wolf by the ears.

Universal Present:

Probita\textit{s} laudat\textit{ur} et alget. JUV. Honesty is bepraised and freezes.

Remarks.—1. The Specific Present is often to be translated by the English Progressive Present. The Universal Present is Aoristic, true at any point.

2. As continuance involves the notion of incompleteness the Present is used of attempted and intended action (Present of Endeavor). But on account of the double use of the Present this signification is less prominent and less important than in the Imperfect. Do not mistake the Endeavor which lies in the Verb for the Endeavor which lies in the Tense. So in the traditional example:

Quintus frater Tusculanum vendit\textit{at}. Cic. Brother Quintus is “trying to sell” his Tusculan villa: vendit\textit{are} itself means to offer for sale. Translate: intends to offer for sale, if the notion lies in the Tense.

3. The ambiguity of our English Passive often suggests other translations. Use and Wont make Law; hence, the frequent inference that what is done is what ought to be done; what is not done is not to be done.

(Deus) nec bene pr\textit{o}meritis capit\textit{ur}, nec tangitur ira. Lucr. God is not to be inveigled by good service, nor touched by anger.
219. The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English in anticipation of the future, chiefly in compound sentences:

Si vincimus, omnia tūta erunt. SALL. If we conquer (= shall conquer), everything will be safe.

Antequam ad sententiam redeo dē mē paucā dīcam. Cic. Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.

Exspectābō dum ille venit. Ter. I will wait all the time that he is coming, or, until he comes.

220. The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, as a lively representation of the past (Historical Present):

Rōmam proficiscitur. SALL. He sets out for Rome.

Mātrūrat proficiscī. Caes. He hastens to depart.

RemARK.—Dum, while, commonly takes the Historical Present: Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est. Caes. While these things were transacting in the conference, word was brought to Caesar. Dum, so long as, follows the ordinary law. (See 566.)

221. The Present is used in Latin of actions that are continued into the present, especially with jam, now; jam diū, now for a long time; jam prīdem, now long since. In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

Mithridātēs annum jam tertium et vicēsimum regnat. Cic. Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.

Liberāre vōs ā Philippō jam diū magis vultis quam audētis. Liv. You have this long time had the wish rather than (= though not) the courage to deliver yourself from Philip.

222. The Imperfect Tense denotes Continuance in the Past: pugnābam, I was fighting.

The Imperfect is employed to represent manners, customs, situations; to describe and to particularize.

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the process; the Historical Perfect states the result. The Imperfect counts out the items; the Historical Perfect gives the sum.

223. The two tenses are often so combined that the general
statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect:

Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant oculī; tōtō ex ore crūdēlitās ēminēbat. Cic. Verres came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.

224. The Imperfect is used of attempted and interrupted, intended and expected actions (Imperfect of Endeavor). It is the Tense of Disappointment and (with the negative) of Resistance to Pressure. (Mere negation is regularly Perfect.)

Cūriam relinquēbat. Tac. He was for leaving the senate-house.
Postumius dēdēbatur. Cic. Postumius was to be given up.
Lōx abrogābātur. Liv. The law was to be abrogated.
Ōreum et Eretriam Eumenī dabant: senātus libertātem his cīvitātibus dedit. Liv. They were for giving Oreus and Eretria to Eumenes; the senate gave these cities liberty.

Cūrābar propriis aeger Podalirius herbis. Ov. (206.)
Adītum nōn dabat. Nep. He WOULD not grant access (dedit, did not).

Remarks.—1. The Imperfect as the Tense of Evolution is a Tense of Vision. But in English, Imperfect and Historical Perfect coincide; hence the various translations to put the reader in the place of the spectator.

2. The continuance is in the mind of the narrator; it has nothing to do with the absolute duration of the action. The mind may dwell on a rapid action or hurry over a slow one. With definite numbers, however large, the Historical Perfect must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

Gorgiās centum et novem annōs vixit. Quint. Gorgias lived 109 years.

3. As the Tense of Disappointment, the Imperfect of such verbs as dēbere, to owe, posse, to be able, is sometimes used in a modal sense. (246, R. 2.)

225. The Imperfect is used as the English Progressive Pluperfect: especially with jam, jam diū, jam dūdum.

Jam dūdum tibi adversābar. Plaut. I had long been opposing you.

Remark.—As the Historical Present is used in lively narrative, so the Historical Infinitive is used in lively description, parallel with the Imperfect. (649.)

Perfect Tense.

226. The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses:


1. PURE PERFECT.

227. The Pure Perfect Tense expresses completion in the Present, and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.
The Pure Perfect looks at both ends of an action, and the time between is regarded as a Present. The Historical Present looks at but one end; or, rather, beginning and end are one.

228. The Pure Perfect is used:
1. Of an action that is over and gone.

Filium unicum habeo, imò habui. TER. I have an only son—nay, I have had an only son.

Tempora quid faciunt: hanc volo, te volui. OV. What difference times make! I want her—I wanted you.

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action: Resulting condition.

Equum et mûlum Brundisii tibi reliqui. CIC. I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundusium—(they are still there).

Perdidi spem quà më oblectabam. PLAUT. I’ve lost the hope with which I entertained myself.

Actum est, peristi. TER. It is all over; you’re undone.

Remark.—The Pure Perfect is often translated by the English Present: nòvi, I have become acquainted with, I know; memini, I have recalled, I remember; òdî, I have conceived a hatred of, I hate; consuëvi, I have made it a rule, I am accustomed. This is due to the inchoative character of the Present form.

Ödërunt hilarem tristës tristemque jocósì. HOR. The long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.

229. As the Present stands for the Future, so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

Brûtus sì conservàtus exit, vicìmus. CIC. Brutus!—if he is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.

Otìa sì tollās, periëre Cupídinis arcús. OV. (195, R. 6.)

230. Habeo or teneo, I hold, I have, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the Perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the maintenance of the result.

Habeo statūtum, I have resolved, and hold to my resolution.

Habeo perspectum, I have perceived, and I have full insight.

Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, cēno domī. MART. I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.

Remark.—On the Iterative Perfect, see 569.
2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

231. The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained.

Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī. Suet. I came, saw, overcame.

Milo domum vēnit, calceōs et vestimenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est. Cic. Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while.

Gorgiās centum et novem vixit annos. Quint. Gorgias lived 100 years.

232. The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect.

Pluperfect Tense.

233. The Pluperfect denotes Completion in the Past, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used:

1. Of an action that is over and gone.

Putāram, I had thought (before such and such a thing happened).

2. Of a Resulting Condition.

Massiliēnsēs portās Caesāri clauserant. Caes. The Marseillese had shut their gates against Caesar. (Their gates were shut.)

Remarks.—1. When the Perfect of resulting Condition is translated by an English Present (228 R.), the Pluperfect is translated by an English Imperfect: nōveram, I had become acquainted with, I knew; memineram, I remembered; ōderam, I hated; consuēveram, I was accustomed.

2. The Periphrastic Pluperfect with habeo corresponds to the Perfect. (230.)

3. On the Iterative Pluperfect, see 569.

Future Tense.

234. The Future Tense denotes Continuance in the Future.

scribam, I shall be writing.

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: scribam, I shall write.

Remarks.—1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

Donec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs. Ov. So long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends.
QUIDQUID eris, mea semper eris. Ov. Whatever you shall be (are), you will always be mine own.

2. Observe especially the verbs volo, I will, and possum, I can.

Ōdero si poterō; si nōn, invitūs amābo. Ov. I will hate if I shall be able (can); if not, I shall love against my will.

Si qua volēt regnāre diū, delūdat amāntem. Ov. She who shall wish to queen it long must fool her lover.

235. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.

Tā nihil dicēs. Hor. You shall, are to, say nothing (do you say nothing). Quum volēt accédēs, quum tē vitabit abībis. Ov. When she wants you, approach; and when she avoids you, begone, sir.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

236. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both completion and attainment: fēcero, I shall have done it, or I shall do it (once for all); videro, I will see to it; prōfecerit, it will prove profitable.

Remarks—1. Hence, when the Perfect is used as a Present, the Future Perfect is used as a Future:

Nōvero, I shall know; consuevero, I shall be accustomed; Ōdero, si poterō. Ov. (234, R. 2.)

2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Future Perfect.

When one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Future Perfect.

Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, ījus victōria erit. Liv. Who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.

3. The Future Perfect is frequently used in volo, I will; nōlo, I will not; possum, I can; licet, it is left free; libet, it is agreeable; placet, it is the pleasure; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

Si potuero, faciam vōbis satis. Cic. If I can, I shall satisfy you.

4. The Future Perfect in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment; one action involves the other.

Qui Marcum Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit. Cic. He who shall have crushed (crushed) Mark Antony, will have finished (will finish) the war.

Ea vitā quī fugērīt, is omnia ferē vitīa vitāverit. Cic. He who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults.

Sometimes, however, the first seems to denote antecedence, the second finality. An Imperative is often used in the first clause.

Immutā verbōrum collocātiōnem, perierit tōta rēs. Cic. Change the arrangement of the words, the whole thing falls dead.

237. As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.

Dē hoc tū ipse videris. Cic. You may see to that yourself hereafter
Periphrastic Tenses.

238. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of esse, to be, with participles and verbal adjectives.

I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

239. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of esse and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting capability and tendency. Compare amātor and amātūrus. The translation is very various:

1. Scriptūrus sum, I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.
2. Scriptūrus eram, I was about to write, etc.
3. Scriptūrus fui, I have been or was about to write (often = I should have written).
4. Scriptūrus fueram, I had been about to write, etc.
5. Scriptūrus ero, I shall be about to write, etc.
6. Scriptūrus fuero, I shall have made up my mind to write, etc. (of course very rare).

1. Bellum scriptūrus sum quod populus Rōmānus cum Jugurthā gessit. Sall. I purpose to write the history of the war which the Roman people carried on with Jugurtha.
2. Rēx nōn interfutūrus nāvāli certāmini erat. Liv. The king did not intend to be present at the naval combat.
3. Cato quā nocte peritūrus fuit lēgit. Sen. Cato read on the night when he was about to die (kill himself).
4. Dēditōs ultimis cruciātibus affectūrfuērunt. Liv. They would have put the surrendered to extreme tortures.
5. Mājor Rōmānōrum grātia fuit quam quanta Carthāginiensium futūra fuerat. Liv. The Romans' credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been.
6. Sapiens nōn vīvet, si fuerit sine homine victūrus. Sen. The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society.

Remark.—The Subjunctives and Infinitives, scriptūrus sim, essem, fuerim, scriptūrum esse, and scriptūrum fuisse, are of great importance in dependent discourse.
II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

A.—Of Future Relations.

240. The following periphrases are used both in Active and Passive, but more frequently in the Passive.

1. Futūrum est, it is to be, erat, was to be, ut, that, with the subjunctive.

This circumlocution is used:

1. Rarely in the Indicative.
2. Often in the Infinitive, and necessarily so, when the verb forms no supine or Future Participle:

Futūrum esse (fore), ut metuās, that you will fear.

In the Passive it is more common than the Supine with iri.

Spēro fore ut contingat id nōbīs. Cic. I hope that we shall have that good fortune.

In fātis scriptum Vējentēs habēbant fore ut brevī ā Gallīs Rōma aperētur. Cic. The Věientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would shortly be taken by the Gauls.

Remarks.—1. Fore ut ... is used chiefly with Present and Imperfect Subjunctive; Perf. and Pluperf. are very rare. Cic. Ad Att. xvi. 16 E. 16.

2. The form futūrum fuisse ut ... is used with Passive and Supineless verbs, to express the dependent apodosis of an unreal conditional sentence.

Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntii dē Caesaris victōriā essent allātī, existimābant lērique futūrum fuisse ut oppidum āmitterētur. Caes. (662.)

3. Posse, to be able, and velle, to will, on account of their future sense, do not require periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of posse are often used instead. (659.)

4. The Subjunctive forms futūrum sit, esset, fuerit, ut ... are used in the grammars to supply the periphrastic subjunctive of Passive and Supineless verbs. (See 512, R. 2.) Warrant in real usage is scarce.


241. 2. In eō est, it is on the point, erat, was (Impersonal), futūrum sit ut Pausaniās comprehenderētur. Nep. It was on the point that Pausanias should be (P. was on the point of) being arrested.

Remark.—This phrase occurs in Nepos and Livy, seldom in earlier writers.
242. The Perfect Participle Passive is used in combination with sum, I am, and fuì, I have been, I was, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. Eram, I was, and fueram, I had been, stand for the Pluperfect; and ero, I shall be, and fuero, I shall have been, for the Future Perfect.

Remark.—Fuì is the favorite form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: convivium exornatûm fuì, the banquet was furnished forth; fuì is the necessary form when the Perfect denotes that the action is over and gone: amatûs fuì, I have been loved (but I am loved no longer). The same principle applies to fueram and fuero, though not so regularly.

Simulâcrum è marmore in sepulcrû pósitûm fuìt; hoc quidam homô nóbilis dèsportavit. Cic. A marble effigy was deposited in the tomb; a certain man of rank has carried it off.

Arma quae fìxa in parietibus fuerant, humili inventa sunt. Cic. The arms which had been fastened to the walls were found on the ground.

Nec mâtér fuerô dicta nec orba diû. Ov. I shall not have been called mother nor childless long.

C.—Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

243. The combination of the Tenses of esse, to be, with the Gerundive (verbal in -ndus), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation. (See 150.)

Remarks.—1. The Gerundive has the form of a Present Participle Passive, (-ndus for -ntus). Whenever a participle is used as a predicate it becomes characteristic, and good for all time. Compare 439, R.

As amans not only = qui amat, but also = qui amat, so amandus = qui améturus.

2. The Gerundive follows the law (205), and can be formed only from verbs that take the accusative. Otherwise the Impersonal form must be used.

Parcendum est victis. The vanquished must be spared.

TENSES IN LETTERS.

244. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase Nihil erat quod scriberem, “I have nothing to write.” This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

Table of Permutations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scribo, I am writing,</td>
<td>scribēbam,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scripsì, I have written,</td>
<td>scripseram,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribam, I shall write,</td>
<td>scriptūrus eram.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Or remains unchanged.
The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or

**Heri**, yesterday, becomes **pridiē**.

**Hodiē**, to-day, "quō diē hās litterās dedī, dabam.

**Crās**, to-morrow, "posterō diē, posstridiē.

**Formiās mē continuō recipere cōgitābam.** Cic. *I am thinking of retiring forthwith to Formiae.*

**Quum mihi Caecilius dixisset puerum sē Rōmam mittere, haec scripsī raptim.** Cic. *As Caecilius has told me that he is sending a servant to Rome, I write in a hurry.*

**Litterās eram datūrus postridīē eī qui mihi primus obviam vēnisset.** Cic. *I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.*

### Moods.

245. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin:

1. The **Indicative.**
2. The **Subjunctive.**
3. The **Imperative.**

**Remark.**—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

### The Indicative Mood.

246. The **Indicative Mood** represents the predicate *as a reality.* It is sometimes called the **Declarative Mood**, as the mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

---

**The beginner may omit the Remarks.**

**Remarks.**—1. The Latin language expresses possibility and power, obligation and necessity, and abstract relations generally, as facts; whereas, our translation often *implies the failure to realize.* Such expressions are: **dēbeo,** I ought, it is my duty; **opertet,** it behoves; **necesse est,** it is absolutely necessary; **possum,** I can, I have it in my power; **convenit,** it is fitting; **pār. aequum est,** it is fair; **infinitum,** endless; **difficile,** hard to do; **longum,** tedious; and the Indicative form of the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation:

**Possum persequī multa oblectāmenta rērum rūstīcārum.** Cic. *I might rehearse many delights of country life.*

**Longum est utilitātēs persequī asinōrum.** Cic. *It would be tedious to rehearse the useful qualities of asses (I will not do it).*

**Ad mortem tē dūci opertēbat.** Cic. *It behooved you to be led to execution (you were not), you ought to have been led off.*

**Volumnia dēbuit in tē officīōsior esse, et id ipsum, quod fecit, potuit facere diligentius.** Cic. *It was Volumnia's duty to be (V. ought to have been) more attentive to you; and the little she did do (she had it in her power to do), she might have done more carefully.*
Quae condicio non accipienda fuit potius quam patria relinquenda? Cic. What terms ought not to have been accepted in preference to leaving thy country?

Nil mihi debuerat cum versibus amplius esse. Ov. Naught more should I have had (were then) to do with verses.

The Perfect and Pluperfect always refer to a special case.

2. The Perfect as the Tense of Disappointment is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things: debam, I ought (but do not); poteram, you could (but do not). These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See R. 3.)

Poteram morbos appellare, sed non conveniret ad omnia. Cic. I might translate (that Greek word) 'diseases,' but that would not suit all the cases. (Poteram si conveniret.)

At poteram, inquis, melius mala ferre silendo. Ov. 'But,' you say, 'you could (you do not) bear your misfortunes better by keeping silent.' (Poteram si silerem.)

3. The Indicative is sometimes used in the leading clause of conditional sentences (the Apodosis), thereby implying the certainty of the result, had it not been for the interruption.

The Indicative clause generally precedes, which is sufficient to show the rhetorical character of the construction.

With the Imperfect the action is often really begun:

Læbæbar longius. nisi me retinuissem. Cic. I was letting myself go on (should have let myself go on) too far, had I not checked myself.

Omninō erat supervacua doctrina. sī nātūra sufficeret. Quint. Training were wholly superfluous, did nature suffice.

Praeclarē vicērāmus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium. Cic. We had (should have) gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antony.

In all these sentences the English idiom requires the Subjunctive, which is disguised by coinciding with the Indicative in form except in 'were.'

4. In general relative expressions, such as the double formations, quisquis, no matter who, quotquot, no matter how many, and all forms in -cunque, -ever, the Indicative is employed where we may use in English a Subjunctive or its equivalent: quisquis est no matter who he is, be, may be; quālecunque est, whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be.

Quidquid est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs. Virg. Whatever it may be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

247. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate as an idea, as something merely conceived in the mind (abstract from reality).

Remark.—The Latin Subjunctive is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs may, can, must, might, could, would, should. When these verbs have their full signification of possibility and power, obligation and necessity, they are represented Latin by the corresponding verbs: may, can, might, could, by the forms of posse, to able, licet, it is left, free: will and would, by velle, to will, to be willing: must, by dēbī or oportet (of moral obligation), by necesse est (of absolute obligation).

Nōstrās injūriās nec potest nec possit alius ulcīscī quam vōs. Liv. Our wrongs no other than you has the power or can will have the power to avenge. Here potest gives the simple affirmation, possit, the moral conviction of the speaker.

248. The realization of the idea may be in suspense, or may be beyond control. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctiv
is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

Remarks.—1. The Subjunctive, as the name implies (subjungo, I subjoin), is largely used in dependent sentences, and will be treated at length in that connection.

2. The following modifications of the above principles must be carefully observed:
   A. The Romans, in lively discourse, often represent the unreal as ideal, that which is beyond control as still in suspense. (598, R. 2.)
   B. In transfers to the past, the Imperfect represents the Present, and the Pluperfect the Perfect Subjunctive. (510.)

249. The idea may be a view, or a wish. Hence the division of the Subjunctive into the Potential and the Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indicative, from which it differs in tone; the Optative Subjunctive is nearer the Imperative, for which it is often used.

The beginner may omit to 259.

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

250. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral certainty, from "may" and "might" to "must." The negative is the negative of the Indicative nōn.

The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The verification is in suspense, and so future; the action may be present or future; with Perfect sometimes Past.

*Velim, I should wish; nōlim, I should be unwilling; mālim, I should prefer; dicās, you would say; crēdās, you would believe, you must believe; dicat, dixerit alīquis, some one may undertake to say, go so far as to say.*

Caedī discipulōs minimē velim. *Quint.* I should by no means like pupils to be flogged.

*Tū Platōnem nec nīnis valde unquam nec nīmis saepe laudāverīs.* *Cic.* You can't praise Plato too much nor too often.

251. The Mood of the Question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer (464). Hence the Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

*Quis dubitet (= nēmo dubitet) quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint? *Cic.* Who can doubt that there is wealth in virtue? (No one).

*Quis tulerit Gracchōs dē sēdītiōne querenēs? *Juv.* Who could hear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion? (No one).

*Apud exercitum fuerīs? *Cic.* You were with the army?
252. The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

Statement:

Crēderēs victōs. You would, might, have thought them beaten.

Haud facile dēcernēs utrum Hannibal imperātōri an exercī-
tuī cāriōr esset. Liv. Not readily could you have decided whether Hannibal
was dearer to general or to army.

Mīrārētur qui tum cerneret. Liv. Any one who saw it then must have
been astonished.

Vellem, I should have wished; nōлем, I should have been unwilling;
māllem, I should have preferred (it is too late).

Question:

Hoc tantum bellum quis unquam arbitrārētur ab ūnō imperātōre con-
ficī posse? Cic. Who would, could, should have thought that this great war
could be brought to a close by one general?

Remarks.—1. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes explained by the ellipsis of an
Ideal or of an Unreal Conditional Protasis. But the free Potential Subjunctive differs
from an elliptical conditional sentence in the absence of definite ellipsis, and hence of
definite translation. Compare the first two sentences above with:

Eum qui palam est adversārius facile cavendō (si caveās) vitāre possis. Cic.
An open adversary you can readily avoid by caution (if you are cautious).

Nil ego contulerim jūcundō sānus (= dum sānus ero) amicō. Hor. There is
naught I should compare to an agreeable friend, while I am in my sound senses.

2. The Unreal of the Present and the Ideal of the Past coincide. What is unreal of
real person is simply ideal of an imaginary person. The Imperfect is used as the tense
of Description.

The Aoristic Perfect Subj. is rarely used as the Ideal of the Past.

3. The Potential Subjunctive, as a modified form of the Indicative, is often found
where the Indicative would be the regular construction. So after quanquam (663, R. 1

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

253. The Subjunctive is used as an Optative or wishin mood.

The regular negative is nē. Nōn is used chiefly to negative a single
word.

The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are used when the decision is in
suspense, no matter how extravagant the wish; the Imperfect and Pre-
fect are used when the decision is adverse. The Perfect is rare and old.

Stet haec urbs. Cic. May this city continue to stand!

Di faxint = fēcerint. The gods grant!

Nē istāc Jūpiter optimus maximus sīrit (= sīverit)! Liv. May Jun-
ter, supremely great and good, suffer it not!

254. The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes Utinam, ut
nam nē, utinam nōn—in poetry also ō si, Oh if.
**OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.**

**Utinam modo oōnāta efficere p o s s i m. Cic.** May I but have it in my power to accomplish my endeavors.

**Utinam reviviscat frāter! GELL.** Would that my brother would come to be again!

**Utinam inserere jocōs mōris esset. QUINT.** Would that it were usual to introduce jokes!

**Illud utinam nē vērē scriberem. CIC.** Would that what I am writing were not true!

**Utinam suscēptus nōn esse m. CIC.** Would I had not been born!

**ō mihi praeterītōs referat sī Jūppiter annōs. VERG.** O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by!

**Remarks.—1. Utinam was originally an interrogative, How, pray? and belongs partly to the potential.** *ō si* is an elliptical conditional sentence, which is not intended to have an Apodosis. When the Apodosis comes, it may come in a different form. So in the example. *Verg. Aen. viii. 560, 568.*

2. For the wish with adverse decision *vellem, māllem,* and *nōllem* are often used with Imperf. and Pipf. Subj.

**Vellem adesse posset Panaetius. CIC.** Would that Panaetius could be present!

**Nōllem dixissem. CIC.** Would that I had not said it!

So *velim, nōlim,* etc., for the simple wish (546. R. 3).

255. The Optative Subjunctive is used in asseverations:

**Ita vīvām ut maximōs sumptūs facio. CIC.** As I live, I am spending very largely (literally, so may I live as I am making very great outlay).

256. The Subjunctive is used as an Imperative—

1. In the First Person, which has no Imperative form:

**Amēmus patriam. CIC.** Let us love our country.

**Nē difficiālia optēmus. CIC.** Let us not desire what is hard to do.

2. In the Second Person—In the Present chiefly of an imaginary “you.”

**Ūtāre, you may use it; nē requīrās, you must not pine for it.**

In the Perfect negatively:

**Nē transieris Hibernum.Liv.** Do not cross the Ebro.

3. In the Third Person (regularly):

**Amet, let him love; nē amet, let him not love. (See 265.)**

257. The Subjunctive is used as a concessive:

**Sīt fūr. CIC.** (Granted that) he be a thief.

**Fecerit, sī ita vis. CIC.** (Suppose) he have done it, if you will (have it so).

Other examples with *ut* and *nē,* see 606.
258. The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (conjunctivus deliberatīvus).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person:

Quid faciam? roger, anne rogem? quid deinde rogābo? Ov. What shall I do? shall I ask or be asked? what then shall I ask him?

Magna fuit contentio utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent an obviam frent hostibus. Nep. There was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy. (Utrum nōs dēfendāmus an obviam eāmus?).

Rhetorical questions (questions which anticipate the answer), under this head, are hardly to be distinguished from Potential.


Quid agerem? Cīc. What was I to do?

Imperative Mood.

259. The Imperative is the mood of the will. It wills that the predicate be made a reality. The tone of the Imperative varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a prayer.

Abī in malam rem. Plaut. Go (to the mischief), and be hanged.

Compesce mentem. Hor. Curb your temper.

Dā mihi hoc, mel meum! Plaut. Give me this, honey dear!

260. The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative. The First Imperative has only the Second person; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive.

Amēmus patriam. Cīc. Let us love our country.

Remark.—Some verbs have only the second form. This may be due to the signification: so scītō, know thou; mēmentō, remember thou; and hābetō, in the sense of know, remember.

261. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfillment (Absolute Imperative):

Special: Patent portae; prōficiscere. Cīc. Open stand the gates; depart.
262. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfillment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, and the like:

Rēgiō imperiō duo suntō, there shall be two (officers) with royal power.
Consulēs appellantōr, they shall be called consuls.
Nēmini pārento, they are to obey no one.
Illis salūs populi suprema lex estō. CIC. To them the welfare of the state must be the paramount law.

263. NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.—The regular negative of the Imperative is nē (nēve, neu), which is found with the Second Imperative; with the First Imperative, in poetry only.

Hominem mortuum in urbe nēve sepelito nēve ērito, thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead man in the city.
Impius nē audēto plācāre dōnis ūram deōrum. CIC. The impious man must not dare attempt to appease by gifts the anger of the gods.
Tū nē cēde malis, sed contrā audentior ētō. VERG. Yield not thou to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.

REMARK.—Nōn may be used to negative a single word.
Ā lēgibus nōn recēdāmus. Let us not recede from (let us stick to) the laws.
Opus poliat īlima, nōn exterat. QUINT. Let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.

264. PERIPHRASES.—I. Cūrā ut, take care that; fac ut, cause that; fac, do, with the Subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the Positive Imperative.

Cūrā ut quam primum (317) veniās. CIC. Manage to come as soon possible.
Fac cōgitēs. CIC. Reflect!

II. Cavē nē, beware lest, and cavē, with the subjunctive, and olē, be unwilling, with the Infinitive, for the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive).

Cavē festinēs. CIC. Do not be in a hurry.
Tantum quum fingēs nē sis manifesta cāvētō. Ov. Only, when you pretend, beware that you be not detected.

Nōlī vexāre, quiēscit. Juv. Don't disturb her; she's sleeping.

265. REPRESENTATIVES OF THE IMPERATIVE.—Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed:

1. The Second Person of the Future Indicative;
2. The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive:

Faciēs, ut sciam, let me know; vivēs, live on.
Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae. Ov. Let a man give everything that he has to his lady-love.
Quaedam cum prīma res ecentur crimina barba. Juv. Let certain faults be clipped off with the sprouting beard.

266. Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed:

The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with nē.
The Second Person of the Future, with nōn.
The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with nē.

Hoc facito, hoc nē feceris. Cíc. This do, that leave undone.
Nōn cessābis. Cíc. You must not be idle.
Puer telum nē habeat. Cíc. A boy is not to have a deadly weapon.
Nē metus quemquam cēperit. Liv. Let not fear seize any one.
Misericordiā commótus nē sis. Cíc. Don't let yourself be moved by pity.

REMARKS.—1. Nōn is often used in poetry for nē, and neque, nec for nēve, nev.

Aut nōn tentāris aut perfice. Ov. Either do not try (at all), or effect (your object).

Nec, sī quem fallēs, tū perjurāre timētō. Ov. Nor if you (shall try to) deceive a man, do you fear to forswear yourself.

On the negative nōn with a single word, see 263 R. With the Perfect Subjunctive, neque, nihil, nēmo, nullus are freely used, as well as nēve, neu, nēquis, nēquid.

2. The Present Subjunctive is employed when stress is laid on the continuance of the action; the Perfect, when stress is laid on the completion. Hence in total prohibitions, the Perfect Subjunctive is the favorite form.

3. The Imperative of the Past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties).

Dōtem darētis; alium quaereret virum. Ter. You should have given her a portion; she should have sought another match.

Crās irēs potius, hodie hic cenārēs. Valē. Plaut. You ought rather to have put off going till to-morrow, you ought to (have) dine(d) with us to-day. Good-bye. Anything decided is regarded as past.

Nē poposcesītēs librōs. Cíc. You ought not to have asked for the books.

267. The Second Person Singular of the Present Subjunc-
tive is used both positively and negatively; but in prose, only of an imaginary subject ("you"):

Corporis viribus utare, dum adsint; cum absint nē requīrās. Cic.  
Enjoy your vigor of body while you have it; when it is gone, you must not pine for it.

268. Passionate questions are equivalent to a command:

Nōn tacēs? won't you hold your tongue? quīn tacēs? why don't you hold you tongue?
Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitae convīva recēdis? Lucr. Why do you not withdraw as a guest sated with life?

269. SUMMARY OF IMPERATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Positive.

2d P. Audī, hear thou; audītō (legal or contingent); audīēs (familiar); audīās (ideal 2d Person).
3d P. Audītō (legal), let him hear; audiat.

Negative.

2d P. Nē audī, hear not (poetic); nē audītō (legal); nōn audīēs (familiar); nē audīās (ideal); nē audīverīs; nōlī audīre.
3d P. Nē audītō (legal), let him not hear; nē audiat; nē audīverit.

TENSES OF THE MOODS AND VERBAL NOUNS.

270. The Indicative alone expresses with uniform directness the period of time.

271. 1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with continued action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with completed action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the attainment.

2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive postpone the ascertainment of the Predicate to the Future. The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

Crēdat. He may believe (now or hereafter).
Crēdiderit. Let him have had the belief (heretofore), he may have come to the belief (now), he may come to the belief (hereafter.)

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunc-
The notion of unreality lies in the past tense, rather than in the Subjunctive Mood. Compare 243, R. 2.

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification; otherwise the Subjunctive represents the Indicative. The tense is regulated by the law of sequence. (See 510.)

272. The Imperative is necessarily Future.

273. The Infinitive has two uses:
1. Its use as a Noun.
2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.

274. 1. As a Noun, the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect.

The Present Infinitive has to do with continued action. It is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a noun.

The Perfect Infinitive has to do with completed action, and is also used to express attainment.

The Present Infinitive is used as a subject.

Valēre est vita, Being well is life.

The Present Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of creation (Auxiliary Verbs, Verbs that help the Infinitive into being). (424.)

Metai quam amorī malo, I prefer being feared to being loved.

275. The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a noun.
1. As a Subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expression or in marked opposition to the Present.

Plus proderit demonstrasse rectam prōtīnus viam quam recōcāre ab errōrē jam lapsōs. Quint. It will be more profitable to have pointed out the right path immediately than to recall from wandering those that have already gone astray.

Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decōrum est. Ov. 'Twas not so much dishonor to be beaten as 'tis an honor to have struggled.

So by a kind of attraction with dēbuit, ought, decuit, became, and the like, especially in earlier and late Latin.

Tunc decuit flēsė s. Liv. That was the time when it would have been becoming to weep (to have wept).
2. As an Object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active: so after *velle*, *to wish*.

*Neminem notā strēnuī aut ignāvī militis notāsse volui*. Liv. *I wished to have marked (to mark finally) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice.*

Otherwise it is found only in the poets (after the fashion of the Greek Aorist Infinitive):

*Frātrēs tendentēs opācō Pēlion im p o s u ĵ s e Olympō*. Hor. *The brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus.*

In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment.

Here the Infinitive *esse* is seldom expressed.

*Dēmocritum nōllem (esse) vituperātum*. Cic. *I should rather not have had Democritus abused.*

276. As the representative of the Indicative, the Infinitive has all its Tenses: Present, Fast, Future, and Future Periphrastics.

277. The Present Infinitive represents *contemporaneous action*—hence the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense:

*Dico eum venire*, *I say that he is coming*; *dicēbam eum venire*, *I said that he was coming*.

The Perfect Infinitive represents *Prior Action*—hence the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense:

*Dico eum vēnisse*, *I say that he came, has come, used to come*; and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense:

*Dixi eum vēnisse*, *I said that he had come, used to come, did come*.

**Remark.**—*Memini*. *I remember*, when used of personal experience commonly takes the present.

*Turn me regem appellāri & vōbis memini, nunc tyrannum vocāri video*. Liv. *I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now. So also memoria teneo and recordor, I remember, I recall*. When the experience is not personal, the ordinary construction is followed:

*Memineram Marium ad infimūrum hominum misericordiam confugisse*. Cic. *I remembered that Marius had thrown himself on the mercy of a set of low creatures.*

The peculiar construction with the Present arises from the liveliness of the recollec-
tion. When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Perfect may be used even of personal experience:

Me memini fratum dominae turbasse capillos. Ov. I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart's hair.

278. The Present Participle Active denotes continuance; the Perfect Passive, completion or attainment.

Remark.—The Perfect Participle is often used where we should employ a Present: ratus, thinking; complexus, embracing; hortatus, exhorting.

279. The Future Participle (Active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with sum, I am, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Remark.—The so-called Future Participle Passive is more properly called the Gerundive, and has already been discussed. (243.)

SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

280. The sentence may be expanded by the multiplication or by the qualification, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

A.

1. Multiplication of the Subject.

Concord.

281. Number: The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural number:

Jūs et injuria nātūrā dījūdicantur. Cic. Right and wrong are distinguished by nature.

Pater et avus mortui sunt. Ter. Father and grandfather are dead.

Exceptions.—1. The common predicate may agree with a singular subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important: ("My flesh and my heart faileth," Psa. lxxiii. 26.)

Aetas et forma et super omnia Rōmānum nōmen tē ferōciōrem facit. Liv. Your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettlesome.

Nāvēs et praesidium excessit. Liv. The fleet and garrison departed.

2. Two abstracts in combination, when they are conceived as a unit, take a singular verb: ("When distress and anguish cometh upon you," Prov. i. 27.)
Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiae. Cic. Let the religious obligation of a promise be preferred to friendship.

So any close union: ("Your gold and silver is cankered," Jas. v. 3.)

Senátus populusque Rómanus intellegit. Cic. The senate and people of Rome perceives (= Rome perceives.)

Remarks.—1. Neque—neque, neither—nor, allows the Plural chiefly when the persons are different:

Haec neque ego neque tūfēcimus. Ter. Neither you nor I did this.

2. A singular subject combined with another word by cum, with, is treated sometimes as a singular, sometimes as a plural:

Māgo cum omnibus fērē armātīs refūgerat. Liv. Mago with almost all the armed men had retreated.

Taurus cum quīnque vaccīs unō ictū fulminīs exanimātī sunt. Liv. A bull with five cows were killed by one stroke of lightning.

282. Gender: When the genders of combined subjects are different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gender or the nearest.

In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest; in things without life, the neuter.

The strongest:

Pater et māter mortuī sunt. Ter. Father and mother are dead.

Mūrus et porta dē caelo tacta. Liv. Wall and gate had been struck by lightning.

The nearest:

Convicta est Messālīna et Silius. Tac. Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius.

Hippolochus Larissaeorumque dēditum est praesidium. Liv. Hippolochus and the Larissaean garrison (were) surrendered.

When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.

Both as persons:

Rēx regiaque clāssis profectī sunt. Liv. The king and the king's fleet set out.

Both as things:

Nātūrā inimica sunt libera civitās et rēx. Liv. A free State and a king are natural enemies.

Remark.—On the neuter as a predicate see 199, R. 4.

Pāx et concordia victīs utilia, victōribus tantum pulchra sunt. Tac. Peace and harmony are useful (things) to the conquered, to the conquerors alone are they ornaments.
283. Persons: When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third:

Si tū et Tullia, lūx nōstra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicero valēmus. Cic. If Tullia, light of my eyes, and you are well, dearest Cicero and I are well.

Remarks.—1. The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness: Ego et uxor mea. Wife and I.
2. Exception.—In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject:
Ego sententiam, tū verba dēfendis. I am the champion of the spirit, you of the letter.
Et ego et Cicero meus fāgitābit. Cic. My Cicero will demand it and (so will) I.

So regularly with disjunctives. On neque—neque, see 281, R. 1.

2. Qualification of the Subject.

284. The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character.

The chief forms of the attribute are:

I. The adjective and its equivalents: amicus certus, a sure friend.

II. The substantive in apposition: Cicero ōrātor, Cicero the orator.

Remark.—The equivalents of the adjective are: 1. The pronouns hic, this, ille, that, etc. 2. Substantives denoting rank, age, trade: servus homo, a slave person; homo senex, an old fellow; homo gladiātor, a gladiator-fellow; mulier ancilla, a servant-wench. 3. The genitive (357). 4. The ablative (402). 5. Preposition and case: excessus e vītā, departure from life. 6. Adverbs chiefly with participial nouns: rectē facta, good actions. 7. Relative clauses (506).

I. Adjective Attribute.

Concord.

285. The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive, in gender, number, and case:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vir sapiens, a wise man,</td>
<td>virī sapientēs, wise men.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulier pulchra, a beautiful woman,</td>
<td>mulierēs pulchrae, beautiful women.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēgium dōnum, royal gift,</td>
<td>rēgia dōna, royal gifts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PECULIAR FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

Case.

Virī sapientis, of a wise man.  
Mulierī pulchrae, for a beautiful woman.  
Virum sapientem, wise man.  
Bone fili! good son!  
Regiō dōnō, by royal gift.  
Mulieres pulchrās, beautiful women.

286. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest:

Omnes agrī et maria,  
Agrī et maria omnia,  
All lands and seas.

Remarks.—1. The Latin language repeats the common attribute more frequently than the English: omnes agrī et omnia maria, all lands and (all) seas. Generally, the Latin language has a strong tendency to rhetorical repetition.

2. A common surname is put in the plural: M. et Q. Cicerōnēs, Marcus and Quintus Cicero; G., Gn., M. Carbōnēs, Gaius, Gnaeus (and) Marcus Carbo; otherwise, M. Cicero et Q. Cicero, Marcus and Quintus Cicero.

287. Position of the Attribute.—When the Attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, ordinarily after it.

1. Fugītivus servus, a runaway slave (one complex).
2. Servus fugītivus, a slave (that is) a runaway (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulae, such as cīvis Rōmānus, Roman citizen; populus Rōmānus, people of Rome.

Remark.—The superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then generally precede their substantive: summa aqua, the surface of the water; summus mons, the top of the mountain; vēre prīmō, prīmō vēre, in the beginning of spring; in mediā urbe, in the midst of the city. So also, reliqua, cētera Graecia, the rest of Greece.

288. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes before them all, sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first.

All lands and seas, omnes agrī et maria; agrī et maria omnia; agrī omnes et maria.

The beginner may omit to 318.

PECULIAR FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

289. The following forms of the Adjective Attribute present important peculiarities.

1. Demonstrative Pronouns.
2. Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.
3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Indefinite Pronouns.
5. Numerals.
6. Comparatives and Superlatives.

1. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

290. **Hie**, *this* (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to that which is nearer the speaker, and may mean:

1. The speaker himself: **hie homo** = *ego*.
2. The judges in a suit of law: **si ego hōs novī**, if *I know these men* (= the jury).
3. The most important subject immediately in hand: **hic sapiens de quō loquor**, *this* (imaginary) wise man of whom *I am speaking*.
4. That in which the speaker is peculiarly interested: **hoc studium**, *this pursuit of mine, of ours*.
5. That which has just been mentioned: **haec häctenus**, *these things thus far = so much for that*.
6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned: **his condi-cūnibus**, *on the following terms*.
7. The current period of time: **hic diēs**, *to-day*; **haec nox**, *the night just past or just coming*; **hic mēnsis**, *the current month*.

291. **Iste**, *that* (of thine, of yours), refers to that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person (Demonstrative of the Second Person):

**Perfer istam militiam.** Cic. *Endure that military service of yours.*

**Adventū tuō istā subsellia vacuēfacta sunt.** Cic. *At your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.*

**Remark.**—The supposed contemptuous character of **Iste** arises from the refusal to take any direct notice of the person under discussion, "the person at whom."

292. **Ille**, *that* (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes that which is more remote from the speaker, and is often used in contrast to **hie, this**.

**Heu quantum haec Niobē Niobā distabat ab illā.** Ov. *Alas! how far this Niobe differed from that Niobe.*

**Ille** may mean:
1. That which has been previously mentioned (often **ille quidem**): **illud quod initiō vōbis prōposui**, that which *I propounded to you at first*.
2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive):
testula illa, that (notorious) potsherd = institution of ostracism; illud Solonis, that (famous saying) of Solon's.

3. That which is to be recalled: illud imprīmis mirābile, that (which I am going to remind you of) is especially wonderful.

4. That which is expected:

Ille dīēs veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam. Ov. The day will come when I shall lay aside (cease) my mournful strains.

Remarks.—1. Hic and ille are used together in contrasts: as, the latter—the former, the former—the latter.

When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed: hic, the latter; ille, the former

Ignāvia corpus hebetat. labor firmat; illa mātūram senectūtem, hic longam adolescentiam reddit. Cels. Laziness weakens the body; toil strengthens it; the one (the former) hastens old age, the other (the latter) prolongs youth.

When the former is the more important, hic is the former, ille the latter:

Melior tütiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victūria; hāc in nōstrā, illa in deōrum mandā est. Liv. Better and safer is certain peace than hoped-for victory; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods.

2. Hic et ille; ille et ille; ille aut ille, this man and (or) that man = one or two.

Nōn dīcam hoc signum ablātum esse et illud; hoc dicō, nullum tē signum reliquisse. Cic. I will not say that this statue was taken off and that; (what) I say (is) this, that you left no statue at all.

3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of hic, iste, ille: hīc, here (where I am); hinc, hence (from where I am); hīc, hither (where I am); istic, there (where you are); illic, there (where he is), etc.

4. The Demonstrative Pronouns hic, iste, ille, and the Determinative is, are often strengthened by quidem, indeed. The sentence often requires that either the demonstrative or the particle be left untranslated.

Optāre hoc quidem est, nōn docēre. Cic. That is a (pious) wish, not a (logical) proof.

Nihil perterritur ad nōs praeter rūmōrēs satis istōs quidem constantēs sed adhuc sine anctōre. Cic. Nothing is brought to us except reports, quite consistent, it is true but thus far not authoritative.

2. DETERMINATIVE AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

293. Is, that, is the determinative pronoun, and the regular antecedent of the relative.

Mihi obviam vēnīt tuus puer; is mihi litterās abs tē reddidit. Cic. I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you.

Is minimō eget mortālis qui minimum cupit. Syr. That mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least.

Remarks.—1. Is, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nominative, more rarely in an oblique case.

Bis dat qui cito dat. Prov. He gives twice who gives in a trice.

2. Is, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as he or that in English, for the purpose of emphasis. Such expressions are: et is, atque is, isque, and he too, and that
too; neque is, et is nōn, and he not, and that not; sed is, but he, further strengthened by quidem, indeed.

Exempla quae rimus et e a nōn antiqua. Cic. We are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date.

Epicūrus ūnā in domō e t e ā quidem angustā quam magnōs tenuit amī-
cōrum gregēs. Cic. What shoes of friends Epicurus had in one house, and that a pinched-
up one?

3. Is does not represent a noun before a Genitive, as in the English that of. In Latin the noun is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

Nulla est celeritās quae possit cum animi celeritāte contendere. Cic. There is no speed that possibly vie with that of the mind.

M. Coelius tribūnāl suum juxtā G. Trēbōnī sēllam collocāvit. Caes. Marcus Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Gaius Trebonius.

Of course Hic, Ille, and Iste can be used with the Genitive in their proper sense.

294. Reflexive: Akin to is is the Reflexive Pronoun sui, sibi, sē. Instead of the Genitives ējus, eōrum, eārum, eōrum, the Possessive of the Reflexive, suus, sua, suum, is employed when reference is made to the subject of the sentence:

Alexander moriens ānulum suum dederat Perdiccae. Nep. Alex-
ander (when) dying had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae. Ov. (265.)

On the other hand:

Deum agnōscis ex operibus ējus. God you recognize by his works.

The same principle applies to the other cases of is and of the Reflexive. Hence the general rule:

295. The forms of the Reflexive Pronoun are used when reference is made to the subject of the sentence.


Remarks.—1. Suus, when used in an emphatic sense (own, peculiar, proper), may refer to another case than that of the subject:


Jūstitia suum curāque distribuit. Cic. Justice gives each man that is his own = his due.

Inque suōs volui cōgere verba pedēs. Ov. And I wished to force the words into their proper feet (places in the verse).

Suō tempore, at the proper, fitting time. So suō locō:

Cōmoediae quem ēsum in pueris putem suō locō dicam. Quint. What I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.

2. In dependent clauses the reflexive is used with reference either to the principal or to the subordinate subject. See for fuller treatment 521.
296. *Idem,* the same, serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing. *Idem* is often to be translated by *at the same time; likewise, also; yet, notwithstanding.*

*Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus. Nep.* Cimon fell into the same odium as his father.

*Quidquid honestum est idem est utile.* Cic. Whatever is honorable is also (at the same time) useful.

*Nihil prōdest quod nōn laedere possit idem.* Ov. Nothing helps that may not likewise hurt.

*Epicūrus, quem optimam et praestantissimam nātūram dei dicat esse, negat idem esse in deō grātiam.* Cic. Although Epicurus says that the nature of God is transcendently good and great, yet (at the same time) he says that there is no sense of favor in God.

*Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus, es idem.* Mart. Crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.

*Remarks.—1. The same as is expressed by idem with qui, with atque or ac, with ut, with cum, and poetically with the Dative:* Servi mōribus idem erant quibus dominus. Cic. The servants had the same character as the master.

*Est animus ergā te idem ac fuit.* Ter. Her feelings toward you are the same as they were.

*Disputātiōnem expōnimus idem ferē verbīs ut actum disputātumque est.* Cic. We are setting forth in very much the same words in which it was actually carried on.

*Tibi mēcum in eōdem pistrīnō vivendum.* Cic. You have to live in the same treadmill with me.

*Invītum qui servat idem facit occidentī.* Hor. He who saves a man('s life) against his will, does the same thing as one who kills him (as if he killed him).

2. *Idem* cannot be used with *is,* of which it is only a stronger form (*is+dem*).

297. *Ipse,* self, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others:

*Ipse fēci,* I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it.

*Nunc ipsum,* at this very instant, at this precise moment.

*Conōn non quaešsit ubi ipse tūtō vīveret, sed unde praesidīō esse posset civibus suis.* Nep. Conon did not seek a place to live in safety himself, but a place could be of assistance to his countrymen.

*Valvae subitō se ipsae aperuēsunt.* Cic. The folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord.

*Cato mortuus est annis octōgintā sex ipsīs ante Cicerōnem consulem.* Cic. Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship.
Remarks.—1. Owing to this distinctive character, *ipse* is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things*; *riders* in opposition to *horses*; *inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household*.

*Eo quō mē ipsa misit.* Plaut. *I am going where mistress sent me.*

2. *Et ipse*, likewise, as well, is used when a new subject takes an old predicate:

*Virtūtēs et ipsae taedium pariunt nisi gratiā varietātis adjūtae.* Quint. *Virtue* likewise (as well as faults) produce weariness unless they are flavored with variety.

*Camillus ex Volsciis in Aequos transīt e t ipsos heliō melientes.* Liv. *Camillus went across from the Volsciens to the Aequians, who were likewise (as well as the Volsciens) getting up war.*

298. *Ipse* is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

*Sē ipsē laudat,* he (and not another) praises himself.

*Sē ipsum laudat,* he praises himself (and not another).

*Piger ipsē sibi obstat.* Prov. *The lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstacle.*

*Non ego medicānā; mē ipsē consolōr.* Cic. *I do not need medicine; I comfort myself (I am my only comforter).*

*Omnibus potius quam ipsīs nōbīs consulūimus,* we have consulted the interest of all rather than our own.

Exceptions are common:

*Quique aliis cāvit nōn cavet ipsē sibī.* Ov. *And he who took precautions for others takes none for himself.*

3. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

299. The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

*Manūs lavā et cēnā.* Cic. *Wash (your) hands and dine.*

*Praedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vivō.* Cic. *You are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others.*

Remark.—Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness*: *suum esse*, to belong to one’s self, to be one’s own man.

*Tempore tūō pugnāstī.* Liv. *You have fought at your own time (= when you wished).*

*Ego anno mēō consul factus sum.* Cic. *I was made consul in my own year (= the first year in which I could be made consul).*

*Pugna suum finem quum jacet hostis habet.* Ov. *A fight has reached its fit end when the foe is down.*
4. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

300. Quidam means one, a, a certain one (definite or indefinite to the speaker, not definitely designated to the hearer): quidam rhetor, a certain rhetorician.

In the plural, it is equivalent to some, sundry, without emphasis.

Quidam is often used with or without quasi, as if, to modify an expression:

Est quaedam virtutum vitiorumque vicinia. Quint. There is a certain neighborly relation between virtues and vices.

Nōn sunt istī audiendī qui virtūtem duram et quasi ferream quandam esse volunt. Cic. Those friends of yours are not to be listened to who will have it (maintain) that virtue is hard, and as it were made of iron.

301. Aliquis (aliqul), means, some one (wholly indefinite), some one or other: fecit hoc aliquis tui similis, some one or other like you did this; aliqui scrupus, some scruple or other.

In the predicate it is emphatic (by Litotēs, 448, R. 2): sum aliquis, a liquid, I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight, opposed to: nullus sum, nihil sum, I am a nobody, nothing.

Est aliquid fātāle malum per verba levāre. Ov. It is something to relieve the fated misfortune by words.

302. Quis (qui), fainter than aliquis, is used chiefly in relative sentences and after quum, when, si, if, nē, lest, num, whether, quō the...

Ne quid nimis! nothing in excess!

Sī qua volet regnāre diū, delūdat amantem. Ov. (231, R. 2.)

Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae. Ov. (265.)

Remark.—Aliquis is used after si, and the rest when there is stress: sī quis, if any; sī aliquis, if some.

Sī aliquid dandum est voluptātī, modicis conviviis senectūs dēlectāri potest. Cic. If something is to be given to pleasure (as something or other must), old age can take delight in mild festivities. Sī quid, if anything; sī quidquam, if anything at all.

When used with negatives, the negative itself is commonly negatived: Verrēs nihil unquam fecit sine aliquō quaestū. Cic. (445.)

303. Quispiam is rarer than aliquis, but not to be distinguished from it, except that quispiam is never found in negative sentences: dixerit quispiam, some one may say.

304. Quisquam and ullus (adjective) mean any one (at all),
and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences that imply total negation, and in sweeping conditions:

Quis unquam Graecorum rhētorum ā Thūcydīde quidquām dūxit? Cīc. What Greek rhetorician ever drew anything from Thūcydīdes? [None].
Si quīs quām, ille sapiens fuit. Cīc. If any one at all (was) wise, he was.
Est ullā rēs tantī, ut virī bonī et splendōrem et nōmen āmittās? Cīc. Is anything of such importance as that you should lose (for its sake) the splendid title of a good man?

The negative of quīs quām is nēmo, nobody; nihil, nothing (105). Nēmo, however, is sometimes used as an adjective:

Nēmo discipulus, no scholar.

The negative of ullus is nullus, no, none, which is also used regularly as a substantive in the Genitive and Ablative instead of nēminis and nēmine.

Remarks.—1. On neque quisquām and et nēmo, see 479.

305. Quisque (from quisquis) means each one.

Laudāti sunt omnēs dōnātique prō meritō quīsque. Līv. All were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert.
Quam quisque nōrit artem in hāc sē exerceat. (618.)

With superlatives and ordinals quisque is loosely translated every:

Optimum quidque rārissimum est. Cīc. Every good thing is rare, more accurately, The better a thing, the rarer it is. (645, R. 2.)
Quintō quōque annō Sicilia tōta censētur. Cīc. Every fifth year all Sicily is assessed.
Primō quōque tempore, The sooner the better, as soon as possible.

Remarks.—1. Quisque is commonly postpositive, almost invariably after the reflexive: ipse sē quīsque diligit (295); suum cuīque (295, R. 1), except when the reflexive is especially emphatic.
2. Nägelsbach’s formulē:
a. Nōn omnia omnibus tribuenda sunt, sed suum cuīque;
b. Omnēs idem faciunt, sed optimus quisque optimē;
c. Nōn omnis annis hoc fit, sed tertio quōque annō;
d. Nōn omnēs idem faciunt, sed quod quisque vult.

306. Alter and alius are both translated other, another, but alter refers to one of two, alius to diversity.
Sōlus aut cum al·terō, alone or with (only) one other; alter Nero, a second Nero.

Al·ter al·ter·um quaerit, one (definite person) seeks the other (definite person); al·i·us al·i·um quaerit, one seeks one, another another; alterī—alterī, one party—another party (already defined); al·iī—al·iī, some—others. Alter often means neighbor, brother, fellow-man; al·ius, third person.

Alter:

Āge·si·lá·üs clau·dus fuit al·terō pede. NEP. Agesilaüs was lame of one foot.

Al·ter ā manū fert lapidem, pānem ostentat al·terā. PLAUT. In one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread.

Mors nec ad vívōs pertinet nec ad mortuōs: alterī nullī (304, R. 2) sunt, al·terōs nōn at·tinget. CIC. Death concerns neither the living nor the dead: the latter are not, the former it will not reach.

Alius:

Fallācia alia aliam trūdit. TER. One lies treads on the heels of another (indefinite series).

Dīvi·tī·ās alī praepōnunt, alīī honōrēs. CIC. Some prefer riches, others honors.

Al·iūd alīī nāturā iter ostendit. SALL. Nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man.

Al·ter and alius:

Ab alīō expectēs alterī quod féceris. SYRUS. You may look for from another what you’ve done unto your brother (from No. 3, what No. 1 has done to No. 2).

5. NUMERALS.

307. Duo means simply two, ambo, both (two considered together), uterque, either (two considered apart, as, “They crucified two others with him, on either side one,” John xix. 18):

Supplicātiō a·mbō·rum nōmine et triumphus u·triq·ue dēcrětus est. LIV. A thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed.

REMARK.—Uterque is seldom plural, except of sets:

Uterque [plēbīs fauto·rēs et senātus] victoriām crūdēlier exercēbant. SALL. Either party (democrats and senate) made a cruel use of victory.

Du·ae fuērunt Ariovisti uxo·rēs: u·tra·que in eā fugā periērunt. CAES. Ariovistus’s wives were two in number; both perished on that flight.

On uterque with the Genitive, see 370 R. 2.

308. Mille, a thousand, is in the Singular an indeclinable Adjective, and is less frequently used with the Genitive: mille militēs, rather than mille militum, a thousand soldiers; in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive, and must have the Genitive: duo milia militum, two thousand(s of) soldiers = two regiments of soldiers.
309. The ordinals are used for the cardinals with a carelessness which gives rise to ambiguity:

Quattuor anni sunt, ex quó tē nōn vīdī,
It is four years, that I have not seen you (since I saw you).
Quartus annus est,
It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years).

Remark.—To avoid this ambiguity inceptus, begun, and exactus, finished, seem to have been used. Gellius, N. A. iii. 16.

310. The distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

With singuli either cardinal or distributive may be used.

Antōnii [pollicitus est] dēnāriōs quīngēnōs (or quīngentōs) singulīs mīlitibus datūrūm. Cic. Antonius promised to give 500 denarii to each soldier.

Scriptum eculeum cum quīnque pedibus, pullōs gallīnāceōs trēs cum ternīs pedibus nātōs esse. Liv. A letter was written to say that a colt had been foaled with five feet (and) three chickens hatched with three feet (apiece).

Carmen ab t e r n o v ē n ī s virgīnibus canī jussērunt. Liv. They ordered a chant to be sung by thrice nine virgins.

Remark.—The poets often use the distributive where the cardinal would be the rule, and the cardinals are sometimes found even in prose, where we should expect the distributives. Bīnī is not unfrequently used of a pair: Bīnī scyphī, a pair of cups. On the distributives with Plūrālia tantum, see 95, R. 2.

6. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

311. Comparative.—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with quam, than, or in the Ablative:

Ignōrātio futūrōrum malōrum ātillōr est quām scientia. Cic. Ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).

Tullus Hostilius fērōcior etiam Rō m u lō fuit. Liv. Tullus Hostilius was even more mettlesome than Romulus.

Remarks.—1. The Ablative is used only when the word with quam would stand in the Nom. or Acc.
161

Caesar minor est Pompējus, Caesar is younger than Pompey.

Caesarem magis amāmus Pompejum, we love Caesar more than Pompey.

But—

Caesarī magis favēmus quam Pompejī, we favor Caesar more than Pompey (647).

2. The Ablative is very common in negative sentences, and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

Non adeo cecidi ut infra te quoque sim, inferius quō nihil esse potest. Ov. I have not fallen so far, however cast down, as to be lower than you, than whom nothing can be lower.

3. Measure of difference is put in the ablative, 397.

4. Quam is often omitted after plús. amplius, more, and minus, less, and the like, without affecting the construction.

Hominī miserō plús quingentōs colaphōs infrēgit mihi. Ter. He has dealt me, luckless creature, more than five hundred crushing boxes on the ear.

Spatium est non amplius sexcentōrum. Caes. The space is not more than (of) six hundred feet.

More than thirty years old: 1. Nātus plús (quam) trígintā annōs.

2. Nātus plús trígintā annīs (rare).

3. Mājor (quam) trígintā annōs nātus.

4. Mājor trígintā annīs (nātus).

5. Mājor trígintā annōrum.

Palūs nōn lātior pedibus quinquāgintā. Caes. A swamp not broader than fifty feet (or pedēs quinquāgintā).

5. On the combination of the comparative with opinio, opinion, spē, hope, and the like, see 399, R. 1.

6. Atque for quam is poetical.

312. Standard of Comparison omitted.—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied: 1. By the context; 2. By the usual or proper standard; 3. By the opposite.

1. By the context:

Solent régēs Persārum plūrēs uxorēs habēre. Cic. The kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one].

2. By the proper standard:

Senectūs est nātūrā loquāciōr. Cic. Old age is naturally rather (or too) talkative.

3. By the opposite:

Sed melius nēscīsse fuit. Ov. But it had been better not to have known (than to have known), ignorance had been bliss.

313. Disproportion.—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with quam prō, than for, and the Ablative, or with ut, that, or quī, who, and the subjunctive:

Mīnōr caedes quam prō tantā victoriā fuit. Liv. The loss was (too) small for so great a victory.
314. Two Qualities compared.—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either magis and quam with the positive, or a double comparative:

Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens. Cic. Your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise.

Paullū cōntio fuit vērior quam grātior populō. Liv. Paullus’s speech was more true than agreeable to the people.

Remark.—There is no distinction to be made between the two expressions. In the latter turn, mainly post-Ciceronian, the second comparative is merely attracted into the same form as the first. The same rule applies to the adverb: fortius quam fēlicius, with more bravery than good luck.

315. Restriction to the Comparative.—When but two objects are compared, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison, whereas, in English, the superlative is employed, unless the idea of duality is emphatic.

Nātū mājōr, the eldest (of two), the elder; nātū mīnōr, the youngest, the younger.

Prior, the first; posterior, the last.

Posteriōres cōgitātiōnes, ut ājunt, sapientiōres solent esse. Cic. After-thoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest.

Remark.—The same rule applies to the interrogative uter, which of two? (whether?): Quaeritur: ex duōbus uter dīgnior; ex pluribus, quis dīgnissimus. Quint. The question is: Of two, which is the worthier; of more (than two), which is the worthiest. Exceptions are rare.

316. Superlative.—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons:

Quintus Fabius Māximus, Quintus Fabius the Great.

Tam fēlix essēs quam fōrmōsissima vellem. Ov. Would thou were fortunate as (thou art) fair.

Māximō iṃpetū, mājōre fortūnā. Liv. With great vigor, with greater luck.

317. Superlative strengthened.—The superlative is strengthened by longē, by far; multō, much; vel, even; ūnus, ūnus
omnium, one above all others; quam, quantus—potuit, as—as possible.

De Britannis omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī qui Cantium incolunt. Caes. Of all the Britons by far the most cultivated are those that inhabit Kent.

Prōtagorās sophistēs illīs temporibus vēl maximus. Cic. Protagoras, the very greatest sophist (= professor of wisdom) in those times.

Urbem ūnam mihi amīcissīmam dēclīnāvī. Cic. I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me.

Caesar quam aequissimō locō potest castra commūnīt. Caes. Caesar fortifies a camp in as favorable a position as possible.

Remarque.—Quam aequissimus locus = tam aequus quam aequissimus. (For other expressions, see 645, R. 5.

APPPOSITION.

318. By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it:

Cicero orātor, Cicero the orator.
Rhēnus flūmen, the river Rhine.

CONCORD.

319. The word in apposition agrees with the principal word in number and case, and as far as it can in gender:

Nom. Hērodotus pater historiae, Herodotus the father of history;

Aestus exēsor mūrōrum. Lūcr. Tīde the devourer of walls.

Athēnāe omnium doctrīnārum inventīcēs. Cic. Athens the inventor of all branches of learning. (See 202.)

Remarques.—1. The predicate sometimes agrees with the word in apposition, especially in names of towns: Coriolī oppidum captum est. Liv. Corioli-town was taken.

Otherwise regulary:

Pompējus, nostrī amōrēs, ipse sē aflīxīt. Cic. Pompey, our bosom friend, has floored himself.

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Genitive in apposition:

Tuum, hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus. Cic. We have seen your bosom bared, you open-hearted creature!

Urbs meā únius operā salva fuit. Cic. The city was saved by my exertions alone.

320. Partitive Apposition.—Partitive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which a part is taken out of the whole:
Cētera multitūdo sorte decimus quisque ad supplicium lecti sunt. Liv. (Of the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment. (Sometimes called Restrictive Apposition.)

321. Distributive Apposition.—Distributive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which the whole is subdivided into its parts, chiefly with alter—alter, the one—the other; quisque, each one; alii—ālii, some—others. (Often called Partitive.)

Duae filiae altera occisa altera capta est. Caes. (Of two daughters, the one was killed, the other captured.

Remark.—The Partitive Genitive is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

322. Mihi nomen est. Instead of the apposition with nōmen, name, the name of the person is more frequently attracted into the Dative.

1. Mihi Cicerōnī nōmen est; most common.
2. Mihi nōmen Cicerō est; less common.
3. Mihi nōmen Cicerōnis est; least common.

Nōmen Arctūrō est mihi. Plaut. My name is Arcturus.

Samnites Maleventum, cui nunc urbī Beneventum nōmen est, perfugērunt. Liv. The Samnites fled to Maleventum (Ilcome), a city which now bears the name Beneventum (Welcome).

Nōmen Mercurii est mihi. Plaut. My name is Mercury.

323. Apposition to a Sentence.—Sometimes an accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence:

Admoneor ut aliquid etiam dē sepultūrā dicendum existimem, rem nōn difficilem. Cic. I am reminded to take into consideration that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter.

Remark.—This accusative may follow a Passive or Neuter verb as the object affected. Others regard such Neut. Accusatives as Nominatives.

PREDICATIVE ATTRIBUTION AND PREDICATIVE APPPOSITION.

324. Any case may be followed by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

NOMINATIVE: Filius aegrōtus rediit.
Ordinary Attribution: The sick son returned.
Predicative Attribution: *The son returned sick = he was sick when he returned.*

**Herculus juvenis leōnem interfécit.**

Ordinary Apposition: *The young man Hercules slew a lion.*

Predicative Attribution: *Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion = he was a young man when he slew a lion.*

**GENITIVE:** *Potestās ējus adhibendae uxōris,* *The permission to take her to wife.*

**DATIVE:** *Amicō vivō nōn subvēnisti,* *You did not help your friend (while he was) alive.*

**ACCUSATIVE:** *Herculus cervam vivam cēpit.*

Ordinary Attribution: *Hercules caught a living doe.*

Predicative Attribution: *Hercules caught a doe alive.*

**ABLATIVE:** *Aere ētuntur importāto,* *They use imported copper = the copper which they use is imported.*

**Remarks.**—1. The vocative, not being a case proper, is not used predicatively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.

*Quō, moritūre, ruis?* Verg. "Whither dost thou rush to die?" = Whither dost thou rush, thou doomed to die?

Notice here the old phrase:

**Macte virtūte estō.** Verg. *Increase in virtue = Heaven speed thee in thy high career.*

*Macte* is regarded by some as an old vocative, from the same stem as *magnus*; by others as an adverb.

2. **Victorēs rediērunt** may mean, *the conquerors returned,* or *they returned conquerors;* and a similar predicative use is to be noticed in *idem,* the same.

*Idem abeunt qui vēnerant,* *they go away just as they had come (literally, the same persons as they had come).*

3. Predicative Attribution and Apposition are often to be turned into an abstract noun:

*Ego nōn eadem volo senex, quae puer voluī,* *I do not wish the same things (as an old man) in my old age, that I wished (as a boy) in my boyhood.*

So with prepositions:

**Ante Cicerōnem cōnsulem,** *before the consulship of Cicero; ante urbem conditam,* *before the building of the city.*

4. Do not confound the "as" of apposition with the "as" of comparison—ut, quasi, tantrum. (645, R. 4).

*Cicero ea quae nunc ēsū veniunt cecinit ut vātēs.* Nep. *Cicero foretold all that is coming to pass now as (if he were) an inspired prophet.*

5. When special stress is laid on the Adjective or Substantive predicate, in combination with the verbal predicate, it is well to resolve the sentence into its elements:

**Themistoclēs ēnus restitit,** *Themistocles alone withstood = Themistocles was the only one that withstood.*

**Argonautae prīmī in Pontum Euxīnum intrāvērunt,** *the Argonauts first entered the Euxine (Black) Sea = were the first to enter the Black Sea.*

**Un a salūs victis nullam spērāre salūtem,** *Verg. The only safety which the vanquished have, is to hope for none.*

**Fragilem truēf commissit pelagō ratem prīmus,** *Hor. He was the first to trust his frail bark to the wild waves.*

6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective: *so in adjectives of inclination and disinclination, knowledge and igno-
rance, of order and position, of time and season, and of temporary condition generally: libens, with pleasure; volens, willing (y); nolens, unwilling (y); invitus, against one’s will; prudens, aware; imprudens, unawares; sciens, knowing (y); primus, prior, first; ultimus, last; medius, in, about the middle; hodiernus, to-day; matutinus, in the morning; frequens, frequent (y); sublimis, aloft.

Odero si poterō, si nōn, in vītus a mābo. Ov. (331, R. 2.)

Plus hodie bonō feci imprudens quam sciens ante nunc diem unquam. Ter.

Qui prior strinxerit ferrum ējus victoria erit. Liv. Who draws the sword first, his shall be the victory.

Vespertīnus pete tectum. Hoī. Seek thy dwelling at eventide.

Rārūs venit in cēnācula mīles. Juv. The soldiery rarely comes into the garret.

So also tōtus, wholly.

Philosophiae nōs tōtōs trādimus, Cīc. We give ourselves wholly to philosophy.

Sūl hoc contīngit sapientī. Cīc. This good luck happens to the wise man alone = it is only the wise man who has this good luck.

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of prīmus, and the adverbs prīmum, first, for the first time, and prīmō, at first.

Prīmus: Ego prīmus hanc ōrātiōnem lēgī, I was the first to read this speech.

Hanc prīmam ōrātiōnem lēgī, this was the first speech that I read.

Prīmum: Hanc ōrātiōnem prīmum lēgī deinde transcrīpsi. I first read (and) then copied this speech.

Hodie hanc ōrātiōnem prīmum lēgī, I read this speech to-day for the first time.

Prīmō: Hanc ōrātiōnem primō libenter lēgī, postea magis magisque mihi jējūna visa est, at first I read this speech with pleasure, afterward it seemed to me drier and drier.—Lattmann and Müller.

B.

1. Multiplication of the Predicate.

325. The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

2. Qualification of the Predicate.

326. The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change:

I. External change: combination with an object.
   1. Direct object, Accusative.
   2. Indirect object, Dative.

II. Internal change: combination with an attribute, which may be in the form of
   1. The Genitive case.
   2. The Ablative.
ACCUSATIVE.

3. Preposition with a case.
4. An Adverb.

Remark.—The Infinitive forms (Infinitive, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine) appear now as objects, now as attributes, and require a separate treatment.

I. EXTERNAL CHANGE.

ACCUSATIVE.

327. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object. The Object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected):

Deus mundum creavit, God made a creation—the universe.

Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent:

Ā rectā conscientiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere. Cic. One ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience.

Decem annōs Trōja oppugnāta est. Liv. Ten years was Troy besieged.

Maximam partem lacte vivunt. Caes. For the most part they live on milk.

From the Accusative of Extent arises the Accusative of the Outer Object (Object Affected):

Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.

Remark.—The Accusative of the Inner Object is the characteristic use of the case; the Accusative of the Outer Object the most common use. It is sometimes impossible to determine which element preponderates; so in verbs compounded with prepositions. The so-called Terminal Accusative may be conceived as an Inner or an Outer Object. Hence the following table is only approximate:

GENERAL VIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

328. I. Inner Object: Object effected.

Cognate Accusative.

Accusative of Extent.
1. In Space.
2. In time.
3. Of Adverbial Relation.

Terminal Accusative
(Point Reached).

II. Outer Object: Object affected.

1. Whole.
2. Part (so-called Greek Accusative).

Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

Verbs compounded with Prepositions.
III. Double Accusative: Asking and Teaching.
Making and Taking.

IV. Accusative as the most general form of the object (object created or called up by the mind):

In Exclamations.
Accusative and Infinitive.

329. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case:

Romulus Urbem Rōmam condidit, Romulus founded the City of Rome.
(Object Effected.)
Mens regit corpus, Mind governs body. (Object Affected.)

Rem. — 1. Many verbs are intransitive in English which are transitive in Latin, 
dolère, to grieve (for); dēspērēre, to despair (of); horrēre, to shudder (at); mirāri, 
to wonder (at); ridēre, to laugh (at). Especially to be noted is the wide scope of the 
Inner Object:

Honōrēs dēspērant, Cic. They despair of honors (give them up in despair).
Necāta est Vitia quod filii necem flēvisset (541). Tac. Vitia was executed for hav-
ing wept (for) her son’s execution.

Conscia mēns recti Fāmæ mendācia risit. Ov. Conscious of right, her soul (but 
laughed at) the falsehoods of Rumor.
Verbs of Smell and Taste have the Inner Object:
Piscis ipsum mare sapit. Sen. The fish tastes of the very sea.
Non omnēs possunt olēre unguenta exotica. Plaut. It is not every one can sme-
of foreign ointments.

2. The Accusative with Verbal nouns, such as tactio, touching, is comic.

330. Verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, cir-
cum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trans, 
become transitive, and take the accusative:

All with circum, per, praeter, trans, super, and subter.
Many with ad and in.
Some with ante and con.

Pythagōrās Persārum magōs adiu. Cic. Pythagoras applied to (consulted) the Persian magi.
Stella Veneris antegreditur sōlem. Cic. The star Venus goes 
advance of the sun.
Tam mē circumstant densōrum turba malōrum. Ov. So dense 
crowd of evils encompass(es) me.
Eam, si opus esse vidēbitur, ipse conveniam. Cic. I will go to see it 
myself, if it shall seem expedient.
Consilium multae calliditātis init. Ov. He engages in (devises) a plan 
deep cunning.
Tanais Eurōpam et Asiam interfluit. Curt. The Don flows between 
Europe and Asia.
Mortem obiit, ē mediō abiit. Ter. She went to face Death (died), she left the world.

Caesar omnem agrum Picēnum percurrit. Caes. Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picenian district.

Populus solet dignōs praeterire. Cic. The people is wont to pass by the worthy.


Flūminaque antiquōs subterlabentia mūrōs. Verg. And rivers gliding under ancient walls.

Rōmāni ruinas mūrī supervādēbant. Liv. The Romans marched over the ruins of the wall.

Crassus Euphrātem nullā bellī causā transiit. Cic. Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.

Remarks.—1. If the simple verb is a transitive, it can take two accusatives:

Ägēsīlāus Hellēspontum cōpiās trājēcit. Nep. Agesilaüs threw his troops across the Hellespont

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated:

Cōpiās trājēcit Rhodanum, or trans Rhodanum, He threw his troops across the Rhone.

Sometimes with difference of signification:

Adire ad aliquem, to go to a man; adire aliquem, to apply to (to consult) a man.

331. Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative.

Faciam ut mei memineris dum vitam vivās. Plaut. I'll make you think of me the longest day you live.

Servus est qui ut antiquī dixērunt servitūtem servīt. Quint. He is a slave who, as old-style people said, slaves a slavery — who is a slave that is a slave.

Remarks.—1. The Cognate Accusative, when a substantive proper, is commonly attended by an attribute:

Consimilem ēs erat jam olim ille lūdum. Ter. He had long before played a like game.

Cantilenam eadem canis. Ter. You are singing the same song.

Mīrum atque inscitum somniāvī somnium. Plaut. A marvellous and uncanny dream I've dreamed.

2. Much more common is the Cognate Accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives treated as substantives:

Xenophōn eadem fērē peccat. Cic. Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes.

Equidem posse vellem idem glorīāri quod Cyrus. Cic. For my part I could wish that it were in my power to make the same boast as Cyrus.
Quid quid délirant régés plectuntur Achivi. Hor. Whatever mad freak the kings play, the Achivi are punished for it.

Quid lacrumās? Ter. What are you crying for?

With transitive verbs an accusative of the person can be employed beside:

Discipulōs id unum moneo ut preceptōrēs suōs nōn minus quam ipsa studia ament. Quint. I give pupils this one piece of advice, that they love their teachers no less than their studies themselves.

3. From this the accusative neuter gradually passes over into an adverb, such as aliquantum, somewhat; nihil, nothing ("nothing loath"); summum, at most. Especially to be noted are: magnam partem, to a great extent; id temporis, at that time; id aetātis, of that age; id genus, of that kind; omne genus, of every kind.

Haec vulnera vitae nōn minimam partem mortis formidīne aluntur. Lucr. These wounds of life are not the least part fostered by the fear of death.

Nōstram vicem ultus est ipse sēsē. Cic. He took vengeance on himself in our stead.

4. Instead of the Cognate Accusative the Ablative is occasionally found: lapidibus pluere, to rain stones; sanguine sūdāre, to sweat blood.

Herculis simulācrum multō sūdōre mānāvit. Cic. The statue of Hercules ran freely with sweat.

332. A part of the object affected is sometimes put in the Accusative case after a passive or intransitive verb or an adjective:

Tacitā cūrā animum incensus. Liv. His soul on fire with silent care.

Jam vulgātum actīs quoque saucius pectus. Quint. Now-a-days "breast-wounded" is actually a common newspaper phrase.

Remarks.—1. This is commonly called the Greek Accusative, and is found chiefly in poetry. The common prose construction is the Ablative.

Nēseīt stāre locō; micat auribus et tremit artūs. Verg. He cannot stand still; he twitches with his ears and quivers in his limbs.

2. Somewhat different is the Accusative with induor, I do; exuor, I dry; cingor, I gird on myself; in which verbs the reflexive signification is retained:

Inūtile ferrum cingitur. Verg. He girds on (himself) a useless blade.

Lōricam induitur fidōque accingitur ense. Verg. He dons a corslet and begirds himself with his trusty gaitāe.

Arminius impetā equī pervāsit oblitus faciem suō crūōre nē nōscerētur. Tac. Hermann got through, thanks to his fiery charger, having smeared his face with his own gore to keep from being recognized.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

333. When two Accusatives depend on the same verb, one is the Inner, the other the Outer object.

Active verbs signifying to Inquire, to Require, to Teach, and célāre, to conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing.

Pūsionem quendam Sōcratēs interrogat quaedam geometrica. Cic. Socrates asks an urchin sundry questions in geometry.
Caesar Aeduōs frumentum flāgitābat. Caes. Caesar kept on demanding the corn of the Aeduoi.

Quid nunc tē, asine, litterās doceam? (258). Cic. Why should I now give you a lesson in literature, you donkey?

Iter omnēs cēlāt. Nep. He keeps all in the dark about his route, conceals his route from all.

Remarks.—1. The Passive form with the Nominative of the Person and the Accusative of the Thing is sparingly used. Discerē is more common than docerī.

Mōtūs docerī gaudet Iōnicōs mātūra virgō. Hon. The rare ripe maid delights to learn Ionic dances.

Omnes militiae artēs edoctus fuerat. Liv. He had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war.

2. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe:

This then is not the only way,
For it is also right to say;
Docerē and cēlāre dē.
Interrogāre dē quā rē,

Posco, I claim, and flāgito,
And always peto, postulo:
Take aliquid ab aliqūō,
While quaero takes ex, ab, dē, quō.

Adherbal Rōmam légātōs miserat, quī senātum docerēnt dē caede fratri.

Sall. Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother.

Bassus nōster mē dē hoc librō cēlāvit. Cic. Our friend Bassus has kept me in the dark about this book. (So commonly in the Passive.)

Aquam ā pūmiscē nunc postulās. Plaut. You are now asking water of a pumice-stone (blood of a turnip).

3. With doceō the Abl. of the Instrument is also used: docerē fidibus, equō, to teach the lyre, to teach riding. Doctus generally takes the Abl.: Doctus Graeciōs litterēs, a good Grecian.

4. Quid mē vis? what do you want of me? what do you want me for? belongs to this general class.

5. On Double Accusative with compound verbs, see 330, R. 1; on the accus. neuter of the Inner Object, see 331, R. 2.

334. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing, may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing:

Īram bene Ennius initium dīxit insāniae. Cic. Well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.

Ancum Marcium rēgēm populus creāvit. Liv. The people made Ancus Marcus king.

Cato Valerium Flaccum collēgam habuit. Nep. Cato had Valerius Flaccus (as) colleague.

Socratem Apollo sapientissimum iūdicāvit. Cic. Apollo judged Socrates (to be) the wisest.

Athēniēnsibus Pythia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperētōrem sūmerent. Nep. The Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander.


Quem intellegimus dividem? Cic. Whom do we understand by the rich man?
172

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

Remark.—The Double Accusative is turned into the Double Nominative with the Passive (197). Reddo, I render, is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, fio, I become.

Habeo, with two Accusatives, commonly means to have; in the sense of hold, regard, other turns are used:

Utrum prō ancillā mē habēs an prō filiā? Plaut. Do you look upon me as a maid-servant or a daughter?

So habēre servōrum locō, (in) numerō deōrum, to regard as slaves, as gods.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE AND TIME.

335. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the verb, either with or without per, through.

1. With per to denote entire occupancy (from one end to the other, all through).

Sparsi pēr prōvinciam militēs, the soldiers scattered all through the province.


2. Without per to denote distance, how far, how long.

Trābēs inter sē bīnōs pēdēs distābant. Caes. The beams were two feet apart.

Campus Marathōn abest ab oppidō Athēniēnsium circiter mīlia passuum dēcem. Nep. The plain (of) Marathon is about ten miles from the city of Athens.

Ā rectā conscientiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere. Cic. (327.)

Remarks.—1. With abesse and distāre, an Ablative of measure may also be employed:

Milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse, to be twenty-four miles off.

2. When the point of reference is taken for granted, ab (ā) with the Ablative may be used:

Hostēs ab milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt. Caes. The enemy pitched their camp less than two miles off.

336. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the adjectives longus, long; lātus, wide; altus, high (deep).

Fossa pēdēs trecentōs longa est, sex pēdēs alta, the ditch is three hundred feet long, six feet deep.

Militēs aggerem lātum pēdēs trecentōs trigintā altum pēdēs octōgintā exstruxērunt. Caes. The soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide (and) eighty feet high.
337. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb, either with or without per, in answer to the question, How long?

Gorgias centum et novem vixit annōs. Quint. Gorgias lived 109 years.

Tenuisti provinciam per decem annōs. Cic. You have held on to the province for 10 years (10 years long).

Est mēcum per tōtum diem. Plin. Ep. He is with me the livelong day.

Remark.—Per with the Accusative is frequently used like the Ablative of Time within which. Per illa tempora = illīs temporibus, in those times.

So especially with the negative:

Nulla rēs per triennium nisi ad nūtum istiōs jūdīcāta est. Cic. No matter was decided during (in) the three years except at his beck.

338. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the adjective nātus, old (born):

Puer decem annōs nātus est, the boy is ten years old.

Cyrus regnāvit annōs trigintā; quadragintā annōs nātus regnāre coepit. Cic. Cyrus reigned thirty years; (he was) forty years old (when) he began to reign.

ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

339. The Accusative as the Objective Case generally is used as an object of Thought, Perception, Emotion; an object created by the mind, evoked or deprecated by the will. Hence the use of the Accusative:

1. In Exclamations.
2. With the Infinitive.

340. The Accusative is used in Exclamations as the general object of Thought, Perception, or Emotion:

Mē miserum, poor me!
Mē caecum quī haec ante nōn viderim. Cic. Blind me! not to have seen all this before.

So in Exclamatory Questions:

Quō mihi fortūnam, si nōn concēditur ātī? Hor. What (is the object of) fortune to me if I’m not allowed to enjoy it?

Interjections are used:

Heu mē miserum! Alas! poor me!
Ó miserās hominum mentēs, Ó pectora caeca. LuCR. Oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!

Remarks.—1. Ó with the Vocative is an address; with the Nom. a characteristic; with the Accus. an object of emotion.
2. En, Lo! and Ecce, Lo here! take the Nominative: En Varus, Lo Varus! Ecce homo! Behold the man!

In the earlier language the Accusative was used: En tibi hominem! Plaut. Here's your man!
Ecce me! Plaut. Here am I!
So Eccum, ellum, eccam, eccillam, in comic poetry.

There seems to be some confusion between the interrogative En and Em (Hem).
Prō takes the Vocative: Prō di immortālēs! Ye immortal gods! The Accusative occurs in: Prō deum (hominum, deum atque hominum) fidem! For heaven's sake.

Hei! and Vae! take the Dative.
Hei mihi! Ah me! Vae victīs! Woe to the conquered!

341. The Accusative as the most general form of the substantive, and the Infinitive as the most general form of the verb, are combined so as to present the general notion of Subject and Predicate as an object of thought or perception (537).

The Accusative with the Infinitive is used
1. In Exclamations:

Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexāri! Hem, light of my eyes, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear. (The idea of) you(r) being so harassed! So in idiomatic English, Me write!

2. As an Object. (See 527.)
3. As a Subject. (See 535.)

Remark.—The Infinitive was originally a Dative-Locative, but almost every syntactical trace has vanished, and practically it has become an Accusative Neuter.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE LOCAL OBJECT.

Terminal Accusative.

342. The Accusative of the Local Object, Whither? commonly takes a preposition, such as: in, into; ad, to; versus, -ward:

In Graeciam proficisci, to set out for Greece.

Remarks.—1. The omission of the preposition, except as below stated, is poetical: Italiam vēnit. Verg. He came to Italy.
2. Names of Towns and Smaller Islands are put in the Accusative of the place Whither? without a preposition. So also rūs, into the country; domum, domōs, home.

For further explanations, see 410.
DATIVE WITH TRANSITIVE VERBS.

DATIVE.

343. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always implies an object effected which may be contained in the verb or expressed.

Nēmō errat ūnī sībī. Sen. No one errs (makes mistakes) to, for himself alone.

Fortūna multīs dāt nimīs, satīs nullī. Mart. Fortune to many gives too much, enough to none.

Remarks.—1. In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct: “He shewed me (Dat.) a pure river;” He shewed me (Acc.) to the priest. Originally a case of Personal Interest, it is used freely of Personified Things, sparingly of Local Relations, and this despite the fact that Locative and Dative are blended in the First and Third Declensions.

2. When parts of the body and the like are involved, the English possessive is often a convenient though not an exact translation.


DATIVE WITH TRANSITIVE VERBS.

344. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation, to, for, from. This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive.

Active Form:

To: Facile omnēs, cum valēmus, recta consilia aegrōtīs damus. Ter. Readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick.

For: Frangam tonsōrī crūra manūsque simul. Mart. I’d break the barber’s legs for him and hands at once.

From: Somnum mihi adēmit. Cic. It took my sleep away from me.

Passive Form:

Perpetuus nullī datur ūsus. Hor. Perpetual enjoyment (of a thing) is given to no one.

Immeritis franguntur crūra caballīs. Juv. The innocent hacks get their legs broken for them.

Arma adimuntur militibus. Liv. The soldiers have their arms taken from them.

Domus pulchra dominīs aedificātur nōn mūribus. Cic. A handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice.

Remarks.—1. For is nearer the Dative than To; but for (in defence of) is prō: prō patriā mori, to die for one’s country. To (with a view to) is ad or in, and when the idea of motion is involved the preposition must be used, even with dare, which gives its name to the Dative:
Hostis est uxor invita quae a d virum nuptum datur. Plaut. An enemy is the wife who is given to a man in marriage against her will.

Litterä s alicui dare, to give one a letter (to carry or to have).

Litterä s a d a l i q u e m dare, to indite a letter to one.

Rogäs ut mea tibi scripta mittam. Cic. You ask me to send you my writings (you wish to have them).

Librös jam pridem a d tē misissem si esse ēdendōs putāssem. Cic. I should have sent the books to you long since if I had thought they ought to be published.

2. From is allowable, and even then merely approximate, when the relation of Personal Interest is involved, otherwise the Ablative is used. Both combined in

Aegrōtō dominō (Dat.) dēduxit corpore (Abl.) febrēs. Hon. From the sick master's body drained the ague (for the sick master from his body).

3. The poets are more free in their use of the Dative, inasmuch as their personifications are bolder:

Karthāgīnī jam nōn ego nūntiōs mittam superbōs. Hor. Carthage no more shall I send haughty tidings.

Jam satis terrīs nīvis atque dīrae grandinis mīsit pater. Hor. Full, full enough of snow and dire hail the Sire hath sent the land.

The extreme is reached when the Dative follows fre and the like:

It caelō clamorque virum clangorque tubārum. Verg. Mounts to high heaven warriors' shout and trumpets' blare.

DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

345. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding, such as: prōdesse, to do good; nocēre, to do harm; indulgēre, to give up; cēdere, to yield; servīre, to be a slave; pārēre, oboedīre, to be obedient; crēdere, to lend belief; ignōscere, to grant forgiveness; placēre, to give pleasure; imperāre, to give orders; resistēre, to make resistance.

Nec prōsunt dominō quae prōsunt omnibus artēs. Ov. And the arts which do good to all do none to their master.

Verba nōbīs magis nocent, minus prōsunt nostra quam aliēna. Quint. Our own words do us more harm (and) less good than the words of others.

Indulsit lacrimīs. Ov. She gave free course to her tears.

Turpe servīre puellae. Ov. It is disgraceful to play the slave to a girl.

Tū ne cēde malīs. Verg. Yield not thou to misfortunes.

Mundus deō pāret et huic oboedīunt maria terraeque. Cic. The universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him.

Nimium nē crēde colōri. Verg. Trust not complexion all too much.
Ignōsce tímōri. Prop. Grant pardon to my fear. (Be to my fear as you knew it not.)

Cui placeō prōtinus ipsa placet. Ov. The girl I please straight pleases herself.

Reliquum est ut tūte tibi imperēs. Cic. It remains that you give orders yourself (have absolute command over yourself).

Arbor resistit ventīs. Ov. The tree offers resistance to the winds.

Remarks.—1. Among the most notable exceptions are: aequare, to be equal; deire (to distinguish), to be becoming; déficere, to be wanting; juvare, to be a help; ìbere, to order; and vetāre, to forbid, which take the Accusative:

Eam pictūram imitātī sunt multi, a e quāv it nēm o. Plin. That style of tinting many have imitated, none equalled.

Formā virīs neglecta dēcet. Ov. A careless beauty is becoming to men.

Mē dīēs dēficiat. Cic. The day would fail me.

Fortēs fortūna a djuvat. Ter. Fortune favors the brave.

On jubeo and veto see 424, R. 3. Fido and confido take the Ablative as well as the ative.

2. The Dative use is often obscured by the absence of etymological translation. So ìbere alicui, to marry a man (to veil for him); medērī alicui, to heal (to take one’s easures for) a man; supplico, I beg (I bow the knee to); persuādeo, I persuade (I ake it sweet).

3. The novice is again reminded that the passives of these verbs are used impersonally: (08).

Qui invident egent, illi quibus invidētur rem habent. Plaut. Those ho envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff.

DATIVE AND VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

346. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions

ad, ante, con, in, inter,

ob, post, prae, sub and super,

ake the Dative, especially in moral relations.

Transitive Verbs have an accusative case besides.

Pelopídōs omnibus pεpεtεlεs adfuit. Nep. Pelopidas was present to help) in all dangers.

Virtus omnibus rēbus anteit. Plaut. Virtue goes before all kings.

Nōn omnis aetās, Lūde, lūdō convent. Plaut. Not every age, (good) Lydus (Playfair), sorts with play.

At lupus et turpēs insta nt mori entibus ursī. Ov. But the wolf and foul bears press the dying hard.

Probus invidet nēmini. Cic. The upright man (looks hard at) envies no ne.
Aristides interfuit pugnae navali apud Salaminem. Nep. Aristides was engaged in the naval battle off Salamis.

Obstā principiēs. Ov. Oppose the beginnings.

Hannibal Alexandrō Magnō nōn postpōnēndus est. Just. Hannibal is not to be put below Alexander the Great.

Omnibus Druidibus praeest ūnus. Caes. At the head of all the Druids is one man.

Blanda quiēs victis fūrtim subrēpsit ocellīs. Ov. Caressing sleep crept stealthily o'er her vanquished eyes.

Miserīs succurrere discō. Verg. I learn to succor the wretched.

Anatum ōva gallīnīs saepē suppōnīmus. Cic. We often put ducks' eggs under hens (for them to hatch).

Lucumo superfuit patri. Liv. Lucumo survived his father.

So with Transitive Verbs, compounded with dē and ex.

Caesar Dejotarō tetrarchiam ēripuit, eīdemque dētraxit Armeniam. Cic. Caesar wrested from Dejotarus his tetrarchy, and stripped from him Armenia.

Remarks.—1. When the local signification preponderates, the preposition is repeated with its proper case:

Adhaeret nāvis a scopulum, the ship sticks to the rock.

Ājāx incubuit in gladiōm. Ajax fell on his sword.

Congredi cum hoste, to engage the enemy.

Dētrahere ānulum dē digitō, to draw a ring from one's finger.

The tendency in later Latin is to neglect this distinction, which even in the best period is not rigidly observed. Compounds with cum (con-) commonly repeat the preposition:

always communicāre aliquid cum aliquō, to communicate something to a man (share it with him).

2. The analogy of this class of verbs, which imply Nearness, is followed in poetry and later prose by haerere, miscēo, jungō, and others.

Haeret laterī lētālis arundō. Verg. Sticks to the side the lethal shaft.

Quod haerēre i n e quō senex posset (542) admirāri solēbāmus. Cic. We used to wonder that the old man could stick to his horse.

Miscēstultitiam consiliēs brevem. Hon. Mix with sense a little nonsense (add to sense a little spice of nonsense).

Nōn potest amor cum timōre miscēri. Sen. Love cannot mingle with fear.

Jungitur Ursidō. Juv. She is yoked to Orson.

Junctus is found in Cicero with the Dative.

VERBS WITH ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVI.

347. Some verbs are construed both with the Accusative and with the Dative.

Sometimes there is hardly an appreciable difference; sometimes the Dative emphasizes the personal relation.

Comitor aliquem, I accompany a man; comitor alicui, I act as com-
panion to a man; dālōr, generally Accusative, I fawn on; aemulor, I rival, I am a rival; praestōlor, I wait for.

Sometimes the difference follows naturally from the difference of case:

Cavēre alicuī, to take precautions for some one. 

aliquem, against

Quīque aliīs cāvit nōn cāvet ipse sībī. Ov. (298.)

Hīc niger est, hunc tū, Rōmāne, cavētō. Hor. He is a black fellow; against him be thou on thy guard, oh Roman!

Metuere alicuī, to fear for some one. 

aliquem, to dread

So all Verbs of Fearing.

Consulere alicuī, to take measures for, consult the interest of some one. 

aliquem, to consult

Convenīre alicuī, to be suitable for some one. 

aliquem, to meet

Moderāri alicuī reī, to moderate 

Temperāre alicuī rei, to set bounds to a matter. 

aliquid, to manage

To be noticed are the constructions of invidēo, I envy.

Invidēre alicuī aliquid (Cic.) to begrudge a man a thing. 

(in) alicuā rē 

alicūjus reī (once in Horace).

alicūjus alicuī reī, to envy something belonging to a man.

Nōn invidērunt laudēs suās mulieribus vīri Rōmānī. Liv. The men of Rome did not begrudge the women the honors that were due them.

Invidet igne rogī miserīs. Lucan. Begrudges the hapless men the funeral fire.

Vacāre reī to be at leisure for 

Vacāre rē, ā rē, to be at leisure from

DATIVE WITH VERBS OF GIVING AND PUTTING.

348. A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

Dōno tībi librum, I present (to) you a book.

Dōno tē librō, I present you with a book.

Circumdo urbi mūrum, I put round the city a wall. 

urbeī mūrō, I surround the city with a wall.

So also aspergere, to besprinkle and to sprinkle on; impertire, to endow
and to give; induere, to clothe and to put on; exuere, to strip of and to strip off; miscere, to mix and to mix in.

**DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.**

349. *Esse, to be,* with the Dative, denotes an inner connection between its subject and the Dative, and is commonly translated by the verb *to have:*

Mihi est amicus, *I have a friend.*

An nescis longas regibus esse manus? *Ov. Or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms?*

Remarks.—1. The predicate of *esse* with the Dative is translated in the ordinary manner:

Caesar amicus est mihi, *Caesar is a friend to me (amicus meus, my friend, friend of mine).*

2. The Dative is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. The Dative is the Person interested in the Possession, hence the Possession is emphatic; the Genitive characterizes the Possession by the Possessor, hence the Possessor is emphatic.

Latin concedunt Romam caput Latium esse. *Liv. The Latins concede that Latium has its capital in Rome. (Latii: that Latium's capital was Rome.)*

3. On the attraction of the Dative with nomen esse (322).

4. The possession of qualities is expressed by in and the Ablative or some other turn:

In Cicerone magna fuit eloquentia, Cicero had great eloquence.

Cimon habebat satis eloquentiae. *Nep. Cimon had eloquence enough.*

**DATIVE OF THE OBJECT FOR WHICH.**

350. Certain verbs take the Dative of the Object for Which (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the Personal Object For Whom, or To Whom, as in the legal phrase, cui bono? *To whom is it (for) an advantage? = who is advantaged?**

Nimia fiducia magnae calamitati solet esse. *Nep. Excessive confidence is usually a great calamity.*

Virtus sola neque datur dono neque accipitur. *Sall. Virtue alone is neither given nor taken as a present.*

Paupertas probr haberi coepit. *Sall. Poverty began to be held (as) a disgrace.*


Viti mihi dant quod hominis necessarii mortem graviter fero.

* Such verbs are: *esse, to be; fieri, to become, to turn out; dare, to put; mittere, to send; accipere, to receive; venire, to come; relinquire, to leave; habere, to hold; vertere, to interpret; ducere, to count, and the like.*
They charge it to me as a fault that I resent the murder of one so near to me.

Caesar receptui canī jussit. Caes. Caesar ordered a retreat to be sounded.

REMARK.—The origin of this usage seems to be mercantile (Key). In English we treat profit and Loss as persons.

Quem fors diērum cumque dabit lucrō appōne. Hor. “Every day that Fate will give, set down to Profit.”

On the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive in a similar sense, see 430.

ETHICAL DATIYE.

351. The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use in Latin (and Old English) is confined to the personal pronouns.

Tū mihi Antōniī exemplō istius audāciam dēfendis? Cic. Do you defend me (to my face) by Antony’s example that fellow’s audacity?

Ecce tibi Sēbōsus! Cic. Here’s your Sebōsus! “She’s a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss you morning nor evening prayer.”—Shakespeare.

Et quōscunque meō fecisti nōmine versūs, ūre mihi, laudēs dēsina labēre meās. Prop. And whatever verses you have made on my account, turn them me (I beg); cease to keep praises of me.

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is sībi velle, to want, to mean: Quid tībi vīs, nulīr? Hor. What do you want, woman? Quid sībi vult haec ōrātiō? What does this speech mean?

DATIYE OF THE AGENT.

352. The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result. That the person interested is the agent is only an inference. (See 206.)

Rēs mihi tōta prōvīsa est. Cic. I have had the whole matter provided for.

Carmina scripta mihi sunt nulla. Ov. I have no poems written, (therefore) have written no poems.

REMARK.—Instances of this Dative with the Tenses of continuance are poetical, or admit of a different explanation:

Barbarus hic ego sum quia nōn intellegor ullī. Ov. I am a barbarian here because I can’t make myself understood to any one.

Whenever an Adjective or an equivalent is used, the Dative Plural may be an Ablative:

Sic dissimilimīs bestiōlīs communītēs cibus quaequiritur. Cic. So, though these little creatures are so very unlike, their food is sought in common.
Carmina quae scribuntur aquae pōtōribus. Hor. *Poems which are written when people are water-drinkers.*
Cena ministratur puerīs tribus. Hor. *Dinner is served, (the waiters being) the waiters are (but) three.*

353. The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative.

**Hoc mihi faciendum est,** *I have this to be done (this is to be done by me, I must do this).*

**Est mala sed cūncīs ista terenda via.** Prop. *That is a bad road, but one all have to travel.*

**Dēspēranda tībi salvā concordia socrū.** Juv. *You must despair of harmony while Mother-in-law's alive.*

Compare the Dative with verbals in *-bilis:* *mihi amābilis, lovable in my eyes.*

**Remark.—** When the verb itself takes the Dative, the Ablative with *ab* (ā) is employed for the sake of clearness:

**Civibus ā vōbis consulendum.** Cic. *The interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.*

Where there is no ambiguity there is no need of *ab.*

**Linguae moderandum est tībi.** Plaut. *You must put bounds to your tongue.*

**DATIVE OF PARTICIPLES.**

354. Datives of Participles are used as predicative attributes.

**Phaselis conspicitur prima terrārum Rhodum ā Ciliciā petentibus.** Liv. *Phaselis is the first land sighted as you make for Rhodes from Cilicia (to people as they make for Rhodes).*

**In ūniversum aestimānti (= ū aestimēs) plūs penes pedītem rōboris.** Tac. *If you look at it as a whole, there is more real strength in the infantry.*

**Remark.—** Notice the Greekish phrase: *mihi volenti est, I am willing for it to be so.*

**DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE SUBSTANTIVES.**

355. A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives:

**Jūstitia est obtemperātiō lēgibus.** Cic. *Justice is obedience to the laws.*

**Remark.—** Otherwise the Dative must have a verb to produce the Object Effected.

**DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.**

356. Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative:
Rāra avis in terris nigrōque simillima cyconō. Juv. A rare bird in this world, and very like a black swan.

Nōn ego sum laudān nātus idoneus armīs. Prop. I am not fitted by nature for glory, not fitted for arms.

Utiūlis urbi. Hor. Useful to the city.

A mīca lūtō sūs. Hor. A hog, devoted to the mire.

Semper, tu scīto, flamma fūmō est proxima. Plaut. Bear thou in mind, that fire is aye next door to smoke.

Testis id dicit quod illī causae maxime est aliēnum. Cic. The witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side).

Remarks.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class become substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive: amicus, friend; affinis, connection; aequālis, contemporary; aliēnus, foreign, strange; cognātus, kinsman; communīs, common; contrārius, opposite; pār, match; proprius, peculiaris, own, peculiar; similīs, like; (“we ne’er shall look upon his like again”), especially of gods and men; sacer, set apart, sacred; superstes, survivor.

Domīni similīs es. Ter. You are like your master.

Virūte sis pār dispār fortūnis patris. Attius. Be thou thy father’s match in valor, not in luck.

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Accusative with in, ergā, adversus:
Manlius fuit sevērus in filium. Cic. Manlius was severe toward his son.

Mē esse scīt ergā sē benevolūm. Plaut. He knows that I am kindly disposed toward him.

Adversus deōs immortālēs impīl jūdicandī sunt. Cic. They are to be judged impious toward the immortal gods.

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Accusative with ad, to:

This is the more common construction with adjectives of fitness.

4. Propior, nearer, proximus, next, are construed also (like prope, near) with the Accusative and the Ablative with ab, off:
Propius est fidem, it is nearer belief, i.e., more likely.

Quī tē proximus est, he who is next in you.

Proximus ā tectīs ignis defēnditur aegrē. Ov. A fire next door is kept off with difficulty (is hard to keep off).

5. Aliēnus, foreign, strange, is also construed with the Ablative, with or without ab (ā):
Homō sum hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum puto. Ter. I am a man, and nothing that pertains to man do I consider foreign to me.

6. In poetry, idem, the same, is often construed after the analogy of the Greek, with the Dative.
Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti. Hor. (296, R. 1.)

7. Derived adverbs take the Dative.

II. INTERNAL CHANGE.

Genitive.

357. The Genitive Case is the Case of the Complement, and is akin to the Adjective with which it is often parallel. It is the substantive form of the Specific Characteristic.
The chief English representatives of the Genitive are:
The Possessive case:
**Domus régis**, *the king's palace.*
The Objective case with **of**:
**Domus régis**, *the palace of the king.*
Substantives used as adjectives or in composition:
**Arbor abietis**, *fir-tree.*

Remarks.—1. Other prepositions than **of** are not unfrequently used, especially with the Objective Genitive. (361, R. 1.)

**Patriae quis exsul sē quoque fūgit?** Hor. *What exile from his country ever fled himself as well?*

**Boiōrum triumphī spem collēgae relīquit.** Liv. *He left the hope of a triumph over the Boii to his colleague.*

**Via mortis.** Liv. *The death-path, the way to death.* Elsewhere: **via a d mortem.**

2. An abstract Noun with the Genitive is often to be translated as an attribute:

**Vernī temporis suāvitās**, *the sweet spring-time.*
And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract noun with **of**:

**Ante Rōmam conditam**, *before the founding of Rome.* (324, R. 3.)
Notice also **hic metus**, *this fear = fear of this,* and kindred expressions.

358. The Genitive is employed:
I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Nouns Substantive and Adjective.
III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

Remark.—The Locative of the Second Declension coincides in form with the Genitive, and is generally treated under the head of the Genitive. (See 412.)

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

ADNOMINAL GENITIVE.

Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.

359. The Genitive is sometimes used to specify the contents of generic words instead of Apposition in the same case:

**Vitium nimiae tarditātis.** Quint. *The fault of excessive slowness.*

So especially with **vōx**, *expression; nōmen, name; verbum, word, verb: vōx voluptātis, the word "pleasure," nōmen rēgis, the name or title of king.***

**Sulla nōmen Fēlicis assumpsit.** Vell. *Sulla assumed the surname (of) "the Lucky."*
Remark.—So also occasionally other words, such as:
Urbs Rōmae, the city of Rome.
Arbor abietis, fir-tree.
Spētæ inúria formae. Verg. The insult of despised beauty.

POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.

Genitive of Property.

360. The Possessive Genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel:

Domus rēgis = domus rēgia, the palace of the king, the king's palace = the royal palace.

Remarks.—1. The adjective form is often preferred. So always with the possessive pronoun: amicus meus, a friend of mine; canis aliēnus, a strange dog, another man's dog; filius herilis, master's son. So of cities: Thales Milēsius, Thales of Miletus.
2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take. Statua Myrōnis, Myron's statue, may mean: 1. A statue which Myron owns; 2. Which Myron has made; 3. Which represents Myron.
3. Observe the brief expressions: Ventum erat ad Vestae, We (they) had come to Vesta's (i.e., temple, aedem); Hasdrubal Gisgōnis. Gisgo's Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal Gisgo's son (as it were, Hasdrubal O'Gisgo); Flaccus Claudiī, Claudius's Flaccus = Flaccus the slave or freedman of Claudius.
4. The chorographic (geographic) Genitive is rare and late:

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE GENITIVE.

361. When the Substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action, the possession may be active or passive. Hence the division into

1. The Active or Subjective Genitive: amor Dei, the love of God, the love which God feels (God loves).
2. Passive or Objective Genitive: amor Dei, love of God, love toward God (God is loved).

Remarks.—1. The English form in of is used either actively or passively: the love of women. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than of are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as for, toward, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin: Voluntās prōvinciās ergā Caesarem, the good-will of the province toward Caesar.
Odium in hominum ūniversalum genus, Hate toward all mankind.
2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same Substantive:
Quanta sit aviditās hominum tālis victoriāe scio. Cic. How great the eagerness of men for such a victory is, I know.

362. The Genitive of the Personal Pronouns, except nōstrum and vestrum, is used as the Passive Genitive:
Amor meī, *love to me.*
Dēsiderium tui, *longing for thee.*
Memoria nostri, *memory of us (our memory).*

**Remark.**—Nostrum and vestrum are used as Partitive Genitives:
Magna pars nostrum, *a great part of us; uterque vestrum, either (both) of you.*
Nostri melior pars means *the better part of our being, our better part.*
With omnium, the forms nostrum and vestrum must be used.

363. The Possessive Pronoun is generally used as the Active Genitive.

Amor meus, *my love (the love which I feel).*
Dēsiderium tuum, *your longing (the longing which you feel).*

Additional attributives are put in the Genitive:

Hoc negotium meā ipsius (sōlius, ūnīus) operā perfectum est. *This business was finished by my exertions alone.*

**Remark.**—Occasionally, however, in Latin, as in English, the Possessive Pronoun is used passively: *dēsiderium tuum, longing for thee; injūria tua, your wrong (“The deep damnation of his taking off”).*

### GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

364. The Genitive of Quality must always have an Adjective or its equivalent:

Mitis ingenii juvenis. *A youth of mild disposition.*
Homo nihilī (= nullīus pretīi). *A fellow of no account.*
Trīduī via. *A three days’ journey.*
Nōn multī cibī hospitem accipīēs, multī joci. *You will receive a guest who is a small eater but a great joker.*

**Remark.**—The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being found chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (402.)

### GENITIVE AS A PREDICATE.

365. The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates:

Domus est rēgis, *the house is the king’s.*
Vir est magnī ingenii, *the man is (one) of great genius.*

**Remarks.**—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations:
Hūjus erō vivus. mortuus hūjus erō. *Hers I shall be, living; dead, hers I shall be.*
Omnia quae mulieris fuërunt virfi flunt. Cic. All that was the wife's (property) becomes the husband's.

Is [Hercules] dicingat esse Myrōnis. Cic. That (statue of Hercules) was said to be Myron's (work).

Nōiae senátus Rōmānorum, plēbs Hannibalis erat. Liv. At Nola the senate was on the side of the Romans, the common folk (on) Hannibal's.

Damnōto est jūdicium, paenae légis, Condemning is the judges' (business), punishment the law's.

Est animi ingenui cui multum débeäs eidem plurimum velle débère. Cic. It shows the feeling of a gentleman to be willing to owe very much to him to whom you already owe much.

Pauperis est numerāre pecus. 'Tis only the poor man that counts his flock ('Tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock).

Stultitiae est, it is folly; Mōris est, it is customary.

So also with facere, to make (cause to be): Rōmānæ dicōnis facere, to bring under he Roman sway.

2. In the Third Declension of the Adjective, the Genitive is the usual form:

Amentis est superstitiōne praeceptōrum contrā rationem causae trahī. Quint. It is madness to let oneself be carried by a superstitious regard for rules counter to his requirements of the case.

Sometimes the Nom. of the Third Declension is used in combination with the Nom. of the Second.

Pigrum et iners vidētur sūdōre adquirere quod possis sanguine parāre. Tac. It is thought slow and spiritless to acquire by sweat what you can get by blood.

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate "Vengeance is mine": meum est, it is my property, business, way.

Non est meum mentiri. Ter. Lying is not my way (I do not lie).

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

366. The Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs:

Magna vis militum, a great number of soldiers.
Centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers.
It militum, those (of the) soldiers.

Fortissimī militum, the bravest (of the) soldiers.
Satis militum, enough (of) soldiers (soldiers enough).

367. The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight:

Modius tritici, a measure of wheat.
Libra farris, a pound of spelt.
Āla equitum, a squadron of cavalry.

Remark.—This is sometimes called the Genitivus Generis. Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

Medimum tritici, a medimum of wheat may be a medimum of wheat (Genitivus Generis) or a medimum of wheat (Partitive).

368. The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals, both special and general:
Special:
Centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.
(Centum militēs, a, the hundred soldiers.)
Quintus rēgum, the fifth (of the) king(s).
(Quintus rēx, the fifth king.)

General:
Multi militum, many of the soldiers, many soldiers.
(Multi militēs, many soldiers.)

Remarks.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic:
Quot civium adsunt? How many citizens are present? Quot cīvēs adsunt?
2. When all are embraced, there is no partition:
Nōs trecentī conjurāvimus, three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath.
Amicos quōs multōs habet, friends whom he has in great number (of whom he has many).
Qui omnēs, all of whom.
Quot estis? How many are (there of) you?
Here the English language familiarly employs the partition. Exceptions are very rare.
On mille and millia see 308.

369. The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns:
Iī militum, those (of the) soldiers.
Iī militēs, those soldiers.
Iī Graecōrum, those (of the) Greeks.

370. The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives:
Prior hōrum, Līv. The former of these.
Rēgum ultimus ille bonōrum, Juv. The last of the good kings.

Remarks.—1. When there are only two, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison. (315.)
2. Uterque, either (both), is commonly used as an adjective with substantives: uterque consul, either consul = both consuls; as a substantive with pronouns: uterque hōrum, both of these.
3. On the concord of the Superlative see 202, R. 2.

371. The Partitive Genitive is used with the Neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative:

tantum, so much, quantum, as (how much), aliquidum, somewhat.
multum, much, plus, more, plurimum, most.
pauulum, little, minus, less, minimum, least.
satis, enough, parum, too little, nihil, nothing.
hoc, this, id, illud, istud, that, idem, the same.
quod and quid, which and what? with their compounds.
Carnis plus habet Aeschinēs, minus lacertūrum. QUINT. Aeschinēs as more flesh, less muscle.

Cimos habēbat satis eloquentiae. NER. (349, R. 4.)

Surgit amāri aliquid, quod in ipsīs flōribus angat. LUCR. Uprise something bitter to choke us mid the very flowers.

Nihil reliqui facere. 1. To leave nothing (not a thing). 2. (Occasionally), leave nothing undone.

REMARKS.—1. The conception is often not so much partitive as characteristic. As we say: Scelus puerī es. PLACT. You are a rascal of a boy—where the boy is the rascal. Quodcumque hoc regni. VERG. This realm, what (little) there is of it (what little I have).

2. Neuter Adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the partitive; not so Adjectives of the Third, except in combination with Adjectives of the second: aliquid bonum, or boni, something good; aliquid memorabile, something memorable; aliquid boni et memorabile, something good and memorable.

Vixque tenet lacrimās quia nīllacrimābile cernit. OV. And scarce restrains r tears, because she describes nought to shed tears for.

3. The partitive construction is not admissible with a preposition: ad tantum sūm, to so much zeal. (Exceptions are late: ad multum diēl, far into the day.)

4. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent: ar-ōrum affatim, abundance of arms; ubi terrārum, gentium? where in the world? etc. The Gaul challenges one of the Romans; īnus dē multis. one of many (the masses); Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus. Croesus, wealthiest of ages; (but in a series: quōrum ĕnus, alter, tertius.)

5. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and partitives, the Ablative may be employed with ex. out of. dé. from (especially with proper names and singulars), or the Accusative with inter, among; Gallus prōvocat ūnum ex Rōmānis. The Gaul challenges one of the Romans; īnus dē multis. one of many (the masses); Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus. Croesus, wealthiest of ages; (but in a series: quōrum ĕnus, alter, tertius.)

6. On the Attribute used partitively, see 237, R.

7. Qualitative Adjectives are combined with the Genitive in later Latin: Dēgenerēs canum caudam sub alvum flectunt. PLIN. Currish dogs curl the tail under the belly.

In poetry and silver prose the Neuter of Qualitative Adjectives is frequently used before the Genitive:

Ardua dum metuunt āmittunt vēra viāl. (37, R. 1.) LUCR. The while they fear steeper road, they miss the true.

So amāra cūrārum, bitter elements of cares, bitter cares; strāta viārum. strātæae, the paved streets.

8. The Partitive Genitive as a Predicate is Greekish: Fīēs nōbilium tū quoque fontium. HOR. Thou too shalt count among the famous fountains.

GENITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONAL SUBSTANTIVES.

372. Causā, grātiā, ergō, and instar, are construed with the genitive:

Causā and grātiā, for the sake, commonly follow the Genitive. So also
ergō, on account (in old formulae). Instar is an old Accusative, as it were, an “instead.”

Sophistae quae stās causā philosophābantur. Cic. The professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain.

Tū me a mōris magis quam honōris servāvisti grātiā. ENN. Thou didst save me more for love’s (sake) than (thou didst) for honor’s sake.

Virtūtis ergō, On account of valor.

Instar montis equus. Verg. A horse to stand in mountain’s stead (a horse that stood a mountain high).

Plato mihi ānus instar est omnium. Cic. Plato by himself is in my eyes worth them all.

Remark.—Somēa, tua, suā causā, seldom grātiā.

II. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

373. Adjectives of Fulness, of Participation, and of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive:

Plēnus rimārum, full of chinks (“a leaky vessel”).
Particeps consilii, a sharer in the plan.
Compos mentis, in possession of (one’s) mind.
Peritus belli, versed in war.
Cupidus gloriae, grasping after glory.
Fastidiosus Latinārum litterārum, too dainty for Latin.
Omnium rerum inscius, a universal ignoramus.
Cūr non ut plēnus vitae conviva recēdīs? Lucr. (268.)
Sitque memor nōstrī necne, refere mihi. Ov. (195, R. 7.)
Conscia mens rectī Pāmae mendācia rīsit. Ov. (329, R. 1.)
Agricolam laudat jūris lēgumque peritus. Hor. The husbandman’s (lot) is praised by the counsel learned in the law.

Vēnātor tenerae conjugi immemor. Hor. The hunter of his tender spouse unmindful.

Vis consili expers mole ruīt suā. Hor. Force void of counsel tumbles by its own mass.

Mentis inops gelidā formidīne lūra remīsit. Ov. Senseless from chill fear, he let go the reins.

Remarks.—1. The following adjectives—refertus, stuffed; praeditus, endowed contentus, satisfied; frētus, supported—show their participial nature by being construed with the Ablative:

Vīta referta bonīs, a life filled to overflowing with blessings.
Membris hūmānis esse praeditum, to be endowed with human limbs.
Frētus opulentīa, trusting in wealth.
Uxor contenta est quae bona est ūnō virō. Plaut. A wife who is good is contented with one husband.
2. Plénus, full, sometimes takes the Ablative:
Maxima quaeque domus servís est pléná superbís. Juv. Every great house is
led with overbearing slaves.

3. Dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy, are construed with the Ablative:
Digne puer melióre flammá. Hor. Boy worthy of a better flame.
Vitá tua dignior aetás. Verg. Your age is worthier of life.
The Genitive is rare.

4. Liber, free, and vacuus, empty, take the Ablative with or without ab (א) (388):
Liberum (vacuum) esse metū (א metū), to be free from (void of) fear.

5. On aliénus, strange, see 356, R. 5.
On aequélis, communís, conscius, contrárius, pár, similis, superstes, and the
to, see 356, R. 1.

6. Verbs of Filling sometimes follow the analogy of plénus, full, and take the Geni-
On egére and indigére with the Gen., see 389, R. 2.
The poems carry the analogy of Plenty and Want very far.

Solútus operum. Hor. Loose of (released from) work.
Thus the Genitive in poetry comes near the Ablative or Whence case:
Désine mollium tandem queréslárum. Hor. Cease at last from womanish com-
inings.

GENITIVE WITH VERBALS.

374. Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose
their verbal nature; and so do verbs in -áx in poetry and later
case:
Epaminónndás adeó vēritātis erat díligéns ut nē jocó quidem
entírétur. Nep. Epaminondas was so careful of the truth as not to tell lies
in jest.

Omnium consensu capáx imperií nisi imperásset. Tac. By general
sent capable of empire, had he not become emperor.

Remarks.—1. The participle is transient; the adjective permanent. The simple test
the substitution of the relative and the verb: amans (participle), loving (who is love-
r); amans (adjective), fond, (substantive), lover; patiens (part.), bearing (who is bear-
(388)

2. In later Latin and in the poets almost all adjectives that denote an affection of the
nd take a Genitive of the Thing to which the affection refers: aeger timóris, sick of
r; ambigüus consilií, doubtful of purpose; vitae dubius, doubtful of life.
Here model prose requires the Ablative or a Preposition.
The analogy of these adjectives is followed by others, so that the Genitive becomes a
plement to the adjective just as it is to the corresponding substantive.

Integer vitae. Hor. Spotless of life; like Integritás vitae. (Fámá et fortunís
teger, Sall. In fame and fortunes intact.)

3. The seat of the feeling is also put in the Genitive, chiefly with animi (which is
pected of being a Locative). Aeger animi, sick at heart, heartsick; andáx ingenii,
ing of disposition.
III.—GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF MEMORY.

375. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive:

Tē veteris amīcitiae commonēfacio. [Cic.] I remind you of our old friendship.

Est proprium stultitiae aliōrum vitia cernere, oblīvisci suōrum. Cic. The fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one’s own.


Remarks.—1. Verbs of Reminding also take the Ablative with dē (so regularly moneo), and the Acc. Neut. of a Pronoun or Numeral Adjective:

ōro ut Terentiam moneātis dē testamentō. Cic. I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will.

Discipulōs id ūnum moneo. Quint. (331, R. 2.)

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Accusative, especially of things:

Haec ōlim memīnisse jǔvābit. Verg. To remember these things one day will give us pleasure.

Dulcēs moriens reminiscitur Argōs. Verg. Dying, he remembers sweet Argos.

Oblīvisci nihil solēs nisi injūriās. Cic. You are wont to forget nothing except injuries.

Recordor (literally = I bring to heart, to mind) is commonly construed with the Acc. and personally with a subject:

Memīnī, I bear in mind, I (am old enough to) remember, takes the Accusative:

Antipatrum tū probē memīnisti. Cic. You remember Antipater very well.

3. Venit mihi in mentem, it comes into (up to) my mind, may be construed impersonally with the Genitive, or personally with a subject:

Venit mihi in mentem Platōnis. Cic. (or Plato.) Plato rises before my mind’s eye.

Certiorum alīquem facere, to inform, follows the analogy of Verbs of Reminding.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

376. Misereor and miseresco, I pity, take the Genitive, and miseret, it moves to pity, paenitet, it repents, piget, it irks, pudet, it makes ashamed, taedet and pertaesum est, it tires, take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause:

Miserēre sorōris. Verg. Pity thy sister!

Suae quemque fortūnae paenitet. Cic. Each man is discontented with his lot.
Miseret tē aliōrum, tuī tē nec miseret nec pudet. Plaut. You are sorry for others, for yourself you are neither sorry nor ashamed.

Pudet is also used with the Genitive of the Person whose Presence excites the shame:

Pudet deōrum hominumque. Liv. It is a shame in the sight of gods and men.

Remark.—These Impersonals can also have a subject, chiefly a Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun:

Nōn tē haec pudet? Ter. Do not these things put you to the blush?

Other constructions follow from general rules:

Nōn mē paenitet vixisse. Ctc. (540.)

Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit. Ctc. Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.

GENITIVE WITH JUDICIAL VERBS.

377. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge:

Miltiades accusātus est prōditiōnis. Nep. Miltiades was accused of treason.

Cannensem exercitum quis pavōris insimulāre potest? Liv. Who can charge the army of Cannae with craven fear?

Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnāre, Cupido. Ov. Be slow to condemn thy bard of crime, O Cupid!

Absolvere improbitātīs, to acquit of dishonesty.

So also kindred expressions: reum facere, (to make a party) to indict, to bring an action against; sacrilegifī compulsūtum esse, to be found (guilty) of sacrilege.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Ablative as well as the Genitive of the Charge and the Punishment, and always the Ablative of the Fine:

Accūsāre capitis, or capite, to bring a capital charge.

Damnāre capitis, or capite, to condemn to death.

Damnāri decem milibus, to be fined 10,000.

Multāre, to mulct, is always construed with the Ablative:

Multāre pecūnīā, to mulct in (of) money.

Manlius virtūtem filīī morte multāvit. Quint. Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.

2. Most verbs belonging to this class take also instead of the Genitive the Ablative with dē: accusāre dē vi, of violence (no Genitive); dē venēficiō, of poisoning; dē rebus repetundās, of extortion.

3. Destination and Enforced Labor are expressed by ad or in: damnāri ad bestiās, to be condemned (to be thrown) to wild beasts; ad (in) metalla, to the mines; ad (in) opus publicum, to hard labor. Vōti damnāri, to be bound to fulfil a vow.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF RATING AND BUYING.

378. Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the
Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (404.)

Verbs of Rating are: aestimāre, to value; putāre, to reckon; dūcere, to take; habēre, to hold; pendere, to weigh; facere, to make, put; esse, to be (worth).

Verbs of Buying are: emere, to buy; vēndere, to sell; vēnire, to be for sale; stāre and constāre, to cost, to come to; prōstāre, licēre, to be exposed, left (for sale); condūcere, to hire; locāre, to let.

379. Verbs of Rating take:

| Magni, much, | pluris, more, | plūrimī, maximī, most. |
| Parvi, little, | minōris, less, | minimī, least. |
| Tanti, so much, | quantī, how much, | nihilī, naught. |

Equivalents of nihilī, nothing, are flocci, a lock of wool, naucī, a trifle, assis, a copper, and the like, and so also hūjus, that (a snap of the finger), with the negative, which is omitted only in the earlier times. Tanti is often used in the sense of operae pretium est = it is worth while.

Dum nē ob malefacta peream p a r v i [id] aestimo. Plaut. So long as I be not killed for my misdeeds little do I care.

Voluptātem virtūs minimī facit. Cic. Virtue makes little account of the pleasure of the senses.

Judicēs rempūblicam flocci nōn faciunt. Cic. The judges do not care a fig for the State.

Nōn habeo naucī Marsum augurem. Ennius. I do not value a Marsian augur a baubee.

Est mihi tantī hūjus invidiae tempestātem subīre. Cic. It is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium.

380. Verbs of Buying take tantī, quantī, pluris, and minōris. The rest are put in the Ablative:

Vendo meum frūmentum nōn pluris quam cēterī, fortasse etiam minōris. Cic. I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper.

Magis illa juvant quae pluris emuntur. Juv. Things give more pleasure which are bought for more.

Ēmit Canius hortōs tantī quantī Pythius voluit. Cic. Canius bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.

Quantī cēnas? What do you give for your dinner?
Quantī habitās? What is the rent of your lodgings?
But:

P a r v ō famēs cōnstat, m a g n ō fastidium. Sen. Hunger costs little, daintiness much.
Remarks.—1. Aestimo is found with the Ablative as well as with the Genitive. So aestimāre m ā g n ā and m ā g n i. to value highly.

2. Observe the phrases: bonī (aequi bonīque) facio, bonī cōnsulo, I put up with, take in good part.

3. Bene emere, to buy cheap; bene vēndere, to sell dear; male emere, to buy dear; male vēndere, to sell cheap.

GENITIVE WITH INTEREST AND RĒFERT.

381. Interest and Rēfert take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

Clōdiī interest. Cic. It is Clodius's interest.

Rēfert composiōnīs quae quibus antepōnās. Quint. It is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.

Instead of the Genitive of the Possessive Pronouns the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessives is employed:

Meā interest, meā rēfert, I am concerned.

Remarks.—1. Rēfert is commonly used absolutely, occasionally with meā, etc., seldom with the Genitive.

2. Instead of Apposition use the Relative:

Vehementer intererat vestrā, quī patrēs estis, līberōs vestrōs hic potissimum dicere. Plin. Ep. It was vastly to the interest of you parents, that your children, if possible, were taught at home.

3. No satisfactory explanation has been given of this construction. Meā seems to be an adverbial form like quā, hāc, eā. (Madvig.)

382. 1. The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Value:

Multum (nihil) interest. It makes much (no) difference.

Quid interest? What difference does it make?

Magnī interest meā ūnā nōs esse Cic. It is of great importance to me that we be together.

2. The Object of Concern is commonly put in the Infinitive, Accusative and Infinitive, ut or nē, with the Subjunctive, or an Interrogative Sentence.

Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdiūm? Cic. What interest had Milo in Clodius' being killed.

Caesar dicere solēbat nōn tam suā quam rēpūblīcae interesse ut salvus esset. Suet. Caesar used to say that it was not of so much importance to him(self) as to the State that his life should be spared.

Vestrā interest nē imperātōrem pessimi faciant. Tac. It is to your interest that the dregs of creation do not make the emperor.
Quid réfert tālēs versūs quā vōce iegantur. Juv. What matters it what voice such verses are recited with?

Occasionally by the Nominative of a Neuter Pronoun:
Quid (Acc.) tuā id (Nom.) réfert? Tēr. What business is that of yours?

3. The Thing Involved is put in the Acc. with ad:
Magnī ad honōrem nōstrum interest quam prīnum nōs ad urbem venire. Cic. It makes a great difference touching our honor that we should come to the city as soon as possible.

ABLATIVE.

383. The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements:
A. Where? B. Whence? C. Wherewith?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with Prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without Prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.
B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as:
   1. The Ablative of Origin.
   2. The Ablative of Measure.
C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as:
   1. The Ablative of Manner.
   2. The Ablative of Quality.
   3. The Ablative of Means.

Remark.—It is impossible to draw the line of demarcation with absolute exactness. So the Ablative of Cause may be derived from any of the three fundamental significations of the case, which is evidently a composite one.

To these we add:
D. The Ablative of Cause:
E. The Ablative Absolute.

I. THE LITERAL MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

A ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE.

Ablātīvus locālis.

384. The Ablative answers the question Where? and takes a rule the preposition IN:
In portũ nāvigo. Ter. I am sailing in harbor.

Pons in Hibērō prope effectus erat. Caes. The bridge over the Ebro was nearly finished.

Histrio in scēnā est. Plaut. The actor is on the stage.

Haeret in equō senex. Cic. The old man sticks to his horse.

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Ablative with in, to designate the result of the motion: pōnere, to place; collocāre, to put; statuere, constituerē, to set; considere, to settle; dēfigere, to plant; dēmergere, to plunge; imprimere, to press upon; inscribēre, to write upon; incidere, to carve upon.

Plato rationēm in capite posuit. fram in pectore locāvit. Cic. Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast.

Lūcretia cultrim in corde dēfigit. Liv. Lucretia plants a knife in (thrusts a knife down into) her heart.

Philosophī in ipsis libris quōs scribunt dē contemnendā gloriā sua nōmina inscribunt. Cic. Philosophers write their own names on (the titles of) the very books which they write about contempt of glory.

Index inciduntur in aēnēs tabulis. Suet. An index is engraved on tablets of bronze.

The same observation applies to sub:

Pōne sub currũ nimium propinquī sōlis in terrā domibus negātā. Hor. Put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun, in a land denied to dwellings.

So humī, which is a Where-case: humī prōsternere, to throw flat on the ground.

2. The poets are free in omitting in, but regard must be had to 387.

3. On the Locative Ablative of Towns and Small Islands, see 412.

385. In citations from books and in enumerations, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without in:

Librō tertiō, third book; versu decimō, tenth verse; aliō locō, elsewhere.

REMARK.—Locus, place, used metaphorically, generally omits in: hoc locō, in this position, situation; in hoc locō (or hoc locō), in this place, part of the country. Librō is used when the whole book, in librō, when merely a passage in the book, is devoted to the subject in hand.

386. In designations of place with totūs, whole, and the like, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without in:

Menippus disertissimus totā Asiā fuit. Menippus was the most eloquent man in all Asia (Minor).

Battiades totō semper cantābitur orce. Ov. Battiades (Callimachus) will always be sung throughout the world.

387. In all such Designations of Place as may be regarded in the light of Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition:

Ut terrā Thermopylārum angustiae Graeciam ita mari fretum Eurīpī claudit. Liv. As the pass of Thermopylae bars Greece by land, so the frith of Euripus by sea.
Nemo ire quenquam publica prohibit via. Plaut. No man forbiddeth (any one to) travel by the public road.
Mātris cinerēs Tiberī subvectī sunt. Suet. His mother's ashes were brought up by the Tiber.
Imperātor militēs (in) castrīs tenēbat (intrā castra). Caes. The general kept the soldiers in camp.
Recipere aliquem tectō, oppidō, portū. To receive a man into one's house, town, harbor.

B. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENCE.

Ablātīvus Sēparātīvus.

388. The Ablative answers the question Whence? with or without the prepositions ex, out of, de, from, ab, off:

Arāneās dējiciam dē pariete. Plaut. I will get the cobwebs down from the wall.
Nōn ex eō locō sed ab eō locō mē dējēcit. Cic. It was not out of that place, but from that place that he dislodged me.

The prepositions are omitted chiefly with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding, but with Persons a preposition (chiefly ab) must be used.

Aliēnō manūs abstineat. Cato. Let him keep his hands from other people's property. But:
Alexander vīx ā sē manūs abstinuit. Cic. Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself).

Populus Athēniensis Phōcīonem patriā pepulit. Nep. The Athenian people drove Phocion from his country. But:
Illum aemulum ab eā pellīto. Ter. Drive that rival from her.
Multōs fortūna liberat paenā, metū nēminem. Sen. Fortune rides many of punishment, none of fear. But:
Tē ab eō lēbēro. Cic. I rid you of him.

Amicitia nullo locō exclūditur. Cic. Friendship is shut out from no place. But:
Ab illā exclūdor, hūc conclūdor. Ter. I am shut out from her (and) shut up here (to this, to live with her).

Hannibal ex Italiā dēcēdēre coactus est. Cic. Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy.
Crēde mihi, mōrēs distant ā carmine nostrō. Ov. Believe me, for my conduct differs from my song.

Cōnsulēs sē abdicānt magistrātū. Cic. The consuls abdicate their office.

So also kindred Adjectives:

**Animus excelsus omnī est liber cūrā. Cic.** A lofty mind is free from all care.

Cato, omnibus hūmānīs vitīs immūnīs, semper fortūnam in suā potestāte habuit. Vell. Cato, exempt from all human failings, always had fortune in his own power.

Remarks.—1. Compounds with di (dis) also take the Dative (in poetry):

Paullum sepultae distat inertiae cēlāta virtūs. Hor. Little doth hidden worth differ from buried sloth.

2. The Place Whence gives the point of view from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: ā tergo, in the rear; ex parte dextrā, on the right side; ab oriente, on the east; ā tantō spatiō, at such a distance; ex fugā, on the flight; ā re frūmentāriā labōrāre, to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions.

3. The poets are free in the use of the Ablative as a Whence-case without a preposition. On the difference of conception between Dative and Ablative, see 344, R. 2. On the Genitive, see 373, R. 6.

4. On the Ablative as a Whence-case in Names of Towns and Small Islands, see 411.

389. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative:

Democritus dicitur oculis sē privāsse. Cic. Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes.

Deus bonis omnibus explēvit mundum. Cic. God has filled the universe with all blessings.

Abundant dulcibus vitīs. Quint. They abound in charming faults.

Nōn caret effectū quod voluēre duō. Ov. What two have resolved on never lacks execution.

Amor vacat metū. Ov. Love is void of fear.

Sapiens eget nullā rē. Sen. The sage stands in need of nothing.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Filling are commonly referred to the Instrumental Ablative rather than to the Ablative of the Source, and are put here for convenience of contrast. But observe that in the classic tongues the construction of opposites is identical.

2. Egeo and (more frequently) indīgeo also take the Genitive.

Nōn tam artīs indigent quam labōris. Cic. They are not so much in need of skill as of industry.

3. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Genitive, but some of them follow the analogy of the verb (373, R. 1):


Pollicitās dives quilibet esse potest. Ov. Anybody can be rich in promises.

Amor et molle et felle est fēcundissimus. Plaut. Love is very fruitful both in honey and in gall (of acrimony).
ABLATIVE.

390. Opus and Úsus take the Dative of the Person who Wants and the Ablative of the Thing Wanted; but the Thing Wanted may be the subject and opus the predicate:

Opus est mihi librō, libris, I want a book, books.
Liber mihi opus est, a book is a want to me (is what I want).
Libri mihi opus sunt, books are a want to me (are what I want).
Quid opus est speculō tibi? Plaut. What do you want to do with a mirror?

Emās nōn quod opus est sed quod necesse est; quod nōn opus est asse cārum est. Cato. Buy not what you want, but what is absolutely needful; what you do not want (have no use for) is dear at a penny.

So with the Perfect Participle Passive:

Quod paratō opus est parā. Ter. What must be got ready, get ready.
Vicinō opus est conventō. Plaut. The neighbor must be called on.
Úsus est pecuniā or pecuniā. Plaut. Money is wanted (is, would be (246, R. 1) useful).
Nōn factō est Úsus. Plaut. It were better let alone.

Remark.—This construction belongs to the Instrumental, and is put here for convenience of reference:

Opus est, there is work to be done with.
Úsus est, there is making use of (like útor, 405).
The Genitive is of rare occurrence. Other constructions are the Infinitive and ut.
The Neuter Accusative is often adverbial (331, R. 3):

Quid (Acc.) digitōs opus est graphiō lassāre tenendō? Ov. What is the use of tiring the fingers by holding the stilus?

Opus est tē animō valēre ut corpore possīs. Cic. You must be well in mind in order to be well in body.

An cuiquam est Úsus hominī sē ut crucīet? Ter. Of what good is it to any man to torture himself?

C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablātīvus Sociātīvus.

391. The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition cum, with:

Cum baculō pērāque senex. Mart. An old man with stick and wallet.
Nec tēcum possum vivere nec sine tē. Mart. I can't live either with you or without you.

Remarks.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without cum; generally without cum when an adjective is used (Ablative of Manner), with cum when no adjective is used (Ablative of Attendance):
Rēx Helleśpontum cum exercitū transit, The king crossed the Hellespont with an army.
Dictator (cum) ingenti exercitu ab urbe profectus est. The dictator set out from the city with a great army.

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative:

Nāvibus proficiscī, to set out by ship.

So also with verbs which denote other military actions:

Hostes sagittāriīs et funditōribus terrebat, he was frightening the enemy with archers and slingers.


Nil actum est nisi Poenō milite portās frangimus. Juv. Naught is accomplished unless we break the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).

II.—THE FIGURATIVE MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

Ablative of Time.

392. Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

Quā nocte nātus est Alexander eādem Dānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. Cic. On the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burnt to the ground.

Satūrni stella trigintā ferē annis suum conficit. Cic. The planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.

Many adverbial forms of time are really locative ablatives:

So hodie, to-day; heri(e), yesterday; māne, in the morning.

Remarks.—1. Time within which may be expressed by per and the accusative:

Per eōs ipsōs dīēs quibus Philippus in Achaīa fuit. Philōclēs saltum Cithae-rōnis transcendent. Liv. During those very days, while Philip was in Achaia, Philoctes crossed the range of Cithaeron.

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities; so with tōtus, all, whole:

Tōtā nocte pluit. redeunt spectācula māne. Verg. All night (Jupiter) rains; back come the shows in the morning.

So with definite numbers (chiefly later):

Apud Pythagoram discipulis quinque annis erat tacendum. Sen. In the school of Pythagoras the disciples had to keep silence five years.

3. When the Notion is Negative the English Time For Which is the Latin Within Which:

Quadriennīō (or per quadriennium) nōn militāvit. Liv. For four years he did not serve as a soldier (during, at any time within, four years).

4. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of Time with hīc, this; ille, that:

Ego ad tē his duōbus mensibus nōn scripseram (244). Cic. I have not written to you these two months (at any time within the last two months).

Hanc urbem hōc biennīō ēvertēs. Cic. This city you will overturn in the next two years.

Transferred to Ὑπάτω Obliqua, hīc becomes ille (663, 3):

Diodorus respondit illud argentum sē panis illis diēbus misisse Lilybaeum. Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lilybaeum within a few days (a few days before).
393. The Ablative with the preposition in is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time:

**Bis in diē, twice a day; in pueritiā, in boyhood; in adulescentiā, in youth.**

Nullō modō mihi placuit bis in diē saturum fieri. CIC. *It did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day.*

Sometimes, however, bis diē, as diēs = ānus diēs.

Fēci ego istaeq itidem in adulescentiā. Plaut. *I did those things too in my youth.*

In may be omitted, chiefly with an adjective or in phrases:

**Prīmā pueritiā, in early boyhood; illō tempore, at that time; in illō tempore, in those circumstances, at that crisis; in tempore or tempore = at the right time; bellō Persicō, at the time of the Persian war; in bellō, in war times; in pāce, in peace times.**

**Remark.**—De is also used in designations of time:

Ut jugulent hominēs surgunt dē nocte latrōnēs. Hor. *To kill people, highwaymen rise by night, i.e., while it is yet night.*

Inter, between: *Quot prandia inter continuum perdidi triennium.* Plaut. *How many luncheons I have lost during three years together!*

Intrā, within: *Subēgit solūs intrā viginti diēs.* Plaut. *He quelled them all alone in less than twenty days.*

On per, through, see 337, R.

Cum, with; *cum prīmā lūce, with daybreak.*

394. **B. The Place Whence is transferred:**

1. To Origin; 2. To Measure.

1. Ablative of Origin.

395. Participles which designate Birth take the Ablative of Origin, with or without the Prepositions ex and dē:

**Tanaquil summō locō nāta.** Liv. *Tanaquil born (by birth) of high degree.*

Numae Pompilii rēgis nepōs, filiā ortus, Ancus Marcius erat. Liv. *King Numa Pompilius’s grandson, a daughter’s son, was Ancus Marcius.*

Maecēnās atavis ēdite rēgibus. Hor. *Maecenas, offshoot of great-grand sire kings.*

**Dis genite et geniture deōs.** Verg. *Begotten of gods and destined to beget gods!*

Sate sanguine divūm! Verg. *Seed of blood divine!*

Ex mē atque hoc nātus es. Ter. *You are his son and mine.*

Odērunt nātōs dē pellice. Juv. *They hate the offspring of the concubine*
Ab is employed of remote progenitors:

Plērique Belgae sunt orti ab Germānīs. Caes. Belgians are mostly of German descent.

396. The Ablative of Material commonly takes ex: constāre, to consist, sometimes omits the preposition:

Animō constāmus et corpore, constāmus ex animō et corpore. Cic. We consist of mind and body.

Medicina tōta constat experimentīs. Quint. All medicine is made up of experiments (is empirical).

But: Statua ex aurō, ex aere, facta, a statue made of gold, of bronze. Often an adjective is used: aureus, golden, ligneus, wooden.

REMARKS.—1. A remnant of the old usage is found with fio and facio:
Quid fācisti scipiōne? What have you done with the wand?
Quid mē fiet? What will become of me?
Quid mē futūrum est? What is to become of me?
Quid faciēs hōc homine? How will you dispose of this man?
Hui cum homini? What will you do to this man? Dē hōc homine, in this man's case.
Fiēs dē rhētore consul. Juv. From (having been) rhetorician you will become consul.

2. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late:
Meliōre lutō finxit. Juv. He fashioned him of better clay.

2. Ablative of Measure.

397. The Ablative gives the Point from which a thing is measured or treated: Ablative of Measure or Reference.

398. The Ablative is put in answer to the questions From What Point of View? According to What? By What? In Respect of What?

Magnōs homīnēs virtūte mētīmūr, nōn fortūnā. Nep. We measure great men by worth, not by fortune.
Sonīs homīnēs dignōscimus ut aera tinnītū. Quint. We distinguish men by sound as coppers by ring.
Dēscriptus erat populus Rōmānus censū, ordinibus, aetātibus. Cic. The people of Rome was drawn off according to income, rank, (and) age.
Ennīus ingeniō maximus arte rudis. Ov. Ennīus in genius great, in art unskilled.

Crīne ruber, red-haired; captus oculis (literally, caught in the eyes),
Remarks.—1. Prepositions are also used, which serve to show the conception: Caesaris adventus ex colore vestītūs cognitus est. Caes. The arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing.

Dē gestū intelligō quid respondeās. Cic. I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving.

Ex lēge, according to law; ex pactō, according to agreement; ex (dé) mōre, according to custom: ex animī sententīā, according to (my) heart’s desire; ex usū, useful.

Ab animō aeger ful. Plaut. At heart I was sick.

Ōtīōsum esse ab animō. Ter. To be easy in mind.

2. Dignus (distinguished), worthy, and indignus, unworthy, are most conveniently referred to this head. (Examples, see 373, R. 3.)

So also dignor, I deem worthy.

399. The Ablative of Measure is used with the Comparative instead of quam, than, with the Nominative or Accusative:

Tunica propior pallīō. Prov. The skirt is nearer than the cloak.

Phīdiae simulācrīs (= quam simulācrα) cōgitāre possimus pulchriōra. Cic. We can imagine more beautiful things than the statues of Phidias.

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose:

Nēmo est qui tibi sapientius suādēre possit tē ipsō. Cic. There is no one who can give you wiser advice than you yourself.

Pulchrum ornātum turpēs mōrēs pējus caenō collinunt. Plaut. Foul behavior doth bedraggle fine apparel worse than mud.

Remarks.—1. The comparative is also employed with the Ablative of certain abstract substantives and adjectives used as substantives:

Consul sērīus spē (= quam spēs fuerat) Rōmam vēnit. Liv. The consul came to Rome later than was hoped.

Amnis solītō cītātor. Liv. The river running faster than usual.

2. Alius, other than, with the Ablative, is poetic.

400. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative:

Turrēs dēnīs pedibus quam mūrus altīōrēs sunt. Curt. The towers are by ten feet higher than the wall.

Tantō est accūsāre quam dēfendere quantō facere quam sānāre vulnēra facilius. Quint. It is as much easier to accuse than to defend as it is easier to inflict wounds than to cure them.

Perfer et obdūrā: multō graviōra tulistī. Ov. Endure to the end and be firm: you have borne much more grievous burdens.

Quōque minor spēs est, hōc magis ille cupit. Ov. And the less his hope, the greater his desire.

Remarks.—1. This rule applies to verbs involving difference as well as to comparatives:

Aesculāpiī templum quīnque millībus passuum ab urbe Epidaurō dīstāt. Liv. The temple of Aesculapius is five miles from the city of Epidaurus.

2. The Accusative is sometimes employed. (See 335.)
3. Especially to be noted is the use of the Ablative of Measure with ante, before, and post, after:

Paucis ante diebus, Paucis diebus ante. a few days before.
Paucis post diebus, Paucis diebus post, a few days after, afterward.
Duobus annis postquam Róma condita est, Two years after Rome was founded.
Paulo post Trójam captam. A little while after the taking of Troy.

The Accusative can also be employed: post paucós annós, after a few years; ante paucós annós, a few years before; and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers: two hundred years after(ward) may be:

Ducentis annis post or Ducentésimó annó post,
Post ducentós annós " Post ducentésimum annum.

Ante hós sex mensēs, six months ago (comp. 392, R. 2), more frequently abhine sex mensēs: abhínex sex mensibus, means six months before (Madvig).

With a relative sentence the Ablative may be used alone:
Rosci mors quattuó quó est occísus est, Chrysogonó nūntiátur. Cic. The death of Roscius was announced to Chrysogonus four days after he was killed (in the course of the four days within which he was killed). See 392.

Hence is ad: ad sex mensēs, six months hence.

C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablātīvus sociātīvus. Ablative of Attendance.

1. Ablative of Manner.

401. The Ablative of Manner answers the question How? and is used with the Preposition cum when it has no Adjective; with or without cum when it has an Adjective:

Miltiadeīs summā aequitāte rēs constituit Chersonēsi. Nep. Miltiades settled the affairs of the Chersonese with the greatest fairness.

Nōn facile est aequā commoda mentē patī. Ov. It is not easy to bear good fortune with an even temper.

Cum cūrā scribere, to write with care.
Magnā cūrā,
Cum magnā cūrā, \{ with great care.
Magnā cum cūrā,

Remark.—Several Ablatives are used adverbially without an Adjective or Preposition: ordine, in an orderly manner; silentiō, silently; cāsū, by chance, accidentally; viā et ratīōne, methodically; dolō, frāude, fraudulently. It is sometimes hard to distinguish between the Manner and the Instrument: vi, violently and by violence; vi et armis, by force of arms; pedibus, afoot; nāvibus, by ship. Notice, also, the use of per, through, with the Accusative: per vim, by violence; per litterās, by letter.

2. Ablative of Quality.

(Descriptive Ablative.)

402. The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent:
Agésiláus statūrā fuit humilī. NEP. Agésiláus was (a man) of low stature.
Cato singulārī fuit prūdentīā et industriā. NEP. Cato was (a man) of unique foresight and energy.
Ista turpīculō puella nāsō. CAT. That girl of yours with the ugly nose.
Clāvi ferreī digitī pollicis crassītūdine. CAES. Iron nails of the thickness of your thumb.

Remarks.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; Measure, Number, Time, and Space, are put in the Genitive only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.
2. Of unnatural productions *cum* may be used: *agnus* *cum suillō* *capite*. Liv. A lamb with a swine’s head.

3. Ablative of Means.

403. The Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition ab (ā):

The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with per:

Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est, Pyrrhus was killed by a stone.
Pyrrhus ā muliere interfectus est, Pyrrhus was killed by a woman.
Pyrrhus ā muliere lapide interfectus est, Pyrrhus was killed by a woman with a stone.

Xerxēs certior factus est, Xerxes was informed,
1. nūntiō, by a message.
2. ā nūntiō, by a messenger.
3. per nūntium, by means of a messenger.

Nec bene prōmeritis capitur neque tangitur īrā. Lucr. (218, R. 3.
Ipse docet quid agam: fās est et ab hōs tē docēri. Ov. (210.)
Discite sānāri per quem didicistis amāre. Ov. Learn to be healed by means of (him by) whom you learned to love.

Remarks.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed; when an Adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful, 352, R.
So *jacent* suis testibus. Cic. They are cast by their own witnesses; or, they are cast, their own men being witnesses.
2. Especially worthy of note under this head are *assuesco* and *assuēfacio*: *assuētu* labōre, accustomed to toil, familiar with toil (the Dative is more rare); *doctus Graeci* litterīs, learned in Greek; and the various words for sacrifice:
Quinquāgintā caprīs sacrificāvērunt. Liv. They sacrificed fifty she-goats.
Afficere, to treat, with the Ablative, is a favorite term; see the Lexicons.
3. Nitor, *I stay myself*, is construed with the Ablative, with or without *in*: *Hastīnīxus*, leaning on a spear (stayed by a spear).
ABLATIVE.


Notice also stāre, with the Abl.: stāre condicionibus, to abide by the terms.


404. Definite Price is put in the Ablative:

Vigintī talentīs unam orātiōnem Isocrātēs vēndidit. Plin. Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents.

Ēmit morte immortālitātem. Quint. He purchased deathlessness with death.

Nīmium rīsūs pretium est sī probitātīs impenidiō constat. Quint. The price of a laugh is too high, if it costs the outlay of a man's uprightness.

Argentum accēpī; dōte imperium vēndidī. Plaut. The cash I took; (and) for a dowry sold my sway.

Remark.—Mūtāre, to exchange, is sometimes Give, sometimes Get; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy:

Pāx misera vel bellō bene mūtātur. Tac. A wretched peace is well exchanged even for war.

Dūrus quī potuit lucrō mūtāre puellam. Prop. Hard (is the soul of the) man who could sell his sweetheart for lucre.

Cūr vallle permūtēm Sabīnā divitīās operōsiōrēs. Hor. Why should I exchange my Sabine vale for riches sure to breed (me) greater trouble?

5. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

405. The Deponent Verbs Ītōr, Abūtōr, Fruor, Fungōr, Potiōr, and Vescōr, take the Ablative:

Victōriā ūtī nēscīs. Liv. How to make use of victory you know not.

Quōsusque tandem abūtāre patientiā nostrā. Cic. How long, tell me, will you abuse our patience?

Lūx quā fruimur ā Deō nōbis datur. Cic. The light which we enjoy is given to us by God.

Fungōr vice cōtīs. Hor. I discharge the office of a whetstone.

Tūtius esse arbitrābantur sine ullō vulnere victōriā potiōrī. Caes. They thought it safer to make themselves masters of the victory without any wound.

Numidae lacte vescēbantur. Sall. The Numidians made their food of milk (fed on milk).

Remarks.—1. These Ablatives are commonly regarded as Ablatives of the Instrument: but fruor, I get fruit, and vescōr, I feed myself from (ves-co-r), and perhaps fungōr seem to take the Ablative as a Whence-case. In older Latin they are sometimes combined with the Accusative. Hence they have a Gerundive:

Jūstītia dicet tē esse injūstum quem graviter feras tē quod ētendum acce-
peris reddidisse. Cic. Justice will say that you are unjust since you resent having restored what you have received (but) to use.

2. Úti is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation:
   Úti aliquo amicō, to avail oneself of (to enjoy) a man's friendship (to have a friend in him).
   Úti consiliō, to follow advice; Úti bonō patre, to have the advantage of having a good father; Úti lēgibus, to obey the laws. See the Lexicons.

3. Vivo is construed like vescor: aliēnā misericordiā vivō, I live on the charity of others.
   Potior, I possess myself, sometimes takes the Genitive; always potiri rērum, to possess the supreme power.

D. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

406. The Ablative of Cause may be referred to so many classes, that it is most convenient to regard it as a class by itself.

407. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion:

Castor gaudet equīs. Hor. Castor rejoices in horses.
Quidam vitīs suis glōriantur. Sen. Some make a boast of their vices.
Pecūniā fidens nōn dubitābat. Nep. Trusting in his money, he had no doubts.

In culpā sunt qui officia dēserunt mollitiā animī. Cic. They are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper.
Odērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre. Hor. The good hate to sin from a love of virtue.

So also jussū cīvium, at the bidding of the citizens; meō rogātū, at my request, and other verbal Ablatives. On causā and grātiā, for the sake of see 372.

Remarks.—1. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Ablative adductus, led; ardēns, fired; commōtus, stirred up; incitātus, egged on; incensus, inflamed; impulsus, driven on; irā, by anger; odio, by hate; metū, from fear; metī, perterrītus, sore frightened; propter metum, on account of, (by reason of) fear.
   2. The preventing cause is expressed by prae, for:
   Prae gaudīō ubi sim nōscio. Ter. I know not where I am for joy.

E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

408. The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicat of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

Remark.—This Ablative, which may be called the Ablative of Circumstance, spring from the Temporal Use of the Ablative—the Temporal from the Local.
409. The Ablative Absolute may be translated by the English Objective Absolute, which is a close equivalent: but for purposes of style, it is often well to analyze the thought, to change Passive into Active, to make use of an abstract noun.

**Xerxe regnante ( = Quum Xerxes regnaret ), Xerxes reigning.** When Xerxes was reigning. *In the reign of Xerxes.*

**Xerxe victō ( = Quum Xerxes victus esset ), Xerxes being, having been, defeated.** When Xerxes had been defeated. *After the defeat of Xerxes.*

**Xerxe rēgę ( = Quum Xerxes rēx esset ), Xerxes [being] king.** When Xerxes was king.

Patre vivō, while father is, was alive (in father’s lifetime).

Maximās virtūtēs jacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte domi-

lānte. Cic. All the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if (or when) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.

Rōmāni veterēs regnāri omnēs volēbant libertātis dulcēdine

frondum experta. Liv. The old Romans all wished to have a king over

hem (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.

Urbe expugnātā imperātor rediit:

Passive Form : The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.

Active Form : Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.

Abstract Form : After the taking of the city. *After taking the city.*

Remarks.—1. As the Latin language has no Perf. Part. Active, except the Deponent, which is thus used, the Passive construction is far more common than in English:

“Tunc juvenēs veste positā corpora oleō perunxērunt.” Cic. Then the youths, having laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil; or, laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.

2. The Ablative Absolute, though often to be rendered by a co-ordinate sentence, for convenience’ sake, always presents a subordinate conception:

“Lysander suādet Lacedaemoniīs ut régia potestāte dissolūtā ex omnibus dux
dīligātūr ad bellum gerendum.” Nep. Lysander advises the Lacedaemonians that the royal power be done away with, and a leader be chosen from all, to conduct the war. Here the one is necessary to the other.

3. As a rule, the Ablative Absolute can stand only when it is not identical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace,* is to be rendered: *Manlius caesum Gallum torque
spoliavit.*

The rule is most frequently violated when the dependent case is in the Genitive:

“Jugurtha frātre meō interfecit regnum ē jus sceleris sui praedam fecit.” Sall. Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.

4. On the Ablative of the simple participle, see 438, R. 2.

410. Names of Towns and Small Islands.

Names of Towns AND Small Islands. In the Accusative of the Place Whither.
So also *rus, into the country, domum, domós, home.*

*Legáti Athénás missí sunt.* Liv. *Envoys were sent to Athens.*


*Laelius et Scipio rús évolábant.* Cic. *Laelius and Scipio used to hurry out into the country.*

**Innumerábiles philosophí nunquam dōmum revertére.** Cic. *Innumerable philosophers never returned home.*

So verbals: *domum reeditus, a return home.*

**Remarks.**—1. *Domum, house,* with a possessive pronoun, or Genitive, may or may not have *in* before it: *domum mean or in domum mean, to my house; domum Pompejī or in domum Pompejī, to Pompey’s house; also domum ad Pompejum.* Otherwise: *in magníficam domum veníre, to come into a grand house.*

2. When *urbem, city,* or *oppidum, town,* precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition *in* or *ad* is prefixed; if *urbem* or *oppidum* follows, *in* or *ad* may be omitted: *in (ad) oppidum Cirtam, to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta.*

*Jugurtha Thalam pervénit in oppidum magnum et opulentum. Sall.* *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.*

3. *Ad means to the neighborhood of, often before, of military operations. Ad Muti nam, to the neighborhood (sieve of) Mutina (Modena).*

4. Observe that there must be *motion,* not merely *extent,* which requires a preposition: *A Salónis ad Óricum portús.* *Caes.* *The harbors from Salonae to Oricus.*

5. *Motion To a Place embraces all the local designations: Phalaris in sinum Maliacum prōcesserant. Liv. They had advanced to Phalaris on the Maliac Gulf.*

*Tarentum in Italian inferiōrem proficisci, to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy.*

411. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put—In the Ablative of the Place Whence:

*Dēmarātus fúgit Tarquiniiós Corinthó. Liv.* *Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth.*

*Dolábella Délo proficiscitur.* Cic. *Dolabella sets out from Delos.*

So also *domō, from home; humō, from the ground; rūre, from the earth.*

**Remarks.**—1. The prepositions *ab (ā) and ex (ē) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness. So regularly ab with the Place from which distance is measured: Aesculápiī templum quinque milibus passuum ab urbe Epidaurō distat. Liv. (400, R. 1.)

When the common nouns *urbe, city,* and *oppidō, town,* are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule:

*Aulide. ex oppidō Boeótiae, from Aulis, a town of Boeotia.*

*Ex Apollóniā Pontī urbe, from Apollonia, a city of Pontus.*

*Ex oppidō Gergoviā, from the town of Gergovia.*

2. The Place Whence embraces all the local designations:

*Agrigentō ex Aesculápiī fānō, whereas we should say, from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum.*

*Unde domō? Verq. From what home?*

3. Letters are dated *from rather than at a place.*

4. The poets are free in using the Ablative as a Whence-case.
412. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put In the Locative of the Place Where.

The Locative coincides in the Singular with the Genitive of the Second Declension, with the Dative of the First and Third. In the Plural, Dative, Locative, and Ablative coincide, and the Ablative is blended with the Locative in Syntax and in the Third Declension, often in form. (See 23, R. 1.)

Locative  S. 1. Rōmae (Rōmāi)  Pl. 1. Athēnīs
2. Corinthī
3. Sulmōnī(e)

Ut Rōmae consulēs sic Karthāginī (Carthāgīne) quotannis bīnī rēgēs creābantur. Nep. As at Rome (two) consults, so in Carthage two kings, were created yearly.

Artemisīa nōbile fēcit Halicarnassī sepulcrum. Cic. Artemisia built a famous sepulchre at Halicarnassus.

Tarquinius Superbus mortuus est Cūmīs. Liv. Tarquin the Over-bearing died at Cumea.


REMARKS.—1. Other locative forms are, domī, at home, (Genitive, domūs) humī, on the ground, and also bellī and militiae, in combination with domī:

Parvi sunt forīs arma nīsī est consilium domī. Cic. Of little value are arms broad unless there is wisdom at home.

Humī jaceō, to lie on the ground.
Humī prosternere, to throw flat on the ground.
Domī militiaeæque, bellī domīque, in peace and in war, in war and in peace, at home and in the field.

Rūri, in the country, is also generally considered a locative form (but rure meō, on my arm).

On animī, see 374, R. 3.

2. Appositions are put in the Ablative commonly with in:

Militēs Albae constitērunt in urbe opportūnā, the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town.

Archīās Antiochīae nātus est celebrī quondam urbe, Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.

Neāpolī in celebrīmō oppidō, at Naples, a very populous town—in the populous, celebrated town of Naples.

When urbe, city, oppidō, town, or insulā, island, precedes, the preposition is always employed:

In urbe Rōmā, in the city (of) Rome.
In oppidō Neāpolī, in the town of Naples.
In insulā Samō, in the island (of) Samos.

3. Domī takes the Possessive Pronoun in the Genitive:

Marcus Drūsus occīsus est domī suae, M. Drusus was killed at his own house. Also domī aliēnāe, in a strange house.

Metuīs ut domī meae cūrētur diligenter. Ter. You fear that she will not be carefully nursed in my house; otherwise, in domō castā, in a pure house.

In domō Periclis, in the house (hold) of Pericles.
In domō, in the house (not, at home).
413. The Prepositions are local adverbs, which serve to define more narrowly the local ideas of the cases. The only cases that convey local ideas are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation *whither?* the Ablative represents the relations *whence?* and *where?

**Remarks.**—1. In Verbs of Motion, the result of the motion is often considered as a Rest in a place (where):

- **Pónere in locō,** *to put in a place.*
- **Habēre in potentātem,** *to have (got) in (to) one’s power.*
- **In carcerem asservāre,** *to keep in jail.*
  3. Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called *proper prepositions.* The prefixes *amb- (am- an-), dis (di), red- (re-) sēd- (sē-)* and *vi* are sometimes called *inseparable prepositions.*

414. **Position of the Preposition.** The Preposition generally precedes the case.

**Remarks.**—1. **Versus,** *-ward,* and **tenus,** *as far as,* are postpositive, and so is *cum with,* in combination with the Personal Pronouns and Relative:

- **Mēcum,** *with me.*
- **Nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sīne te. Mart.** (391.)
- **Sēcum,** *with oneself.*
- **Quōcum (also quīcum,)* with whom (likewise, *cum quō).*
- **Quībuscum, with whom, wherewith (also, cum quibus).*
  2. Other prepositions are postponed chiefly after the relative: **quem contrā,** *again whom; quōs inter, among whom; quō dē, from whom.*
  3. Poets and affected writers are very free in putting the Preposition after its case.

415. The Preposition is often put between the Attribute and the Case:

- **Magnō cum metū,** *with great fear.*

Whereas the Genitive and other forms of the Attribute and connecting particles are often put between the Preposition and its case:

- **Post vērō Sullae victōriam,** *but after Sulla’s victory.*

**Remark.**—Especially to be noted is the position of *per, through (by), in adjuration.*

- **Lydiō dīc per omnēs Tē deōs ērō,* *Hor. Lydiō, tell, by all the gods, I pray thee.*
416. Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.—With different words which stand in the same connection, the Preposition is repeated, when the Preposition is emphatic, or the individual words are to be distinguished; so always after et—et, nec—nec: et ex urbe et ex agris, both from (the) city and from (the) country. Otherwise it is omitted; so always with que.

Clodius à Milone candidato jugulatus est. VELL. Clodius was killed by Milo, a candidate for the consulship.

Cimōn in eandem invidiam incidit (in) quam pater suus. NEP. (296). Discite sānāri per quem (= per eum per quem) didicistis amāre. Ov. 403).

Remark.—Several Prepositions, such as contra, on the other hand, extrā, outside, nīrā, below, suprā, above, ultrā, beyond, are used also as adverbs without a case:

Hōnōrōs intrā sēcūrōs pecēcārūt et extrā. Hor. Inside the walls of Ilīum sin is wrought, and outside (too).

Otherwise two Prepositions cannot be used with one case: For and against Scipio, Prō Scipionē et adversus Scipionēm. Before and after the battle, ante pugnam et post eam.

I.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

417. Prepositions construed with the Accusative are:

ante, apud,
circum, circā,
ergā, contrā,
infrā, intrā,
penes, pōne,
prope, propter,
suprā, versus,
ad, ad,
inter, citrā,
juxtā, ob,
post and praeter,
per, secundum,
ultrā, trans.

Remarks.—1. To these we may add clam. unknown to. hidden from (cēl-o, oc-cul-o) which is commonly used as an adverb secretly and according to some MSS. is construed with the Ablative as well as with the Accusative.

2. The detailed consideration of the Prepositions belongs to the Dictionary.

Ad, at, to (comp. ad-do, I put to), up to—opposed to Ab.

Adversus, [turned to], towards,

Adversum, over against, against.

Ante [over against, facing], before (most frequently of time).

Apud (chiefly of persons), at, near, in the presence of (official), with (French, chez), at the house of; in the view of.

Circum, } around, about.

Circā, }

Circiter, about (seldom of place, sometimes of time, chiefly with numerals).

Cis, } this side, short of, correlative

Citrā, } of ultrā.

Contrā (= cum + tra), opposite to, over against, opposed to, against.

Ergā, opposite, towards, seldom of
II.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ABLATIVE.

418. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are:

Ā, ab, and abs, off, of, from, by (opposed to ad).

Before vowels and h, ab; before consonants, ā or ab; abs, used chiefly before te, thee.

Absque (off), without (antiquated).

Cōram, face to face with, in the presence of (accidental).

Cum, with.

Dē, down from, from, of = about.

Pōne, behind (rare).

Post, behind, after.

Prae, in front of, side by side with, for (preventive cause).

Pro, before, for.

Sine, without, opposed to cum.

Tenus (to the extent of), as far as (occasionally with the Genitive).

Remark.—In poetry and later prose palam, openly, takes the Ablative; procul, afar, follows the analogy of ab; simul, at the same time, that of cum.

III.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

419. Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACCUSATIVE</th>
<th>ABLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In, in,</td>
<td>in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub, under,</td>
<td>about (of time) [rarely]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Super, over,</td>
<td>over, above,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subter, under,</td>
<td>over and above,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>under, beneath,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>about (of time) [rarely]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>over [in prose rarely]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>under, beneath [rarely].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
420. The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb.

Remark.—The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive, in that it retains the adverbial attribute, the designations of voice and time, and the regimen of the verb:

*Amāre*, to love; *vaîdē amāre*, to love hugely; *amāri*, to be loved; *amāvisse*, to have ed; *amāre aliquem*, to love a man; *nocēre alicui*, to hurt a man.

But the great claim of the Infinitive to be considered a verb lies in the involution of predicate and subject. Like the finite verb, the Infinitive involves predicate and subject; the subject is indefinite and the predication is dependent.

421. The Infinitive, when it stands alone, involves an indefinite Accusative Subject, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

*Regem esse*, To be king.

*Bonum esse*, To be good.

So in the paradigm of the verb:

*Amāturum esse*, To be about to love.

Remark.—On the Nominative with the Infinitive by Attraction, see 528.

In consequence of this double nature, the Infinitive may be used as a substantive or as a verb.

422. The Infinitive, as a Noun, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. In the other cases its case is supplied by the Gerund and the Ablative Supine.

THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBJECT.

423. The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive:

*Errāre hūmānum est*. To err is human (that man should err is human), *Inciπere multō est quam impeπrāre facilius*. Plaut. Beginning is much easier (work) than winning.

*Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decōrum est*. Ov. (275.)

*Esse bonam facile est quem quod vetet esse remōtum est*. V. Be a good woman—'tis easy when what would prevent it is distant.

THE INFINITIVE AS AN OBJECT.

424. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Verbs of Creation, commonly known as Auxiliary Verbs.

These Verbs help the Infinitive into existence.
Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites:

Émorí cupió. Ter. I want to die.
Cato esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat. Sall. Cato preferred being (good) to seeming good.

Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser. Ov. And I pray that you may be more safely wretched.

Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoriā útī nē scīs. Liv. How to win victory, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not.
Qui morī didicit, servīre dēdidicīt. Sen. He who has learned to die has unlearned to be a slave.

Maledictīs dē tērē re nē scribat parat. Ter. He is preparing (trying) to frighten (him) from writing, by abuse.

So parātus, ready.
Qui mentirī solet, pējerāre consuēvit. Cic. He who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely.

Vulnera quae fēcit dēbuit ipse patī. Ov. The wounds he gave himself should himself have suffered.

Vereor tē laudāre praeentem. Cic. I feel a delicacy about praising you to your face.

Religionum animum nōdis exsolvēre pergo. Lucr. I go on to loose the spirit from the bonds of superstitious creeds.

Atque ut vivāmus vivēre dēsīnimus. Mart. And that we may live, we cease to live.

So habeo, I have (it in my power).

Tantum habeo pollicērī mē tibi cumulātē satisfactūrum. Cic. Much I can promise that I will give you abundant satisfaction.

Remarks.—1. Notice that coepī, I have begun, and désino, I cease, have Passive Perfects with Passive Infinitives:

Athēniensēs undique premī bellō sunt coepī. Nep. The Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides.

Veterēs orātiōnēs legi sunt désitae. Cic. The old speeches have ceased to be read.

When the Passives are really Reflexives or Neuter, the active forms may be used.

2. Verbs of Will and Desire take ut as well as the Inf. So regularly optō, I choose.

3. Verbs which denote Hope and Promise take the Accusative and Future Infinitive (occasionally as in English):

Spēro mē hoc adeptūrum esse, I hope to (that I shall) obtain this.
Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse, he kept promising that he would come (to come).
Doceo, I teach, jubeo, I bid, veto, I forbid, sīno, I let, take the Infinitive as a Seque Accusative:

Dionysīus nē collum tonsōrī committeret tōndē re filiās suās doceīt. Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave (that they might shave).

Ipse jubeat mortis tē meminisse Deus. Mart. (735.)
Vitae summa brevis spem nōs vetat incohāre longam. Hor. Life’s brief amount forbids us open (a) long (account with) hope.
Neu Mēdōs sinās equitāre inultŏs. Hor. Nor let the Median ride and ride un-punished.

4. Poetical Uses of the Infinitive: The poets use the Infinitive as an Object with great freedom:

1) After many verbs which are not auxiliary in Prose:
   Ardet ruere. Ov. He glows (he burns) to rush.
   Quid sit futūrum crās fuge quaerere. Hor. What will be to-morrow, fly the ques-

Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnāre, Cupīdō. Ov. (377.)

2) For the Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive, see 429, R. 4.

3) For the Accusative of the Gerundive:
   Quem virum aut hērōa lyrā vel ācri tībiā sūmēs celebrāre, Cliō? Hor. What man or hero wilt thou undertake to celebrate on harp or shrilly flute, O Cliō? (sūmēs celebrandum.)
   But dare is used with the Infinit. even in prose, in familiar phrases: dare bibere, to
   drink.

4) For ut, of purpose; ad with the Gerund, or Gerundive; or Supine:
   Tunc ego: nōn oculōs sed ventrem pascere vēni. Mart. Then I: I'm come to
   feed my belly, not my eyes.

   Semper in Oceanum mittit mē quaerere gemmēs. Prop. She is always
   sending me to the ocean to look for pearls.

5) For the Supine in -ū, ad with Gerund, or the like:
   Rōma capri facilis. Lucan. Rome is easy to be taken, to take (facile captur).

6) In fine, the Infinitive is often used because the word or phrase is considered an
   equivalent to a verb of creation. In all these points the Post-republican prose follows
   poetry more or less closely.

INFINITIVE AS A PREDICATE.

425. The Infinitive, as a verbal Substantive, may be used as a Predicat after the copula esse, to be, and the like:
   Doctō hominē et ēruditō vivere est cōgitāre. Cic. To a learned and
   cultivated man to live is to think.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

426. The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.

Remark.—Of course the Infinitive may be quoted as an abstract notion:
   Multum interest inter “dare” et “accipere.” Sen. There is a vast difference
   between “Give” and “Receive.”

Nom. Legere difficile est, reading (to read) is hard to do.
Gen. Ars legendi, the art of reading.
   Puer studiōsus est legendi, the boy is zealous of reading.
Dat. Puer operam dat legendo, the boy devotes himself to reading.
GERUNDIVE.

Acc. Puer cupit legere, the boy is desirous to read.
Puer propensus est ad legendum, the boy has a bent toward reading.

Abl. Puer discit legendo, the boy learns by reading.

427. As a verbal form, the Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

Studium obtemperandi legibus. Zeal for obedience to the laws.

Remarks.—1. The Gerund is the Substantive of the Gerundive. (243, R. 1.) The signification of necessity comes mainly from its use as a predicate. Verbal Nouns are Active or Passive according to the point of view. (Compare 361.) Worthy of note is the fact that the leading form of the Greek Active Infinitive is ultimately a Present Participle Passive.

2. Gerundive and Perfect Participle Passive are often translated alike; but in the one case the action is progressive or prospective, in the other it is completed.

Caesare interficiendō Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertātem restituere consu sunt. By the murder of Caesar (by murdering Caesar), Brutus and Cassius endeavored to restore their country's freedom to her.

Caesare interfectō Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertātem non restituērunt. By murdering Caesar, Brutus and Cassius did not restore their country's freedom to her.

428. Gerundive for Gerund.—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.

Gen. Plācandi Deī, of appeasing God.
Dat. Plācandō Deō, for appeasing God.
Abl. Plācandō Deō, by appeasing God.

In the model period this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

Ad plācandōs Deōs, for appeasing the gods.
In plācandīs Deīs, in appeasing the gods.

Remarks.—1. It is impossible to make a distinction between the Gerund and the Gerundive Form. They are often used side by side, where there can be no different Liv. xxi. 5; xxv. 40; xxviii. 37; xxx. 26. The preference for the Gerundive is of piece with the use of the Perf. Pass. Participle in preference to an Abstract Noun (357, R. 2.)

2. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns are not attracted: studium agendi aliqui desire of doing something; cupidītās plūra habendi, greed for having more. But when the Neuter Adjective has become a substantive (195, R. 2), the Gerundive form may be used: modus investigandī vērī, the method of investigating the truth.

3. The Gerundive can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, the Gerund from (213, R. 2). Hence the impersonal form must be used with all verbs that do not take an Accusative.

Valētūdīnī parcendum est, the health must be spared.

Exceptions.—Utendus, to be used; fruendus, to be enjoyed; potiendus, to be pressed; fungendus, to be discharged; vescendus, to be eaten (405); which, however,
GERUND.

219

used only * in the oblique cases. Further, medendus, to be healed; paenitendus, to be regretted.

Expetuntur divitiae ad perfruendās voluptātēs. Cic. Riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasures. But:

Utendum est aetāte, citō pede lābitur aetās. Ov. Life's season is to be enjoyed, wist-footed glides that season.

The Impersonal Nominative with the Accus. is rare and antiquated:

Aeternās quoniam paenas in morte timendum est. Lucr. Since we must fear eternal punishments in death.

GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

429. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement:

Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. Cic. Philosophy is to be considered the art of living.

Et propter vitam vivendi perdere causās. Juv. And on account of it, to lose the reasons for living.

Raucaque garrulītās studiumque immāne loquendī. Ov. And hoarse rattiness, and a monstrous love of talking.

Triste est ipsum nōmen carendī. Cic. Dismal is the mere word care" (go without).

Non est plācandi spēs mihi nulla Deī. Ov. I am not without hope of appeasing God.

Ignōrant cupidī maledicendī plūs invidiām quam convīcium posse. Uint. Those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate.

Titus equitandī perītissimus fuit. Suet. Titus was exceedingly skillful riding.

Neuter sūi prōtegendi corporis memor erat. Liv. Neither thought of yielding his own body.

Quī hic mōs obsidentī viās et viros aliēnōs appellandī? Liv. What sort of way is this of blocking up the streets and calling upon other women's husbands?

Summa elūdendī occāsio est mihi nunc senēs. Ter. I have a tip-top chance to fool the old folks now.

Remarks.—1. As meī. tuī, sūi, nōstrī, vestrī, are, in their origin, neuter singulars, in meum, my being; tuum, thy being; suum, one's being, etc., the Gerundive is put the same form: conservandī sūi, of preserving themselves; vestrī adhortandī, of adhorting you.

Copīa plācandī sit modo parva tuī. Ov. Let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you (feminine).

Similar constructions are also found with other words: exemplōrum elīgendī postās, power of choosing examples.

* In Cic. Fin. 1, 1, 3, fruenda (Nom.) is used for the sake of paranda.
Agitur utrum Antōniō facultās dētur agrōrum suīs latrōnibus condōnandī. Cic. The question is whether Antony shall be empowered to give away lands to his highwaymen.

2. Very common is causā (with the Gen. of Gerund and Gerundive), for the sake of; to express design: dolōrum effagiendōrum causā, for the sake of escaping sufferings; but sometimes the Genitive alone is used:

Lepidus arma cēpit libertātīs subvertendae. Sall. Lepidus took up arms as a matter of (for the purpose of) subverting freedom.

More commonly ad, rarely ob. See 433.

Esse with this Genitive may be translated by serve (in)

Omnia discrimina tālia concordiae minuendae sunt. Liv. All such distinctio

Comp. CAES. B. G. v. 8: Nāvēs quās sur quisque commodi fēcerat. Ships which

3. Tempus est. it is (high) time; consilium est, it is your (his) plan; and a few others, may be used with the Infinitive: Tempus abire tibi est, It is time for you to go away.

But when tempus is used in the sense of season ("a time to weep and a time to laugh"), the Gerund, or Gerundive, is retained:

Lysander tempus rei gerendae nōn dimisit. Nep. Lysander did not let the oppor

4. The poets are very free in the use of the Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund inasmuch as they construe the Adjective or Substantive like the Cognate Verb.

At) sécūra quīs et nēscīa fallēre (= quae nēsciat fallere) vita. Ve Quiet without a care, and a life that knows not how to disappoint (ignorant of this pointmen).

DATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

430. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is chiefly after words which imply capacity and adaptation:

Aqua nitrōsa utīlis est bibendō. Plin. Alkaline water is good drinking (to drink).

Lignum āridum māteria est idōnea ēliciendīs ignibus. Sen. Wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out sparks).

Referundae ego habeo linguam nātām grātiae. Plaut. I have a tongue that’s born for showing thankfulness.

Rarer is the Dative in combination with the Accusative.

Consul plācandis dis dat operam. Liv. The consul does his endeavors appease the gods.

Especially to be noticed is the Dative with esse, and in name of Boards:

Solvendō civitātēs nōn erant. Cic. The communities were not equals (ready for) payment (were not solvent).

Sapiens virēs suās nōvit, scit sē esse onerī ferendō. Sen. The man is acquainted with his own strength; he knows that he is (equal) to bearing the burden.
Decemviri légibus scribundís, Decemvirs for (charged with) drawing up laws.

Remark.—Later writers treat the Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive as if equivalent ad.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

431. The Gerundive is used in the Accusative of the Object be Effected, after such Verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving.

Divití homínì id aurum servandum dedit. Plaut. He gave that gold a rich man to keep.

Conón múrós reficiéndós cûrat. Nep. Conon has the walls rebuilt.

Patriam díripiéndam relinquímus. Cic. We leave our country to be plundered.

Carviliúlis aedem faciéndam locávit. Liv. Carvilius let the (contract of) building the temple.

Of course the Passive form has the Nominative:

Fílius Phílli pí Démétriús ad patrem redúcendús légátís datus est. v. The son of Philip, Demetrius, was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father.

ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

432. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as an Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative of manner or Circumstance.

Únus homó nóbís cunctándó restituit rem. Ennîus. One man by gering raised our cause again.

Céde repugnanti, cédendó victór abíbis. Ov. Yield to her when she insists; you’ll come off victor by yielding.

Quid digitós opus est graphiō lassâre tenéndō? Ov. (390, R.)

Exercéndō quotidiā milítē hostem oppériēbātur. Liv. Drilling the diers daily he waited for the enemy.

Occasionally with the Comparative.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

433. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions ad and inter, seldom ante, cerca, in, ob.

Nulla rēs tantum ad diésendum prōficit quantum scriptiō. Cic. Nothing is as profitable for speaking as writing.
Atticus philosophorum praeceptis ad vitam agendam non ad osten-
tationem. Atticus made use of the precepts of philosophers for the conduct of life, not for display.

Inter spoliandum corpus hostis exspiravit. While in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up the ghost.

434. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions ab, de, ex, often in, seldom cum and pró, and seldom never.

Prohibenda maximē est IRA in pūniendō. Especially to be forbidden is anger in punishing.

Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfactus. Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country.

Philosophā in its ipsīs librīs quōs scribunt dē contemnendā glōriā suā nōmina inscribunt. Usu.

Ex descendō capimus voluptātem. We receive pleasure from learning.

SUPINE.

435. The Supine is a Verbal Noun, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

THE ACCUSATIVE SUPINE.

436. The Accusative Supine (Supine in -um) is used chiefly after Verbs of Motion:

Galli gallināceī cum sōle eunt cubitum. Cocks go to roost at sunset.

Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae. They come to see the show, they come to be themselves a show.

Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs. 'Tis foolishness to take unruly dogs a-hunting.

Hostis est uxōr invītā quae ad virum nuptum datur. The wife is invited who goes to the bridegroom.

Remarks.—1. The Accusative Supine may take an object, but the construction is not very common:

Hannibal patriam dēfensum (more usual: ad dēfendendam patriam) revocāvit. Hannibal was recalled to defend his country.

2. Especially common is the us·e of the Supine after the verb ire, to go:

Cūr té is perātum? Why are you going to ruin yourself?

Turpissimi virī bonōrum præmia ēreptum eunt. The scoundrels are going to take away by force the rewards of the better classes.

The Future Infinitive Passive is actually made up of the Passive Infinitive of ire, go, iri, and the Supine:
PARTICIPLE.

437. The Ablative Supine (Supine in -ū) is used chiefly withjectives, as the Ablative of the Point of View From Which:

Mirabile dictū, Wonderful in the telling to tell, visū, to behold.
Hoc dictū quam rē facilius est. Liv. This is easier in the saying than the fact (easier said than done).

Remarks.—1. The use of the Ablative Supine is confined to a few verbs, chiefly:
cētū, to tell; factū, to do; audītū, to hear; visū, to see; cognītū, to know. Authors very much. The adjectives generally denote Ease or Difficulty, Pleasure or Displeasure, right or Wrong.
2. Ad, with the Gerundive, is often used instead:
Cibus facillimus ad concoquendum. food (that is) very easy to digest.
The Infinitive, facilis concoqui, is poetical.
3. The local use of the Ablative Supine is very rare:
Vilicus primus cubitū surgat, postremus cubitum eat. Cato. The steward must be the first to get out of bed, the last to go to bed.
4. The Supine in -ū never takes an object.

PARTICIPLE.

438. The Participle may be used as a Substantive, but even generally retains something of its predicative nature.

Nihil est magnum somniāntī. Cic. Nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming).
Rēgia, crēde mīhi, rēs est succurrere lāpsīs. Ov. It is a kingling, believe me (to run to catch those who have slipped), to succor the fallen.

Remarks.—1. The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a Substantive, is generally in the adverbial form: rectē facta. right actions; facētē dictum, a witty remark.
2. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of the Participle without a Substantive:
dōtū, it having been heard; compertū, it having been found out.
So also an adjective used predicatively: the Substantive is commonly supplied by a sentence. The construction is of limited use.
Alexander audītō Dārēum mōvisse ab Ecbatanīs fugiēntem insequi pergit.Android. Alexander, (it) having (been) heard that Darius had decamped from Ecbatana, proceeds to follow him up on his flight.

439. The Participle, as an Adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic:

Epaminondās erat temporibus sapienter ūtēns, Epaminondas was an who used to use opportunities wisely (= is qui ūterētur).
NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

Remark.—Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the Participle or Adjective, with the Relative and Subjunctive:

Res parva dicit, sed quae studiis in magnum certamen excesserit. Liv. A small thing to mention, but one which, by the excitement of the parties, terminated in a great contest.

Adverb.

440. 1. The Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb.
2. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations:

Male vivit, he lives ill; bene est, it is well; ferē omnēs, almost all
nimis saepe, too often; admodum adulescens, a mere youth, quite a youth
łatē rēx (Verg.), wide-ruling; bis consul, twice consul; duo simul belli
two simultaneous wars.

Remark.—The form of the Adverb does not admit of any further inflection, and therefore the Adverb requires no rules of Syntax except as to its position.

441. Position of the Adverb.—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends the sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

Injūstē facit, he acts unwisely.
Admodum pulcher, handsome to a degree, very handsome.
Valde diligenter, very carefully.

Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the Adverb, or in poetry:

Īram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, Well did Ennius call angi
the beginning of madness.

Vixit dum vixit bene. Ter. He lived while he lived (and lived
well.

One class of Adverbs demands special notice—the Negatives.

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

442. There are two original negatives in Latin, Nē and Hau
(haut, hau). From nē is derived nōn (nē-oīnom (ūnum), no—whi
not). Nē is used chiefly in compounds, or with the Imperative
and Optative Subjunctive. The old use appears in nē—quider.
Nōn is used with the Indicative and Potential Subjunctive
haud, mainly with Adjectives and Adverbs.
NEGATIVES.

NEGATIVE OF THE INDICATIVE.

443. 1. The regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive is nōn, the absolute not.

Quem amat, amat; quem nōn amat, nōn amat, Whom he likes, he likes; whom he does not like, he does not like.

Nōn ausim, I should not venture.

Remark.—Nōn as the emphatic, specific negative may negative anything. (See 263, R.)

2. Haud in model prose is used chiefly with Adjectives and Adverbs: haud magnus, not great; haud male, not badly.

Haud scio (Hauscio), in haud scio an, is the chief exception (459, R.)

In antitheses nōn is used, and not haud:

Nōn est vīvere sed vālēre vīta. Martial. Not living, but being well, is life.

Remark.—Other negative expressions are: haudquāquam, nēquāquam, neuti-quam, by no means; nihil, nothing. ("Adam, with such counsel nothing swayed." On iullus, see 304, R. 2.

444. Subdivision of the Negative.—A general negative may be subdivided by neque—neque, as well as by aut—aut, or strengthened by nē—quidem, not even:

Nīhil unquam nēque insolens nēque gloriōsum ex āre Timo-entis proccessit. Nep. Nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon.

Consciōrum nēmō aut latuit aut fūgit. Liv. Of the accomplices no one either hid or fled.

Nunquam Scipionem nē minimā quidem rē offendi. Cic. I never wounded Scipio's feelings, no, not even in the slightest matter.

("I will give no thousand crowns neither."—Shakes.)

Remark.—In the same way nego, I say no, is continued by neque—neque (nec—nec):

Negant nec virtūtēs nec vitia crēscere. Cic. They deny that either virtues or vices increase.

445. Negative Combinations.—In English, we say either no one ever, or, never any one; nothing ever; or, never anything; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used: nēmō unquam, no one ever:

Verres nihil unquam fēcit sine aliquō quaestū. Cic. Verres never did anything without some profit or other.

Remark.—No one yet is nōndum quisquam.
446. **Nego** (*I say no, I deny*) is commonly used instead of \textit{dico nōn}, \textit{I say—not}.

Negant quemquam virum bonum esse nisi sapientem. Cic. \textit{They say that no one is a good man except the sage.}

**Remark.**—The positive (\textit{ājo, I say}) is sometimes to be supplied for a subsequent clause. Caes. B. G. i. 19. The same thing happens with the other negatives.

**Position of the Negative.**

447. The Negative naturally belongs to the Predicate, and usually stands immediately before it, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words:

\textit{Potes nōn reverti. Sen.} \textit{Possibly you may not return.}

\textit{Nōn potes reverti, You cannot possibly return.}

\textit{Saepe virī fallunt; teneræ nōn saepe puellae. Ov.} \textit{Often do men deceive; soft-hearted maidens not often.}

\textit{Nōn omnis aetās, Lüde, lūdō convenit. Plaut.} (346.)

**Remarks.**—1. As the Copula \textit{esse, to be}, is, strictly speaking, a Predicate, the Negative generally precedes it, contrary to the English idiom, except in contrasts. The difference in position can often be brought out only by stress of voice: \textit{fēlix nōn erat, he wasn't happy; nōn fēlix erat, he was not happy, he was far from happy.}

2. \textit{Nē—quidem} bestrides the emphatic word or emphatic group (444).

448. Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative:

\textit{Nōn nego, I do not deny (I admit).}

**Remarks.**—1. \textit{Nōn possum nōn, I cannot but, (I must).}

\textit{Qui mortem in malis pōnit nōn potest eam nōn timēre. Cic.} \textit{He who classes death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.}

2. The double Negative is often stronger than the opposite Positive:

\textit{Nōn indōctus, a highly-educated man; nōn sum nēscius, I am well aware.}

\textit{Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordīdī. Hon.} \textit{Swart (soiled) with (no dishonor)able dust.}

\textit{Nōn ignāra mali miserīs succurrere disco. Virg.} \textit{Not unacquainted (= but too well acquainted) with misfortune, I learn to succor the wretched.}

This figure, which has a very wide application, is called \textit{Lōtōs (Alōtōs)} or \textit{Undersatement.}

3. It follows from R. 2. that \textit{neō nōn} is not simply equivalent to \textit{et, and}: \textit{neō} belongs to the sentence, \textit{nōn} to the particular word:

\textit{Nec hōc Zēno nōn vidit. Cic.} \textit{Nor did Zeno fail to see this.}

4. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations:

\begin{table}[h]
\begin{tabular}{ll}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indefinite Affirmative</th>
<th>General Affirmative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nōn nil, somewhat</td>
<td>nihil nōn, every thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn nēmo, some one, some</td>
<td>nēmo nōn, everybody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn nulli, some people</td>
<td>nulli nōn, all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn nūnquam, sometimes</td>
<td>nūnquam nōn, always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn nusquam, somewhere</td>
<td>nusquam nōn, everywhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
In ipsa curia nonnemo hostis est. Cic. In the senate-house itself there are enemies nobody is an enemy.

Nōn est placandi spēs mihi nulla Dei. Ov. I have some hope of appeasing God (nulla spēs nōn est, I have every hope).

Nemo nōn didicisse mavult quam discere. Quint. Everybody prefers having learned to learning.

NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

449. Nē is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive:

Nē cēde mali. Verg. Yield not thou to misfortunes.
Nē transieris Hibērum. Liv. Do not cross the Ebro.
Nē vivam, May I cease to live.

Remark.—The Negative nōn is sometimes used instead of nē, when contrast is emphasized:

Aut nōn tentāris aut perfaec. Ov. Either attempt not, or achieve.

450. Nē is continued by nēve or neu:

Nē illam vēndās neu mē perdās hominem amantem. Plaut. Don’t sell her, and don’t ruin me, a fellow in love.

INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

451. An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. The answer is the complement.

452. A question may relate:

I. To the existence or non-existence of the Predicate: Predicate Question:

Vivitne pater? Is my father alive?

II. To some undetermined integrant of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverbial modifier: Nominal Question:


For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.

Remarks.—1. The second class requires no rules except as to mood (464).
2. The form of the question is often used to imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.
Quid interest inter perjūrum et mendācem? Cic. What is the difference between a perjured man and a liar?

All questions of this kind are called Rhetorical.

453. Interrogative sentences are divided into simple and compound (disjunctive). *Am I?* (simple); *Am I, or am I not?* (disjunctive).

 Remark.—Strictly speaking, only the simple interrogative sentence belongs to this section; but for the sake of completeness, the whole subject will be treated here.

454. Interrogative sentences are further divided into direct and indirect, or independent and dependent. *Am I?* (direct) *He asks whether I am* (indirect).

**DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.**

455. Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

**Infelix est Fabricius quod rūs suum fodit?** Sen. *Fabricius is unhapp because he digs his own field?* (Impossible!)

**Heus, inquit, linguam vis meam praecūdere?** Phaedr. *Ho! ho quoth he, you wish to shut my mouth, you do. * (You shall not.)

**Quod dicis tē nōn fēcisse, ego fēcī?** Quint. *Because you say you did not do it, I did?* (Absurd!)

 Remark.—When several questions follow in immediate succession, only the first generally takes the Interrogative Pronoun, or -ne. Repeated questioning is passionate.

456. *Interrogative Particles.—* -Ne (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker:

**Omnisne pecūnia solūta est?** Cic. *Is all the money paid?*

**Estne omnis pecūnia solūta?** Is all the money paid?

 Remarks.—1. -Ne is originally a negative. Questioning a negative leans to the affirmative; and -ne is not always strictly impartial.

2. -Ne sometimes cuts off a preceding -s, and shortens the long vowel of the same, at often drops its own e. *Vidē?* Seeest? *Tūn?* You?

457. *Nōnne* expects the answer *Yes:

**Nōnne meministi?** Cic. *Do you not remember?*

**Nōnne is generōsisissimus qui optimus?** Quint. *Is he not the true gentleman who is the best man?*

So the other negatives with -ne: nēmōne, nihilne, and the like.
458. **Num** expects the answer *No*:

**Num quis hic alius praeter mē atque tē?** Nēmo est. **Plaut.** Is any body here besides you and me? *No.*

**Num tibi quem faucēs ūrit sitis, aurea quaenis pōcula?** **Horr.** When thirst burns your throat for you, do you ask for golden cups? [No.]

459. **An** (or) belongs to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is suppressed, or rather involved. The second alternative with **an** serves to urge the acceptance of the positive or negative proposition involved in the preceding statement. This abrupt form of question (or, *then*) is of frequent use in Remonstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, and Irony.

**Nōn manum abstinēs?** An tibi jam māvis cerebrum dispersgam hic?

**Ter.** Are you not going to keep your hands off? Or would you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now?

(My husband keeps guard, though absent.)

(Is it not so?) An nēscīs longās rēgibus esse manūs? Ov. Or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands (arms).

**Remark.**—Especially to be noted, in connection with **an**, are the phrases, nēscīo **an**, haud scīo **an**, I do not know; dubito **an**, I doubt, I doubt but = I am inclined to think; which give a modest affirmation. Negative particles, added to these expressions, give a mild negation:

Hand scio **an** ita sit. **Cic.** I do not know but it is so.

Hand scio **an** nulla senectūs beātior esse possit. **Cic.** I do not know but it is impossible for any old age to be happier.

Dubito **an** Thrasybūlum prīmum omnium pōnam. **Nep.** I doubt but I should (= I am inclined to think I should) put Thrasybulus first of all.

So **forsitan**, perhaps, regularly with the Potential Subjunctive:

Forsitan et Priamī fuérint quae fata requīrās. **Verg.** Perhaps you may ask what was the fate of Priam, too.

In later Latin **an** is used as a simple interrogative, and nēscīo **an** = nēscio **num**.

**DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.**

460. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>First Clause.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Second and Subsequent Clauses.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utrum, <em>whether,</em></td>
<td>an, (anne), or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utrumne,</td>
<td>an,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne,</td>
<td>an (anne),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ne (chiefly in indirect questions).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

Utrum nescis quam alte ascenderis, an id pro nihil habes? Cic. Are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing?

Vosne Lucium Domitium an vos Lucius Domitius deseruit? Caes. Have you deserted Lucius Domitius, or has Lucius Domitius deserted you?

Eloquar an sileam? Verg. Shall I speak, or hold my peace?

Utrum hoc tū parum meministi, an ego non satis intellexi, an mutasti sententiam? Cic. Do you not remember this, or did I misunderstand you, or have you changed your view?

Sunt haec tua verba necne? Cic. Are these your words, or no?

Remark.— Aut (or), in questions, is not to be confounded with an. Aut gives another part of the same question, or another form of it (or in other words).

Voluptās meliōremne efficit aut laudābiliōrem virum? Cic. Does pleasure make a better or more praiseworthy man? (Answer: neither.)

Tibi ego an tū mihi servus es? Plaut. Am I slave to you or you to me—which?
(The MS. reading aut would expect the answer: neither).

461. In direct questions, or not is annōn, rarely necne; in indirect, necne, rarely annōn:

Is ne est quem quaero, annōn? Is that the man I am looking for, or not?

Sitque memor nōstri necne, reforse mihi. Ov. (195, R. 7.)

Remark.— Utrum is sometimes used with the suppression of the second clause for whether or no?

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

462. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications:

1. Num loses its negative force, and becomes simply whether:

Speculārī jussī sunt num sollicitāti animī sociōrum essent. Liv. They were ordered to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with.

2. Si, if, is used for whether, chiefly after verbs and sentences, implying trial:

Tentāta rēs est si primō impetū capi Ardea posset. Liv. An attempt was made (in case, in hopes that, to see), if Ardea could be taken by a dash (coup-de-main). Compare Ō si (254).

3. An is sometimes used for num and ne, but never in model prose:
Consuluit deinde Alexander an totius orbis imperium sibi destinavit pater. Curt. Alexander then asked the oracle whether his father desired for him the empire of the whole world.

4. The form —— ne is found chiefly in the indirect question:

Tarquinius Priscī Tarquinii rēgis filius nepōsne fuerit parum liquet. rv. Whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of king Tarquin the Elder, does not appear.

Remark.—The form ne—ne is poetical.

SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

463. Direct:

Is the last syllable short or long?

Postrēma syllaba utrum brevis est an longa?

brevis ne est an longa?

Indirect:

In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{utrum} & \equiv \text{postrēma syllaba brevis sit an longa.} \\
\text{In versū nihil rēfert} & \equiv \text{postrēma syllaba brevis ne sit an longa.} \\
\text{postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit. Cic.} & \equiv \text{postrēma syllaba brevis sit longa ne.}
\end{align*}
\]

Moods in Interrogative Sentences.

I. IN DIRECT QUESTIONS.

464. The Mood of the question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer.

465. Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when he question is genuine.

A. Quis homo est? B. Ego sum. Ter. Who is that? It is I.

A. Vivitne [pater?] B. Vivum liquimus. Plaut. Is father alive? We left him alive.

466. Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer with the negative when the question is rhetorical.
Quis paupertātem nōn extimescit? Cic. Who does not dread poverty?

Remark.—Nonne and num in the direct question are really rhetorical. With nonne a negative answer is anticipated to a negative, hence the affirmative character. Compare further, 452, R. 2.

467. Subjunctive questions expect Imperative or anticipate Potential answers. Subjunctive questions expect Imperative answers, chiefly in the First Person.


Remark.—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse. (258.)

468. The Subjunctive is used in rhetorical questions, which imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker:

Quis hōc crēdat? Who would believe this? [No one.] Quid faceret alius? What else was he to do? [Nothing.]
Quis tulerit Gracchōs de sēditōne querentēs? Juv. (251.)

Remark.—On the Exclamatory Question see 534, 560.

II. IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

469. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative:

Considerābimus quid fēcerit (Ind. fēcit), quid faciat (Ind. faciat), quid factūrus sit (Ind. faciet or factūrus est). Cic. We will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).

Epaminōndās quaeexīvit salvusne esset clipeus. Cic. Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe. (Salvusne est?)

The Subjunctive may be original:

Ipse docet quid agam (210); fās est et ab hoste docēri. Ov. (Quid agam, what I am to do; not, what I am doing). See 258.

Remarks.—1. When the leading verb is disconnected from the interrogative, the Indicative form is employed:

So often with dic, say, vidē, see, quaerē, ask. Dic. quid est? Tell me, what is it?
(Dic quid sit, Tell me what it is.)
Quin tū úno verbō dic: quid est quod mē velis? Ter. Won't you tell me in or word: What is it you want of me?
Dīc mihi quid fēci nisi nōn sapienter amāvi. Ov. Tell me what have I done, say that I have loved unwisely.

The early poets go even further than this.

2. Nescio quis, nescio quid, nescio qui, nescio quod, I know not who, what, which are used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and have no effect on the construction.
So also, nescio quō modo. *I know not how = strangely; and mirum quantum, it (is) marvellous how much = wonderfully, are used as adverbs:

Mirum quantum prōruit ad concordiam. Liv. *It served wonderfully to promote harmony.

Nescio quid május nāscitur Iliade. Prop. *Something, I know not what, is rising greater than the Iliad.

Nescio quō pacto vel magis homines juvat gloria lata quam magna. Pun. *Somehow or other; people are even more charmed to have a wide-spread reputation than a grand one.

The position excludes a conscious ellipsis of the Subjunctive.

3. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative quīs? except in the Nom. Sing.; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences. The interrogative depends on the leading verb, the relative belongs to the antecedent. (612, R. 2.)

**Interrogative:** dic quid rogēm. *Tell me what it is I am asking.

**Relative:** dic quod rogo. Ter. *Tell me that which I am asking (the answer to my question).

The relative is not unfrequently used where we should expect the interrogative, especially when the facts of the case are to be emphasized:

Dicam quod sentio. *I will tell you my real opinion.

Incorporated relatives are not to be confounded with interrogatives:

Quaerāmus ubi (=ibi ubi) maleficium invenīrī potest. Cic. *Let us look for the misdeed in the place where it can be found.

**PECULIARITIES OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.**

470. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause (Prolēpsis):

Nōsti Marcellum quam tardus sit. Cic. *You know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is.

471. Contrary to our idiom, the interrogative is often used in participial clauses. In English, the participle and verb change places, and a causal sentence becomes consecutive:

Quam ūtilitātem petentēs scīre cupimus illa quae occultā nōbīs sunt? Cic. *What advantage do we seek when we desire to know those things which are hidden from us?

Sōlōn Pisistratō tyrānnō quae rentī quā tandem spē frētus sibi tam audāciter resisteret responsissē dicitur, senectūte. Sen. *Solon, to Pisistratus the usurper, asking him (= when Pisistratus the usurper asked him) on what earthly hope relying (= on what hope he relied that) he resisted him so boldly, is said to have answered "old age."

472. Final sentences (sentences of Design) are used in questions more freely than in English:
Sessum it praetor. Quid ut jūdicētur? Cic. The judge is going to take his seat. What is to be adjudged? (To adjudge what?)

Remark.—The Latin language goes further than the English in combining interrogative words in the same clause.

YES AND NO.

473. Yes is represented:

1. By sānē, (literally) soundly, sānē quidem, yes indeed, etiam, even (so), vērō, of a truth, ita, so, omnīnō, by all means, certē, surely, certō, for certain, admodum, to a degree.

2. By immo or īmo, which conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement—yes indeed, nay rather.


Causa igitur nōn bona est? Immo optimā. Cic. The cause, then, is a bad one? Nay, it is an excellent one.

3. By cēnseo, I think so.

4. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without confirmatory particles:

Estis ne? Sumus. Are you? We are.


No is represented:

1. By nōn, nōn vērō, nōn ita, minimē, by no means, nihil, nothing, minimē vērō, nihil sānē, nihil minus.

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative:

Nōn irāta es? Nōn sum irāta, You are not angry? I am not.

Remark.—Yes, for, and no, for, are often expressed simply by nam and enim:

Tum Antōnius: Heri enim, inquit, hoc mihi prōposueram. Cic. Then quoth Antony: Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday.

SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

474. 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once, one which consists of two or more clauses.

2. Coördination is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

3. Subordination is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.
He became poor and we became rich, is a coördinate sentence. 
He became poor that we might be rich, is a subordinate sentence.

4. The sentence which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause. *He became poor* is the Principal Clause, *"that we might be rich"* is the Subordinate Clause.

**Remark.—** Logical dependence and grammatical dependence are not to be confounded. In the conditional sentence, *vivam si vivet*, let me live if she lives, my living depends on her living; yet "vivam" is the principal, "si vivet" the subordinate clause. It is the dependence of the introductory particle that determines the grammatical relation.

### Coördination.

475. Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

**Remark.—** Co-ordinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (*Asyndeton*). Then the connection must determine the character.

### Copulative Sentences.

476. The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions: *et, -que, atque (ac), etiam, quoque.*

477. *Et* is simply *and*, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes:

*Panem et aquam nātūra désiderat.* *Sen.* Bread and water (is what) nature calls for.

*Probitās laudātur et alget.* *Juv.* Honesty is bepraised and—freezes.

478. *-Que* (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete or extend* the first:

*Senātus populus quē Rōmānus,* The Senate and people of Rome.

*Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander.* *Liv.* There Alexander died and was buried.

Combinations: *et — et;*  
*que — et;*  
*et — que* (only for two words);  
*que — que,* chiefly in poetry (also *Liv.* and *Sall.*)

*Et dominō satis et nimium fūrīque lupōque.* *Tib.* Enough for owner, and too much for thief and wolf.
479. _Atque_ (compounded of _ad_ and _-que_) adds a more important to a less important member. But the second member often owes its importance to the necessity of having the complement (_-que_). _Ac_ (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel) is fainter than _atque_, and almost equivalent to _et_:

**Intrā moenia atque in sinū urbīs sunt hostēs. Sall.** Within the walls, _ay_, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies.

A. _Ego servōs?_ (29.) B. _Atque meus_. Plaut. _I—a slave? And mine to boot_.

_Atque_ or _ac_ is often used to connect the parts of a clause in which _et_ has been already employed:

_Et_ potentēs sequitur invidia et humilēs abjectōsque contemptus et turpēs ac nocentēs odium. Quint. *The powerful are followed by envy; the low and grovelling, by contempt; the base and hurtful, by hatred._

**Remarks.**—1. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take _atque_ or _ac_. See 645.

2. On the Latin proneness to subordination by means of the participle, see 409, R. 2, and 667, R. 1.

480. _Etiam_, _even (now), yet, still_, exaggerates (heightens) and generally precedes the word to which it belongs:

_Nōbis rēs familiāris e ti a m ad necessāria deest, We lack means even for necessities of life._

_Ad Appiī Claudii senectūtem accēdēbat e ti a m ut caecus esset._ Cic. (558.)

**Of time:**

_Nōn satis pernōstī mē e ti a m quālis sim._ Ter. *You still do not know well enough (= little know) what manner of person I am._

**Remark.**—_Et_ is sometimes used for _etiam_, but sparingly. So _et ipse_, and kindred expressions.

481. _Quoque_, _so also_, complements (compare _-que_) and always follows the words to which it belongs:

_Quum patri Timotheī populus statuam posuisset, filiō quōque dedit._ Nep. *The people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also (likewise)._  

**Remark.**—The difference between _etiam_ and _quoque_ is not to be insisted on too rigidly:

_Grande et conspicuum nōstrō quōque tempore monstrum._ Juv. *A huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day._
482. *Copulation by means of the Negative.*—Instead of et and the negative, neque (nec) and the positive is the rule in Latin:

Opiniōne vulgī rapimur in errōrem n e c vēra cernimus. Cic. By the prejudice of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.

Caesar substitit neque hostem lacessivit. CAES. Caesar halted and did not harass the enemy (without harassing the enemy).

Remarks.—1. Et—nōn, and . . . not, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic:

Et militāvi nōn sine glōriā. Hon. And I have been a soldier not without glory.

On nec nōn, the opposite of et nōn. see 448, R. 3.

2. Combinations: Neque — neque; nec — nec. neque — nec.
neque — que. (nec — neque.)
et — neque.

3. Paradigms: And no one, neque quisquam, nor any one.
And no— neque ullus, nor any.
And nothing, neque quidquam, nor any thing.
And never, neque unquam, nor ever.

Neque amet quemquam nec amatur ab ullō. Juv. May he love no one, and be loved by none.

4. Nec is often nearly equivalent to nec tamen, and yet not:

Extra invidiam nec extrā glōriam erat, Tac. He was beyond the reach of envy, and yet not beyond the reach of glory.

483. 1. *Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.*—When multus, much, many, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: many renowned deeds, multa et praeclāra facinora; many good qualities, multae bonae-que artēs.

2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take et throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration:

Phrygēs et Pisidae et Cilicēs; or, Phrygēs, Pisidae, Cilicēs, Phrygians, Pisidians, and Cilicians.

3. Et is further omitted in climaxes, in antitheses, in phrases, and in formulae:

Virī nōn est dēbilitāri dolōre, frangī, succumbere. Cic. It is unmanly to allow oneself to be disabled (unnerved) by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb.
OTHER PARTICLES EMPLOYED.

**Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus, es idem. Mart. (296.)**

Patrēs Conscriptī, Fathers (and) Conscript (Senators).

Jūpiter Optimus Maximus, Father Jove, supremely good (and) great.

**484.** Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

1. **Temporal**: Tum — tum, then — then; nunc — nunc, modo — modo, now — now; simul — simul, at the same time. Tum Graecē — tum Latinē, partly in Greek, partly in Latin.

Horātius Cocles nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc increpābat omnes. Liv. Horatius Cocles now challenged them singly, now taunted them all.

Modo hūc, modo illūc, now hither, now thither (hither and thither).

Simul spernēbant, simul metuebant, they despised and feared at the same time (they at once despised and feared).

On Quum — tum, see 589.

2. **Comparative**: ut — ita, as — so:

Dolābellam ut Tarsensēs i t a Lāodicēnī ultrō arcessiērunt, As the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea (= Both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) sent for Dolabella of their own accord.

Often, however, there is an adversative idea:

Haec omnia ut invitās i t a nōn adversantibus patriciīs trānsacta. Liv. All this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians).

3. **Adversative**: Nōn modo, nōn sōlum, nōn tantum, not only: sed etiam, vērum etiam, but even, but also (sometimes simply sed):

Urbēs maritimae nōn sōlum multīs periculis oppositae sunt sed etiam caecīs. Cic. Cities on the seaboard are liable not only to many dangers, but even (also) to hidden (ones).

Nōn docēri tantum sed etiam dēlectārī volunt. Quint. They wish not merely to be taught but to be tickled to boot.

In the negative form, nōn modo nōn, not only not; sed nē . . . quidem but not even; sed vīx, but hardly.

Ego nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor sed nē reprehendo quidem factum tuum. Cic. I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.

**Remarks.**—1. Instead of nōn modo (sōlum) nōn—sed nē—quidem, the latter nē is generally omitted, when the two negative clauses have a verb in common, the negative of the first clause being supplied by the second:
ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES.

239. Pisone consule senātui nōn sōlum juvāre rempublicam sed nē lūgēre quidem līcēbat. Cic. When Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate (= the senate was not only not free) to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn (for her).

2. Nēdum, not (to speak of) yet, much less, is also used, either with or without a verb in the subjunctive:

Satrapa nunquam sufferēre ējus sumptūs queat, nēdum tū possis. Ter. A nabob could never stand that girl's expenditures. much less could you.

Nēdum from Livy on is used after affirmative clauses as well.

ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES.

485. The adversative particles are: autem, sed, vērum, vērō, at, atqui, tamen, cēterum. Of these only sed and tamen are really adversative.

486. Autem (postpositive) is the weakest form of but, and indicates a difference from the foregoing, a contrast rather than a contradiction. It serves as a particle of transition and explanation (= moreover, furthermore, now), and of resumption (= to come back), and is often used in syllogisms:

Rūmrıbus mēcum pugnās, ego autem ā tē rationēs requiō. Cic. You fight me with rumors, whereas I ask of you reasons.

Quod est bonum, omne laudābile est; quod autem laudābile est, omne est honestum; bonumigitur quod est, honestum est. Cic. Everything that is good is praiseworthy; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous; therefore, what is good is virtuous.

Remark.—Autem commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause; but when an unemphatic est or sunt occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So gitur and enim.

487. Sed (set) is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote contradiction, partly in a weaker sense, to introduce a new thought, or to revive an old one:

Nōn est vivere sēd valēre vita. Mart. (443.)

Domitius nullā ille quidem arte sed Lātinē tamē dicēbat. Cic. Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin.

488. Vērum, it is true, true, always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to sed in its stronger sense:

Sī certum est facere, faciās; vērum nē post conferās culpam in nē. Ter. If you are determined to do it, you may do it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.
489. Vero, of a truth, is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement:

Platonem Dion adeo admiratus est ut se tum ei tradaret. Neque vero minus Plato delectatus est Dion. Ne.
Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.

490. At (another form of ad = in addition to) introduces startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions wishes, often by way of quotation:

Si gravis dolor, brevis. At Philocteta jam decimum annum in speluncâ jacet. Cic. If pain is sharp, it is short. But Philoctetes has been living in his cave going on ten years.

"At multis malis affectus?" Quis negat? Cic. "But he has suffered much?" Who denies it?

Si scelestus est at mi infidelis non est. Ter. If he is a scamp, you (at least) he is not unfaithful to me.

At vidête hominis intolerâbilem audaciam! Cic. Well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity!

At vobis male sit! Cat. And ill luck to you!

Remark.—Ast = at + set (sed) is antiquated and poetic.

491. Atqui (But how? = But what of that?) is still stronger than at, and is used chiefly in argument:

Atqui perspicuum est hominem e corpore animoque constare. Cic. But it is clear that man consists of body and soul; igitur, therefore.

492. Tamen (literally, even thus), nevertheless, is often combined with at, verum, sed.
It is commonly prepositive, unless a particular word is to made emphatic:

Nātūram expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret. Hor. You may drive Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.
Domitius nullā quidem arte sed Latinē tamen dicerat (487).

493. Ceterum, for the rest, is used by the historians as adversative particle.

Remark.—In lively discourse, the adversative particles are often omitted.

DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES.

494. The disjunctive particles are aut, vel, -ve, sive (seu).
DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES.

495. Aut, or, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution:

Vinceris aut vincis. Prop. You are conquered or conquering.

Aut is often = or at least (aut saltem):

Cuncti aut magna pars fidem mutávisser. Sall. All, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.

Duo aut summum tres juvenés. Liv. Two, or at most three, youths.

Aut—aut, either—or:

Quaedam terrae partés aut frigore rigent aut üruntur calóre. Cic. Some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.

Aut dic aut accipe calcem. Juv. Either speak or take a kick.

496. Vel (literally, you may choose) gives a choice, often with etiam, even, potius, rather:

Ego vel Cluviénus. Juv. I, or, if you choose, Cluvienus.

Per mé vel stertáis licet, nón modo quiéscás. Cic. For all I care, you may (even) snore, if you choose, not merely sleep.

Satis vel etiam nímium multa. Cic. Enough, or even too much.

Epicurus homo minimé malus vel potius vir optimus, Epicurus (was) a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.

Vel—vel, either—or (whether—or):

Miltiades dixit ponte rescissó régem vel hostium ferró vel inopíá paucis diébus interitúrum. Nep. Miltiades said that if the bridge were cut the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.

497. -Ve (enclitic) is a weaker form of vel (with numerals, at most):

Cúr timeam dubitem vel locum défendere? Juv. Why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position?

Bis terve, twice or at most thrice (bis terque, twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more).

498. Sive, (seu), if you choose, gives a choice between two designations of the same object:

Urbem mātrī seu novercae reliquit. Liv. He left the city to his mother, or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.

499. Sive—sive (seu—seu) whether—or (indifference):
Sive tū medicum adhibueris sive non adhibueris non convalescēs. Cic. Whether you employ a physician, or do not employ (one), you will not get well.

Seu visa est catulis cerva fidēlibus seu rūpit teretēs Marsus aper plagās. Hor. Whether a doe hath appeared to the faithful hounds, or a Martian boar hath burst the tightly-twisted toils.

CAUSAL AND ILLATIVE SENTENCES.

500. A. The causal particles are nam, enim, namque, and etenim, for.

Sensus mirificē collocātū sunt. Nam oculi tanquam speculātōrēs altissimum locum obtinent. Cic. The senses are admirably situated. For eyes, like the watchmen, occupy the highest post.

Themistoclēs mūros Athēnienśium restituit suō periculō. Namque Lacedaemoniī prohibēre cōnātī sunt. Nep. Themistocles restored the walls of Athens with risk to himself. For the Lacedaemonians endeavored to prevent it.

Piscēs ōva relinquent, facile enim illa aquā sustinentur. Cic. Fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water.

Remarks.—1. Nam is always put at the beginning of a sentence; enim is always postpositive (486, R.): namque and etenim are commonly put in the first place:

For what can you do? Nam quid agās? Quid enim agās? Namque quid agās? Etenim quid agās?

2. These particles are originally asseverative, and are often used not only to furnish reason, but also to give an explanation or illustration (as for instance). Quid enim agās? What, for instance, can you do? This is especially true of enim, but a broad difference between nam and enim (which is derived from nam) cannot be proved. Etenim is often used to carry on the argument, and gives an additional ground. Nempe (from nam, namely, to wit, that is, of course, is often used ironically.


3. In atenim, sed enim, vērumenīm, enīmverō, vērumenīmvērō, as in etenim enim gives a ground or an illustration of the leading particle, but translation by an ellipsis would be too heavy, and enim is best left untranslated:

A. Audī quid dicam. B. At enim taedet jam audīre eadem milliēs. Ter. Hear what I say. B. But (I won't, for) I am tired of hearing those things a thousand times already.

501. B. Illative particles are itaque, igitur, ergō, ideō, idcirco, proinde.

502. Itaque (literally, and so), therefore, is put at the beginning of the sentence by the best writers, and is used of facts that follow from the preceding statement:

Nēmo ausus est liber Phōcīōnem sepelīre. Itaque ā servīs sepulti...
503. Igitur, therefore, is generally postpositive, and is used of opinions which have their natural ground in the preceding statement:

Mihi nón satisfacit. Sed quot hominēs tot sententiae; fallī igitur possumus. Cic. Me it does not satisfy. But many men many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.

Remark.—In historical writers, igitur is used both in position and signification as itaque. When emphatic, igitur is found even in the best authors at the head of the sentence.

504. Ergō denotes necessary consequence, and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than igitur. Ideō, idcirco, means on that account; proinde, accordingly, is employed in exhortations, appeals, and the like:

Negat haec filiam mē suam esse; nōn ergō haec māter mea est. Plaut. She says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.

Quod praeceptum (nōsce té ipsum) quia mājus erat quam ut ab homine vidērētur idcirco adsignātum est deō. Cic. This precept (know thyself), because it was too great to seem to be of man, was, on that account, attributed to a god.

Proinde aut exseant aut quiescant. Cic. Let them then either depart or be quiet.

SUBORDINATION.

505. Subordinate sentences are only extended forms of the simple sentence, and are divided into Adjective and Substantive sentences, according as they represent adjective and substantive relations.

506. Adjective sentences express an attribute of the subject in an expanded form:

Uxor quae bona est (625) = uxor bona.

507. Substantive sentences are introduced by particles, which correspond in their origin and use to the Oblique Cases, Accusative and Ablative.

These two cases furnish the mass of adverbial relations, and hence we make a subdivision for this class, and the organization of the subordinate sentence appears as follows:
508. A. Substantive sentences.
   I. Object sentences.
   II. Adverbial sentences:
      1. Of Cause. (Causal.)
      2. Of Design and Tendency. (Final and consecutive.)
      3. Of Time. (Temporal.)
      4. Of Condition and Concession. (Conditional and concessive.)

B. Adjective sentences (Relative).

Moods in Subordinate Sentences.

509. 1. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by Órātio Obliqua.

2. Órātio Obliqua, or Indirect Discourse, is opposed to Órātio Recta, or Direct Discourse, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words. Órātio Obliqua, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied, the Principal Clauses being put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

Sōcratēs dicere solēbat:
   Ō. R. Omnēs in eō quod scīunt satis sunt ēloquentēs.
   Ō. R. Socrates used to say: "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."
   Ō. O. Omnēs in eō quod scīrent satis esse ēloquentēs.
   Ō. O. Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what the UNDERSTOOD.

3. The oblique relation may be confined to a dependent clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called Partial Obliquity:

   Ō. R. Nova nupta dicit: Fleō quod īre necesse est. The bride says: weep because I must needs go.
   Ō. O. Nova nupta dicit sē flēre quod īre necesse sit. The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.
   Ō. R. Nova nupta flet quod īre necesse est. Cat.
      The bride weeps because she must go.
   P. O. Nova nupta flet quod īre necesse sit.
      The bride is weeping because "she must go" (quoth she).
4. Akin to ὃ ὃ is the so-called Attraction of Mood by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives. (666.)

Non dubito quin nova nupta flex tō quod ire nesses sit. I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go.

Remark.—The full discussion of ὃ ὃ must, of course, be reserved for a later period, See 650.

Sequence of Tenses.

510. In those dependent sentences which require the subjunctive, the choice of the tenses of the dependent clause is determined by the form of the principal clause. Principal Tenses are followed by Principal; Historical, by Historical.

All forms that relate to the Present and Future (Principal Tenses) are followed by the Present Subjunctive (for continued action); the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

All forms that relate to the Past (Historical Tenses) are followed by the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action); the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

Remark.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: I have been doing, I had been doing. Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (I was doing) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

511. Pres. cognōsco, I am finding out, quid faciās, what you are doing;
Pure Pf., cognōvi, I have found out (I know), quid fēceris, what you have done;
Future, cognōscam, I shall (try to) find out, quid fēceris, what you have been doing (what you did);
Fut. Perf., cognōvero, I shall have found out (shall know), quid fēcissēs, what you had done, what you were doing (before);
Imperf., cognōscēbam, I was finding out, quid facerēs, what you were doing;
Pluperf., cognōveram, I had found out (I knew), quid fēcissēs, what you had been doing, what you were doing (before).
SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Hist. Perf., Caesar cognovit, Caesar found out, 

quid facerent hostēs, 
what the enemy was doing;
quid fecissent hostēs, 
what the enemy had done.

PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Nihil refert postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit. Cic. (463.)
Nēmo adeō ferus est ut non mitescere possit. Hor. (556.)
Rūsticus exspectat dum défluat amnis. Hor. (574.)
Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam malī. Plaut. (634.)
Ardēat ipsa licet, tormentīs gaudet amantis. Juv. (609.)
Ut rūm nēscīs quam altē ascendēris an id prō nihilō habēs? Cic. (460.)
Laudat Panaetius Africānum quod fuerit abstīnens. Cic. (542.)
Nōn is es ut tē pudor unquam à turpītūdine revocabīt. Cic. (556.)
Quem mea Callipē laeserit ūnus ego. Ov. (633.)
Sim licet extreōnum sicut sum missus in orbem. Ov. (609.)
Multī fuērunt qui tranquillitātem expetentēs à negotīūs públicīs sē remōverint. Cic. (634.)
Neō mea quī digitīs lūmina condat erit. Ov. (634.)

HISTORICAL TENSES.

Epaminōndās quaesīvit salvusne esset clipeus. Cic. (469.)
Noctū ambulābat in forō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere non posset. Cic. (541.)
Ad Appī Claudī senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset. (558.)
Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut jam nōn terrās sōlum sed mare etiam fāmā nōminis sūi impēssēt. Liv. So great in means (= so powerful) was Etruria that she had already filled not only the land but even the sea with the reputation of her name.
Quum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen acerrīmē reliquī resistēbant. Caes. (587.)
Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dējiceretur. Nep. (513, R. 2.)
Agēsilāus quum ex Aegybō revertētur décessit. Nep. (586.)
Dēlēta est Ausonum gēns perinde ac sī interincīvō bellō certāssēt. Liv. (603.)
Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pugnā erat expertus. Liv. (579.)

REMARKS.—1. The Historical Present is treated according to its Tense, or according to its Sense. Final sentences more commonly follow the Sense.
Caesar cognoscit quid hostes

Caesar finds out (found out) what the enemy

Tense: Ubii Caesarem orant ut sibi parcant. Caes. The Ubii beg Caesar to spare them.

Sense: Athēniēnsēs creant decem praetōrēs qui exercitul praessent. Nep. The Athenians make ten generals to command their army.

Sense and Tense: Agunt gratias quod sibi pepercissent; quod arma cum hominibus consanguineis contulerint queruntur. Caes. They return thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had crossed swords with kinsmen.

So of authors:

Chrysippus disputat aethera esse eum quem homines Jovem appellarent. Cic. Chrysippi/s maintains that to be aether which men call Jove.

512. Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design.—Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. The Roman keeps the purpose and the process, rather than the attainment, in view.

Present, edunt, they are eating,
Pure Perf., edērunt, they have eaten,
Future, edent, they will eat,
Fut. Perf., ederint, they will have eaten,
Imperfect, edebant, they were eating,
Pluperfect, ederant, they had eaten,
Hist. Per., edērunt, they ate,

ut vivant, that they may live (to live).

ut viverent, that they might live (to live).

Principal Tenses.

Atque ut vivāmus vivere dēsīnīmus Mart. (424.)
Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser. Ov. (424.)
Gallinae pennis fovent pullōs nē frigore laedantur. Cíc. (545.)
Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō ērīlus ab imperitis teneātur. Sen. (545.)

Mē praeamīsit domum haec ut nūntiēm uxōri suae. Plaut. He has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife.

Oculōs effodiām tibi nē observāre possis. Plaut. I will gouge out your eyes for you, to make it impossible for you to watch me.

Historical Tenses.

Laelius veniēbat ad cēnam ut satīrēt dēsideria nātūrae. Cíc. Laels used to go to table, to satisfy the cravings of nature.

Phaēthon ut in currum patris tollerētur optāvit. Cíc. (546.)
Remark.—The Perf. and Pluperf. Subj. are sometimes found in sentences of Design, chiefly in earlier and later Latin, when stress is laid on completion, or when an element of Hope or Fear comes in: Ut sic dixerim, if I may be allowed to use the expression.

Id agendum est ut satiis vixerimns. Sen. We must aim at having lived enough.

Affirmare audeo me omni ope adinisurum ne frustra vos hanc spem de me conceperitis. Liv. I dare assure you that I will strain every nerve to keep you from having conceived this hope of me in vain. (After a past tense, ne concepissetis.)

513. Exceptional Sequence of Tenses:—Sentences of Result (Consecutive Sentences). In Sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuation into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or the Aorist, the latter especially with the negative: the action happened once for all or not at all.

Present Tense:

Siciliam Verrés per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullō modō possit. Cic. Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.

Perfect Tense (Pure):

Mūrēna Asiam sic obiit ut in eā neque avāritiae neque luxuriae vestigium reliquērit. Cic. Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery. (There is no trace there).

Perfect Tense (Aorist):

Equitēs hostium acriter cum equitātū nostrō conflxērunt tamen ut nōstrō eōs in silvās collēsque cōmpulerint. Caes. The cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was that) our men forced them into the woods and hills.

Neque vērō tam remissō ac languidō animō quisquam omnium fuit qui eā nocte conquiēverit. Caes. And indeed there was no one at all of so slack and indifferent a temper as to take (a wink of) sleep that night.

Remarks.—1. Authors vary much in the use of this Perfect. Cicero uses it very rarely some abuse it.

2. After accidit, contigit, and other Verbs of Happening, the Imperfect is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indicative form.

Accidit ut unā nocte omnēs Hermae dējicerentur. Nep. It happened that in one night all the Hermae were thrown down.

Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

514. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, which
are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the Active by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

**Rule I.**—After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the Future relation is represented by the Present Subjunctive, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive, according to the rule.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cognōscam,} & \quad \text{quid faciās, what you are doing (will be doing).} \\
\text{I shall (try to) find out,} & \\
\text{Cognōvero,} & \quad \text{quid fēceris, what you have done (will have done).} \\
\text{I shall have found out (shall know),} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

But whenever the dependent future is subsequent to the leading future, the Periphrastic Tense must be employed.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cognōscam,} & \quad \text{quid factūrus sis,} \\
\text{I shall (try to) find out,} & \quad \text{what you are going to do (what you will do).} \\
\text{Cognōvero,} & \\
\text{I shall have found out (shall know),} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

[Considerābimus], [we shall consider],

A. *Quid fēcerit aut quid ipsī acciderit aut quid dixerit,*
What he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.

B. *Aut quid faciat, quid ipsī accidat, quid dicat,* Or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.

C. *Aut quid factūrus sit, quid ipsī cāsūrum sit, quā sit isūrus ὁράτον.* Cic. Or what he is going to do (will do), what is going to happen to him, what plea he is going to employ (will employ).

*Tū quid sīs actūrus sī ad mē scripserīs pergātum erit.*
*Cic. It will be a great favor if you will write to me what you are going to do.*

**Remark.**—In some of these forms, ambiguity is unavoidable. So A may represent a real perfect, B a real present.

515. **Rule II.**—After the other tenses, the future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cognōscō,} & \quad \text{quid factūrus sis,} \quad \text{(what you are going to do),} \\
\text{I am finding out,} & \quad \text{what you will do.} \\
\text{Cognōvī,} & \\
\text{I have found out (know),} & \\
\text{Cognōscēbam,} & \quad \text{quid factūrus essēs,} \quad \text{(what you were going to do),} \\
\text{I was trying to find out,} & \quad \text{what you would do.} \\
\text{Cognōveram,} & \\
\text{I had found out,} \\
\end{align*}
\]

*Cic.*

\text{Incertain est quam longa cūjusque nōstrum vita futūra sit.}
It is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be (will be).
ANTEā dubitābam ventūraene essent legiōnēs. Cic. Before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come (or no).

Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quīn ventūrae nōn sint. Cic. Now I have no doubt that they will not come.

REMARKS.—1. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Periphrastic are used only to represent the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence.

Cognōsco, Cognōvī, quid factūrūs fuerīs. (what you have been I am finding out, I have found out (know), what you would have done. going to do),

Cognōscēbam, Cognōveram, [quid factūrūs fuissetūs, (what you had been I was trying to find out, I had found out, what you would have done, going to do), rare].

2. There is no Periphrastic for the Future Perfect Active, no Periphrastic for Passive and Supineless Verbs. The Grammars make up a periphrastic for all these from futūrum sit. esset ut, as:

Nōn dubito quīn futūrum sit; ut rederiēt, I do not doubt that he will have returned.

ut maereāt, that he will grieve.

ut necētur, that he will be killed.


Nōn dubito quīn confecta jam rēs futūra sit, I do not doubt but the matter will have been settled by this time.

In the absence of the Periphrastic forms, use the proper tenses of posse. (240, R. 3.)

3. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, and the like), the simple subjunctive is sufficient:

Galli nisi prōfērgerint mūniōnēs dē omni salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī si rem obtinuerint finem omnium labōrum expectant. Caes. The Gauls despair of all safety unless they break through (shall have broken through) the fortifications; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own (shall have held).

Vēnērunt querentēs spēm nullam esse resistendī nisi praeединium Rōmānus misisset. Liv. They came with the complaint that there was no hope of resistance unless the Roman sent a force to protect them.

Of course the Deliberative Subjunctive is future: Examples, 258.

516. Sequence of Tenses in Ὅρατιο Ὀβλίκα: In Ὅρατιο Obliqua and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses applies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In [scytalā] erat scriptum nisi domum revertere tur sē capitis eum damnāturōs, It was written in the scytale that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death. Nep. (Oratio Recta: Nisi domum revertēris tē capitis damnābimus, unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death.)

Pythia praecėpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperatōrem sūmerent; id si fecissent incepta prōspera futūra. Nep. The Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful. (Oratio Recta: si id fecēritis, incepta prōspera erunt.

Lacedaemonii, Philippō minitante per litterās sē omnia quae cōnā-
ventur (_oid., cônâbimini_ prohibitûrum, quaesìvérunt num sé esset sìam morì _prohibítûrus._ (_oid., prohibébis.) Cic. _The Lacedaemonians, when Philip threatened them by letter, that he would prevent everything they undertook (should undertake), asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too._

517. _Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods._—The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Sequences of the Principal Tenses; the Imperfect and Pluperfect have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

[Nê] compõne comâs quâs sìs _ventùrus_ ad illam. _Ov._ _Do not arrange (your) locks because (forsooth) you are going to see her._

_Excellentibus ingenìis citius défuerit ars quâ civem regant quam uâ hostem superent._ _Liv._ _Great geniuses would be more likely to lack the will to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy._

_Quid më prohibéret Epicûrëum esse, sì probârem quae îlle diceret? _Cic._ _What would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says)?_ 

_Tum ego tê primum hortârèr diû pensitârès quem potissimum ėlígerès._ _Plin. Ep._ _In that case I should be the first to exhort you to weigh long whom you should choose above all others._

_Quae vita Priamô fuisset, sì ab adolescentiâ scîsset quôs éventûs nenctûtis esset habîtûrus? _Cic._ _What sort of life would Priam led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing tenees of his old age?_

_REMARKS._—1. Of course when the Perf. Subj. represents the Historical Perf. it takes the historical Sequence:

_Magna culpa Pelopis quî non docuerit filìum quâstenus esset quidque cûranìm._ _Cic._ _Greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing as to be cared for._

_So also in the conditional proposition, when the action is past. For varying conception, Cic. _Off. iii._ 24.

2. The Imperfect Subjunctive, being used in opposition to the Present, might be stated as a Principal Tense, but the construction is less usual:

_Verërer nê immodicam õratiônem putârês nisi esset generis õjus ut saepe incesspe saepe dêsinere videâtur._ _Plin. Ep._ _I should be afraid of your thinking the speech of immoderate length, if it were not of such kind as to produce the effect of often becoming often ending._

518. _Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle._—When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, Gerund or Supine, the tense of that clause follows the tenses of the Finite verb.
Cupio scire,
I am desirous of knowing,

Cupiebam scire,
I was desirous of knowing,

Mihi interroganti,
when I ask him,
(literally: to me asking),

Mihi interroganti,
when I asked him,
(literally: to me asking).

Apelle s pictores eös peccare dīcēbat qui non sentīre n
quid esset satis. Cic. Apelles used to say that those painters blundered
who did not perceive what was (is) enough.

Atheniēnēs Cyrsīlum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērem
lapidibus coōperuērunt. Cic. (546.)

Cupido incessit animōs juvenum sciscitandi ad quem eōrum
regnum Rōmānum esset ventūrum. Liv. The minds of the young men
were seized by the desire of inquiring to which of them the kingdom of Rome
would come.

Misērunt Delphōs consultum quid facerent. Nep. They sent to Delphi
to ask the oracle what they should do.

Exception.—A Perfect Infinitive or Participle, dependent on a Present
Tense, commonly takes the sequence of the Past Tenses:

Satis mihi multa verba fecisse videor quārē esset hoc beneficium necessārium. Cic. I think I have said enough (to show) why this was
is necessary.

519. The Potential of the Past.—The Potential of the Past
may depend on a Present Tense:

Video causās esse permultās quae Titum Roscium imperērunt. Cic. I see that there are very many causes which might have in-
pelled Titus Roscius.

Quaero atē cur Gajum Cornelium non défenderem. Cic. ask you why I was not to defend Gajus Cornelius.

Remark.—The Sequence of Tenses is not unfrequently deranged by the attraction
parenthetic clauses, or the shifting of the conception.
USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

520. In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.

521. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and Sentences which partake of the Oblique Relation:

Animus sentit sē vi suā, nōn aliēnā movēri. Cic. The mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another.

Quaesivērunt num sē esset etiam mori prohībitūrus. Cic. (516.) Pompeius ā mē petīvit ut sē cūm et apud sē essēm quotidiē. Cic. Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily.

Pauetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suūs reliquisset mihi dōnāvit. Cic. Pauetus presented to me all the books (as he said) that his brother had left (quōs frāter ē jūs reliquērat, would be the statement of the narrator).

Remarks.—1. Sentences of Tendency and Result have is:
Tarquinius sic Servium dīligēbat ut is ējūs vulgō habēretūr filiūs. Cic. Tarquinius loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son.

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subject of the principal clause:
Ā Caesare invĭtōr sibi ut sim lēgātus. Cic. I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.

Especially to be noted is the freer use of suūs (295, R. 1). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulae:
Sūt collīgendī hostibus facultātem nōn relinquunt. Caes. They do not leave the enemy a chance to rally.

So sē recipere, to withdraw.

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as one, oneself, etc.:
Dēforme est dē sē praelicāre. Cic. It is loathsome to be bragging about oneself.

With the Infinitive this follows naturally from 420.

4. In Indicative Relative Sentences, which are mere circumlocutions (506), is is the rule:
Sōcratēs in honestam sibi crēdīdit orātiōnem quam eī Lēysiās reō composuerat.

Quint. Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.

Sometimes, however, the Reflexive is put contrary to the rule:
Metellus in īs urbībus quae ad sē dēfecerant praeṣidĭa impōnit. Sall. Metellus put garrisons in those towns which had gone over to him; regularly, ad eum.

Ille habet quod sībi dēbēbatūr, He has his due; regularly, eī.

5. Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view:
Solōn, quō tūtōr vita ējūs esset, furere sē simulāvit. Cic. Solon feigned madness, that his life might be the safer. (The notion of Result intrudes.)
6. Examples of Reflexives pointing both ways:

Rōmānī légātōs misērunt quī a Prūsiā peterent nē inimicissīmum suum (= Rōmānōrum) apud sē [Prūsiam] habēret. Nē. The Romans sent ambassadors to ask Prusias not to keep their bitterest enemy at his court.

Agrippa Atticum fīens órābat atque obscrābat ut sē sibi suīsque re-

servaret. Nēp. Agrippa begged and conjured Atticus with tears to save himself [Atticus] for him [Agrippa] and for his own family [Atticus].

Hopeless ambiguity:

Hērēs meus damnās estō dare illī omnia sua. Quint. My heir is to give him all that is his.

7. For the sake of clearness, the subject of the leading sentence is not unfrequently re-

tered to in the form of the Demonstrative instead of the Reflexive:

Helvētī Allobrogius sēsē persuāsūrōs existimābant vel vi coactūrōs ut per

suōs finēs eōs ēre paterentur. Caes. The Helvetians thought that they would persuade or force the Allobroges to let them [the Helvetians] go through their territory.

8. Ipse is always used in its proper distinctive sense: so when it represents the speaker in ō. 0.

Ejus and Sui.

522. Alexander moriēns ānulum suum dederat Perdiccae, Alex-

ander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Perdiccās accēperat ejus ānulum, Perdiccas had received his ring.

Quārē Alexander declarāverat sē regnum ei commendāsse, There-

by, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Ex quō Perdiccās conjēcerat eum regnum sibi commendāsse, From this, Perdiccas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Ex quō omnēs conjēcerant eum regnum ei commendāsse, From this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Perdiccās postulāvit ut sē rēgem habērent quum Alexander ānu-

lum sibi dedisset, Perdiccas demanded that they should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.

Amīcī postulāvērunt ut omnēs eum rēgem habērent quum Alexan-

der ānulum ei dedisset, (His) friends demanded that all should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him. (Lattmann and Müller.)

Ita sē gesserat Perdiccās ut eī regnum ab Alexandrō commendārē-

tur, Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.

Object Sentences.

523. Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking

and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

Remark.—These sentences are regarded, grammatically, as neuter substantives. The accusative of neuter substantives is employed as a Nominative. Hence, a Passive or Intransitive Verb may take an object sentence as a subject.
I. OBJECT SENTENCES INTRODUCED BY QUOD.

524. Clauses which serve merely as periphrases (circumlocutions) of elements in the leading sentence are introduced by quod, that.

REMARKS.—1. The leading sentence often contains a demonstrative, such as hoc, this; illud, id, that; and then the whole structure may be considered as a relative.

As these sentences present difficulties to the beginner, it may be well to postpone the consideration to the Relative.

2. In some of the combinations, quod may be considered an adverbial accusative of extent. (Inner Object.) Quod, in that (= because).

525. Quod is used to introduce explanatory clauses chiefly after a Demonstrative, after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb, and after verbs of Adding and Dropping:

Here quod means "the fact that," "the circumstance that."

Hoc sōlo propriō quod amīcōs conjūgis ōdit. Juv. In this alone (is the wife) nearer (than a mere neighbor), that she hates the friends of her husband.

Nil habet infēlix paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod (= id quod) ridiculōs hominēs facit. Juv. Unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous.

Magna beneficium est nātūrae quod necesse est mori. Sen. (195.) Quod spīro et placeō, si placeō, tuum est. Hor. That I do breathe and please, if that I please, is thine.

Bene facis quod me adjuvās. Cic. You do well (in) that you help me.

Bene mihi evenit quod mittor ad mortem. Cic. It is fortunate for me that I am sent to death (execution).

Adde quod ingenuās didicisse fīdēliter artēs ēmolliōt mōrēs nec sinit esse ferōs. Ov. Add (the fact) that to have acquired faithfully the accomplishments (education) of a gentleman, softens the character, and does not let it be savage.

On nisi quod, see 592, R. 3.

The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in Ōrātio Obliqua.

Quum Castam accusārem nihil magis pressī quam quod accusātor īēus praevāricātiōnis crīmine corrūisset. Plin. Ep. When I accused Casta, there was no point that I laid more stress on than the fact (that I stated) "that her accuser had been crushed under a charge of collusion."
II. OBJECT SENTENCES, WITH ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

526. Preliminary Observation.—On the simple infinitive as an object, see 424.

The Infinitive as a verbal predicate, has its subject in the Accusative. (421.)

Remark.—The Accusative is the most general form of the noun; the Infinitive (or rather the Indefinitive), the most general form of the verb. The two together give the outline, and not the details, of the thought—present an idea, and not a fact, as such. Compare 340.

527. Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing and Perceiving (Verba sentiendi et declarandi*), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive:

Thalēs Miletus a qu a m dixit esse initium rerum, Thales of Miletus said that water was the first principle of things.

Solōn f u re sē simulāvit. Cic. Solon pretended to be mad.

* Verba sentiendi are: video, audio, sentio, animadverto, scio, nescio, intellego, perspicio, comperio, disco, memini, credo, arbitror, puto, suspicor, judico, censeo, dūco, conclūdo, spēro, dēspēro. Similar expressions are: spēs est, opinio est.

Verba declarandi are: edico, affirmo, nogo, fator, narro, tradō, scribo, nūntio, ostendo, dēmonstro, persūdeo (546, R. 2.) significō, pollicor, prōmitio, minor, simulō, dissimulo, etc. Similar expressions are: fāma est, auctor sum, testim sum, certīōrem aliquem facio, etc.
Medici causa morbi inventa curatōnem esse inventam putant. Cic. Physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered.

Volucrés vidēmus fingere et construere nidōs. Cic. We see that birds fashion and build nests.

Audiet civēs acuisse ferrum. Hor. [The youth] shall hear that citizens gave edge to steel.

Timagenēs auctor est omnium in litteris studiōrum antiquissimam mūsicēn exstitisse. Quint. Timagenes is the authority (for the statement) that of all intellectual pursuits music was the most ancient.

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (ō. o.) without any formal notice.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Participle to express the actual condition of the object of Perception or Representation (§§66). As there is no Present Participle Passive the Infinitive must be used, and thus the difference between intellectual and actual perception is effaced, sometimes even in the Active.

Audio civēs acuentēs ferrum. I hear citizens sharpening the steel.

Audio a civibus acui ferrum. I hear that the steel is sharpened by citizens; or, the steel as it is sharpened by citizens.

Octāvium dolōre conficī vidī. Cic. I have seen Octavius (when he was) wearing out with anguish.

Vidī histriōnēs flentēs ēgredi, Quint. I have seen actors leave the stage weeping.

Notice facio. I make out, represent, suppose:

Plato a Deō a edificārī mundum facit. Cic. Plato makes out that the universe is built by God.

Isocratem Plato laudārī fēcit a Socrate. Cic. Plato has represented Isocrates as praised by Socrates.

Fac, quaeso, quī ego sum esse te. Cic. Suppose, I pray, yourself to be me.

2. When the subject of the Infinitive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subject is sometimes omitted—chiefly with Future Infinitive—and then esse also is dropped:

Refractūrōs carcerem minābantur. Liv. They threatened to break open the jail.

3. The simple Infinitive is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Inf.

See 424, R. 3.

The (Greek) attraction of the predicate of the Inf. into the Nominative after the Verb of Saying or Thinking, is poetical:

Phasēlus ille, quem vidētis, hospitēs, ait fuisse navium celerrimus. Cat. That pinnace yonder, which you see, my stranger guests, declares she used to be the fastest craft afloat.

4. When the Accusative with the Infinitive is followed by a dependent accusative, ambiguity may arise:

Ājō tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānōs vincere posse, in which tē may be subject or object.

Real ambiguity is to be avoided by giving the sentence a passive turn:

Ājō a tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānōs vincī posse. I affirm that the Romans can be conquered by thee, son of Aeacus.

Ājō tē, Aeacidā, a Rōmānōs vincī posse, I affirm that thou, son of Aeacus, canst be conquered by the Romans.

When the context shows which is the real subject, formal ambiguity is of no importance. But see Quint. vii. 9. 10.
NOMINATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

528. Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, prefer the personal construction, in which the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive appears as the Nominative Subject of the leading verb.

Active:

Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse, they say that Homer was blind.

Passive:

Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse, Homer is said to have been blind.

[Trāditur Homērum caecum fuisse], it is said that Homer was blind.

But when the leading verb is a form compounded with esse, to be, the impersonal construction is preferred:

Trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse. Cic. There is a tradition that Homer was blind.

Aristaeus inventor oleī fuīsse dīcitūr. Cic. Aristaeus is said to have been the inventor of oil.

Terentī (29, R. 1.) fābulae propter ēlegantiam sermōnis putābantur ā Laeliō scribī. Cic. Terence’s plays, on account of the elegance of the language, were thought to be written by Laelius.

Si Vējōs migrābimus āmisīsse patriam vidēbimus. Liv. If we remove to Veji, we shall seem to have lost our country.

Reus damnātum īrī vidēbātūr. QUINT. (436, R. 2.)

But:

Venerem Adōnīdī nūpsisse prōditum est. Cic. It is recorded that Venus married Adonis.

Crēditūr Pythagorae auditōrem fuīsse Numam. Cic. It is believed that Numa was a hearer of Pythagoras.

Remark.—In Verbs of Saying, except dīco, the personal construction is confined to the third person. The poets are free in treating verbs under this head.

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AFTER VERBA SENTIENDI ET DECLARANDI.

529. The Infinitive denotes only the stage of the action, and determines only the relation to the time of the leading verb (274).
After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,
The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;
The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;
The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

Remark.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: I have been studying, I had been studying. Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (I was studying) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect Infinitive, because it is prior to the leading verb.

In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.

ACTIVE. Contemporaneous Action. PASSIVE

P. T. Dicit: tē errāre,
He says, that you are going wrong,
tē decipl,
that you are deceived (217, R).

H. T. Dicebat: tē errāre,
He was saying, that you were going wrong,
tē decipl,
that you were deceived,

Prior Action.

P. T. Dicit: tē errāsse,
He says, that you have gone wrong,
that you went wrong,
that you have been going wrong,
tē deciptum esse,
that you have been (are) deceived,
that you were deceived (Aor.),
(that people have been deceiving you).

H. T. Dicebat: tē errāsse,
He was saying, that you had gone wrong,
that you went wrong,
that you had been going wrong,
tē deciptum esse,
that you had been deceived.

Subsequent Action.

P. T. Dicit: tē errātūrum esse,
He says, that you (are about to go wrong), will (be) going wrong,
tē deciptum irī,
that you (are going to) will be deceived.

H. T. Dicebat: tē errātūrum esse,
He was saying, that you were about to (would) go wrong,
tē deciptum irī,
that you were going to (would) be deceived.

Periphrastic Future.

The following form (the Periphrastic Future) is necessary when the Verb has no Subjunctive or Future Participle. It is often used from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the Passive than the future Passive Inf. of the paradigms.

P. T. Dicit: fore (futurum esse) ut errēs (metuās),
fore (futurum esse) ut errā-верis* (rare),
fore ut dēcipiāris (metuāris),
fore ut dēceptus sīs (rare), usually, dēceptum fore (not futurum esse).

H. T. Dicēbat: fore ut errārēs
(metuerēs),
errāssēs (rare),
fore ut dēcipērēris (metuerē-
ris),
dēceptum fore (rarely: fore ut dēceptus essēs).

REMARKS.—1. For examples of the Periphrastic, see 240.
Carthāginiensēs dēbellātum mox fore rēbantur. Liv. The Carthaginians thought that the war would soon be brought to an end. From dēbellātum erit, it will be (have been) brought to an end. So in the deponent adēptum fore.

2. Posse, velle, etc., do not require the Periphrastic, and seldom take it. (240, R. 3.)

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF WILL AND DESIRE.

532. Verbs of Will and Desire take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive:

The relation is that of an Object to be Effected:

Si vis mē flēre, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi. Hor. If you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself.

Utrum Milōnis corporis an Pýthagorae tibi mālis vīrēs ingenii dari?
Cic. Which (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo’s strength of body or Pythagoras’ strength of mind?

Ipse jubeat mortis nōs meminisse Dēus. Mart. (375, 3.)

Vītae summa brevis spēm nōs vetat incohāre longam. Hor. (424, R. 3.)

Nēmo ēre quenquam pūblicā probīet viā. Plaut. (387.)

Germanī vīnum ad sē omnino importārī nōn sinunt. Caes. The Germans do not permit wine to be imported into their country at all.

REMARKS.—1. On the construction of this class of verbs with ut (nē, quōminus see 546. Impero, I command, in ordinary prose takes only the Passive Infinitive:

Hannibāl imperāvit quam plūrīmās venēnātās serpentes vivās colligī. Ne:
Hannibal ordered as many poisonous serpents as possible to be caught alive.

Permitto seldom takes the Infinitive. Jubeo, I bid; sīno, I let; vēto, I forbid; prōhībeo. I prohibit, always have the Infinitive of Passive Verbs. These verbs may themselves be turned into the Passive: jubeor, sīnor, vētor, prōhībeor.

* Heavy periphrastics are of rare occurrence. So Fētīālēs dēcrēvērunt utrum eōrum fēcisset recte factūrüm (Liv. xxxi. 8); not fore ut fēcisset, although the O. requires utrum fēceris, rectē fēceris. (223, R. 4.) See Weissenborn’s note.
2. After jubeo, I bid, and veto, I forbid, the Infinitive Active can be used without an imaginary or indefinite subject:

*Jubet reddere, he bids return (orders the returning).*

*Vetat adhibère medicinam, he forbids the administration of medicine.*

*Infandum, régina, jubès renovâre dolorem, VERG. Not meet for speech, O queen, the anguish which you bid (me, us) revise.*

3. When the subject of the Infinitive is the same as the subject of the leading verb, the subject of the Infinitive is not necessarily expressed:

**Ni pârēre velis, pereundum erit ante lucernâs. JUV. Unless you resolve to obey, you will have to perish before candle-light.**

**Et jam māllet equōs nunquam tētigisse paternōs. OV. And now he could have wished rather never to have touched his father's horses.**

But the subject may be expressed, and commonly is expressed, when the action of the Infinitive is not within the power of the subject:

**Timoleōn māluit sē dīligīt quam metuī. NEP. Timoleon preferred that he should be loved rather than that he should be feared.**

**Et fugit ad salicēs et sē cupit ante vidēri. VERG. And flees to the willows, and desires that she should first be seen.**

4. The poets go much further in using verbs and phrases as expressions of Will and Desire. See 424, R. 4.

**ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.**

**533.** Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking:

**Salvum tē advēnisse gaudeo, I rejoice that you should have arrived safe** (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe).

**Quod salvus a d vēnīstī, that you have arrived safe.**

**Quod salvus a d vēnerīs, that (as you say) you have arrived safe.**

**Glōriātur Epicūrus sē nōn tōtō asse pascī. SEN. Epicurus brags of dining for not quite one copper.** See 541.

**ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.**

**534.** The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling:

**Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexārī. CIC. (341.)**

**Hominemne Rōmānum tam Graecē loquī? PLIN. EP. A Roman speak such good Greek? (To think that a Roman should speak such good Greek).**

**Mēne inceptō désistere—? VERG. I—desist from my undertaking?**

**Hinc abīre mātrem? TER. Mother go away from here?**

**Remarks.—1. Different is quod, which gives the ground:**

**Hei mihi quod nullīs amor est medicābilis herbis. OV. Woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs.**

2. On ut, with the subjunctive, in a similar sense, see 560. Both forms object.
THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE AS A SUBJECT.

535. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

\[\text{In} \text{ús} \text{it} \text{átum est régem capítis reum esse. Cic.} \text{ It is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life.}\]

\[\text{Facinus est vinciri cívem Rómanum. Cic. It is an outrage that a Roman citizen should be put in chains.}\]

\[\text{Neces} \text{se} \text{ est facere súmp} \text{tum qui quaerit (= eum qui quaerit) lucr} \text{um. Plaut. Need is that he make outlay who an income seeks.}\]

\[\text{Légem brevem esse oportet, quō faciulis ab imperitis teneātur. Sen. It is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief), that is may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.}\]

\[\text{Quid Millēnis intererat interfíci Clādium. Cic. (382.) Opus est tē animō valēre. Cic. (390, R.)}\]

\[\text{Remarks. — 1. Oportet, it behooves, and necesse est, must needs, are often used with the Subjunctive. So also many other phrases with ut. (See 550.) Necesse also takes the Dative of the Person: Hominē necesse est mori. Man must needs die. Ut culpēnt aliī, tibi mē laudāre necesse. Ov. Let others blame, but you must give me praise.}\]

2. When the indirect object of the leading verb is the same as the subject of the Infinitive, the predicate of the subject is put in the case of the object: in standard prose chiefly with licet, it is left (free); in poetry and later prose with necesse, with satium est, it is better, contingit: it happens, vacat, there is room:

\[\text{Mihi neglīgenti esse mōn licet, I am not free to be negligent.}\]

\[\text{The Accusative may also be used: Mihi neglīgentem esse mōn licet.}\]

\[\text{The Accusative is regularly used when the Dative is not expressed: Neglīgentem esse mōn licet. One is not free to be negligent.}\]

\[\text{In poetry, the Dative is allowable even then: Neglīgenti esse licet.}\]

\[\text{Sōlum erō quoniam mōn licet esse tuō. Prop. I shall be alone, since I may not be thine. On licet with the subjunctive, see 608.}\]

OBJECT SENTENCES REPRESENTED BY THE PARTICIPLE.

536. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation:

\[\text{Catōnem vidi in bibliothēcā sedentem multius Stoícōrum circumfusus libris. Cic. I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of Stoic books about him.}\]
Prōdīga nōn sentit pereuntem fēmina cēsnum. Juv. *The lavish woman does not perceive (how) the income (is) dwindling.*

Saepe illam audivi furtīvā vōce loquentem. Cat. *I have often heard her talking in a stealthy tone.*

Gaudē quod spectānt oculītē mille loquentem. Hor. (542.)

Polyphemum Homērus cum arietē colloquentem facit. Cic. *Homer represents Polyphemus (as) talking with the ram.*

Remark.—On the Infinitive, see 537. R. 1. The Greek participle agreeing with the leading Nominative after verbs of Perception and Emotion, is rare and poetical:

Sensit mediōs dēlapsus in hostēs. Verg. *He perceived (it) having fallen (that he had fallen) midst the enemy.*


537. The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfillment:

Caligula Lolliam missam fēcit. Suet. *Caligula turned Lolli afoff (for good and all).*

Prūdentī mandēs si quid rectē cūrātum vēllis. Ter. *You must intrust to a sensible man whatever you want properly attended to.*

Remark.—After verbs of Will and Desire, the Infinitive esse is occasionally found with these Participles, and hence they may be considered as Perfect Infinitives (573). Compare, however, Perfect Participle Passive with opus est, fūsus est. (390.)

CAUSAL SENTENCES.

538. Causal sentences are introduced:

1. By *Quia*, because, *quod*, (in that) because.
2. By *Quoniam* (quom iam), now that, quando, quandō, quidem, since (rarely in this sense).
3. By *Quum*, as. (Inference.)
4. By the Relative Pronoun, partly alone, partly with ut, utpote, quippe, etc. (See 626, 634.)

Remarks.—*Quia* and *quod* differ chiefly in that *quod* is used, and not *quia*, when the causal sentence is at the same time an object sentence. *Quod* is the Acc. N. N. Sing., *quia* the Acc. N. N. Pl. of *qui*, and often have a correlative demonstrative, such as, ets, deō, idcirco, therefore, propterēs, on that account.

*Quoniam* and *quando* (quandō, quidem) are used of evident, present reasons; but *quando* (quandō, quidem) is rare in any other than a temporal sense. Temporal conjunctions are often used causally.

CAUSAL SENTENCES WITH *QUIA*, *QUOD*, AND *QUONIAM.*

539. Causal sentences with *quia*, *quod*, and *quoniam* are put in the Indicative, except in oblique relation (Partial or Total).
540. Causal sentences with quia, quod, and quoniam take the Indicative in Direct Discourse:

Amantès dē formā jūdicāre nōn possunt, quia sensum oculōrum praecipit animus. QUINT. Lovers cannot judge of beauty, because the heart forstalls the eye.

Torquātus filium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pug navērāt necāri jussit. SALL. Torquatus bade his son to put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order(s) [quod pugnāset = because, as Torquatus said or thought].

Neque mē vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vīxi ut nōn frūstrā mē nātum existimem. CIC. And I am not sorry for having lived, since I have so lived that I think I was born not in vain.

Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuō. PROP. (535, R. 2.)

Erant quibus appetentior fāmae Helvidius vidērētur quando etiam sapientibus cupido glōriae novissima exuitur. TAC. There were some to whom Helvidius seemed too eager for fame, since, even from the wise, ambition is the last (infirmity) that is put off.

541. Causal sentences with quia, quod, and quoniam take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

Noctā ambulābat in forō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nō posset. CIC. Themistocles used to walk about in the market-place at night because (as he said) he could not get to sleep.

Quae quia nōn licēt nōn facit, illa facit. Ov. She who does it not because (she thinks, forsooth) she may not (do it), does it.

Elsewhere: quae quia nōn licuit nōn facit, illa facit.

[Nē] compōne comās quia sīs vēntūrus ad illam. Ov. (517.)

Quoniam ipse prō sé dīcere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter ejus Stēs gorās. NEP. "As [Miltiades] could not speak for himself," his brother, Stesagoras, made a speech. (Indirect quotation from the speech of Stesagoras.

Remarks.—1. Nōn quod. nōn quia, are used with the Indicative or Subjunctive, cording to the general rule. The Indicative denies absolutely,* the Subjunctive reje

* That the Indicative is used only of excluded facts is not borne out by the usage of the language from LUCR. ii. 2, to TAC. ANN. xiii. 1.
an imaginary suggestion (as if from an ideal second person). The real ground often follows with sed quia, sed quod.

The Subjunctive is more common than the Indicative with non quod, non quia. Nons quod = non quod, and and non quin = non quod non, are found with the Subjunctive only.

Subjunctive:

Pugilis in iactandis caestibus ingemiscunt, non quod doleant, sed quia profundendā vōce omne corpus intentitur venitique plāgā vehementior. Cic. Boxers in plying the caestus heave groans, not that (as you might suppose) they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch, and the blow comes with a greater rush.

Mājōres nostrī in dominum dē servō quaeēri nōluerunt; non quin posset vērum invenīrī. sed quia videbatur indignum esse. Cic. Our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because (not as though, they thought,) the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading.

A Lacedaemoniorum exulibus praetor vim arcuerat, non quia salvōs vellet sed quia perīre causā indictā nōlēbat. Liv. The praetor had warded off violence from the Lacedaemonian exiles, not (as you might have supposed) because he wished them to escape, but because he did not wish them to perish with their case not pleaded (unheard).

The same principle applies to magis quod (quō), quia . . . . sed quod, quia, with moods in inverse order.

Libertātis originem inde, magis quia annuum imperium consulāre factum st quam quod dēminūtum quidquam sit ex régīa potestāte, enumerēs. Liv. You may begin to count the origin of liberty from that point, rather because the consular government was limited to a year, than because aught was taken away from the royal power.

Indicative:

Sum non dicam miser, sed certē exercitus, non quia multīs dēbeo sed quia aepe concurrent. Cic. I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because am in debt to many, but because (their claims) often conflict.

2. Verbs of Saying and Thinking are put in the subjunctive with quod by a kind of traction:

Impetrāre non potuī, quod religione sē impedīrī dicerent. Cic. I could not obtain permission, because they said (as they were) embarrassed (prevented) by a religious scruple quod impedirenτur, because (as they said) they were prevented.

3. Causal sentences may be represented by a Participle. (672.)

**QUOD WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.**

542. Quod is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as Verbs of Joy and Sorrow, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already.

Indicative:

Gaudē quod spectānt oculi tē mille loquentem. Hor. Read that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking.

Dolet mihi quod tū nunc stomachāris. Cic. It pains me that you are angry now.
Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit. Cic. (376. R.)
Juvat me quod vigent studia. Plin. Ep. I am charmed that studies are flourishing.
Tristis es indignor quod sum tibi causa doloris. Ov. Are you sad? I am provoked (with myself) that I am a cause of pain to you.
Tibi gratias ago, quod me omni molestia liberas. Cic. I thank you, that you free me from all annoyance.

Subjunctive:
Gaudet miles quod vicerit hostem. Ov. The soldier rejoices at having conquered the enemy.
Nunquam mihi in mentem veniet paenitere quod a me ipse non desclverim. Cic. It will never occur to me to be sorry for not having been untrue to myself.
Laudat Panaetius Africānum quod fuerit abstinens. Cic. Panaetius praises (Scipio) Africanus for having been abstinent.
Nemo orātōrem admirātus est quod Latinā loquerētur. Cic. No one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin.
Sōcrates accusātus est quod corrumperet juventātem. Quint. Socrates was accused of corrupting youth.

Memini gloriāri solitum esse Quintum Hortensium quod nunquam bellō civili interfuisse. Cic. I remember that Quintus Hortensius used to boast of never having engaged in civil war.
Agunt grātiās quod sibi pepercissent. Caes. (511, R. 1.)

Remark.—All these verbs may be construed with the Accusative and Infinitive: Salvum tē advēnisse gaudeo. (538.) But in Expressions of Praise and Blame, Thanks, and Complaint, quod is more common.

Amō tē et nōn neglexisse habeo grātiām. Ter. I love you (= much obliged), and I am thankful to you for not having neglected (it).
Grātulor ingenium nōn latuisse tuum. Ov. I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain perdu.
Isocrātēs queritur plus honoris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dāre. Quint. Isocrates complains that more honor is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.

On cum, see 566.

Sentences of Design and Tendency.

543. 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as aim; the other, as a consequence.

2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particlut (how, that), a relative conjunction.

3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Senten
as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the Negative:

*Final:* nē (ut nē), nē quis, nē ullus, nē unquam, (nē quando,) nē usquam, (nēcubi,) nē aut—aуt, (ut nēve—nēve)

*Consecutive:* ut nōn, that not. ut nēmo, that no one. ut nūlus, that no. ut nunquam, that never. ut nusquam, that nowhere. ut neque—neque, that neither —nor.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Effecting have the Final Sequence.

2. Verbs of Hindering have the sequences of the Final Sentence, but often the signification of the Consecutive.

3. Verbs of Fearing belong to the Final Sentence only so far as they have the Optative.

**FINAL SENTENCES.**

544. Final Sentences are divided into two classes:

1. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the Subject: Sentences of Design.

Āsse oportet ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās. [Cic.] You must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat.

This form may be translated by, (in order) to; sometimes by, that may, might, that the subj., and the like.

I. Final Sentences in which the Design lies in the leading verb (Verba studii et voluntātis, Verbs of Will and Desire): Commentary Final Sentences.

olo uti mihi respondeās Cíc. I wish you to answer me.

This form is often rendered by to, never by in order to, sometimes by that and the subj., or some equivalent.

Partly Final and partly Consecutive are:

I. Verbs of Hindering.

Peculiar in their sequence are:

7. Verbs of Fearing.

Remarks.—1. Temporal Particles are often used in a final sense. So dum, dōnēc, (574), antequam, priusquam (579).
2. The general sense of a Final Sentence may be expressed:
1.) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) causā or gratia (439, R. 2.)
2.) By ad with Gerund and Gerundive. (433.)
3.) By the Accusative Supine after Verbs of Motion. (436.)
4.) By the Future Participle Active (later Latin):

Maroboduus misit légātōs ad Tiberium órātūrōs auxilia, Marobod sent commissioners to Tiberius, to beg for reinforcements.

I. Sentences of Design.

545. Sentences of Design are introduced by:
1. Ut (utī) (how) that, and other Relative Pronouns and Adverbs (631).

Ut is often preceded by a demonstrative expression, such as: idcirco therefore; eō, on that account; eō consiliō, with the design.

2. Quō = ut eō, that thereby; with comparatives, the...—...:

3. Ne, that not, lest, continued by nēve, neu. (450.)

Remark.—Other particles are of limited use. So ut nē cannot follow verbs of negative signification; quōminus is used with Verbs of Hindering; quīn requires a preceding negative besides.

Ésse oportet ut vívās, nōn vívere ut edās. [Cic.] You must eat to live not live to eat.

Inventa sunt specula, ut homo sā ipse nōsceret. Sen. Mirrors were invented, to make man acquainted with himself.

Ut amēris, amābilis estō. Ov. That you may be loved (to make your loved, in order to be loved), be lovable.

Lēgēm brevēm esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperātīs teneātur. A law ought to be brief, that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.

Senex serit arborēs, quae alterī sēculō prōsint. Cic. The old man out trees, to do good to the next generation.

Semper habē Pylādēn, quī consolētur Orestēn. Ov. Always he Pylades, to console Orestes.

Artaxerxes Themistocli Magnēsiam urbem dōnāverat, quae eī praebēret. Nep. Artaxerxes had given Themistocles the city of Magnesia to furnish him with bread.

Gallinae pennīs fovent pullōs, nē frigore laedantur. Cic. Hens (their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep from being) hurt by the cold.

Dionysius nē collum tonsōri committeret tondēre filiās suās dum Cīc. (434, R. 3.)
Remark.—Ut nōn is used when a particular word is negatived:

Confer tē ad Mallium, ut nōn ōjectus ad alienōs sed invītātus ad tuōs esse idēāris. Cic. Be take yourself to Mallius, that you may seem not thrust out to strangers, ut invited to your own (friends).

II. Complementary Final Sentences.

546. Complementary Final Sentences follow Verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urging and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavoring, of Forcing and ermitting (Verba studii et voluntātis).*

Positive : Ut.

Volo utī mihi respondeās. Cic. I wish you to answer me.

Phāethōn ut in currum patris tollērētūr optāvit. Cic. Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father’s chariot.

Admoneō ut quotidiē meditēre resistendum esse ĭracundiae. Cic. I monish you to reflect daily that resistance must be made to hot-headedness.

Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser. Ov. (424.)

Exīgis ut Priamus nātōrum fūnerē lūdat. Ov. You exact that Priam art at (his) sons’ funeral.

Athēniēnsēs quum statuerent ut nāvēs conscenderent, Cyrsilum endam suādentem ut in urbē manērent lapidibus cooperuērunt. Cic. The Athenians, resolving to embark on board their ships, covered with stones (stoned) one Cyrsilus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city.

Pūblium Lentulum ut sē abdicāret praetūrā coēgīstīs. Cic. You ceded Publiius Lentulus to resign the praetorship.

Ilūd nātūra nōn patitur, ut aliōrum spoliis nōstrās cōpiās augeāmus. Nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.

So also any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or Demanding:

Pythīa respondit ut moenibus līgneīs sē mūnīrent. Nep. The Pythia decreed that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.

Negative : Nē, ut nē.

Such verbs and phrases are: óro, rogo, precor, obsceco, fāgito, postulo,—video, āgito, prōspicio,—suādeo, persuādeo, cēnseo, hortor, adhortor, moneo, permoveo, adīfico, incito, impello, cōgo,—impero, mando, praecipio, ēdīco, scribo, mitto,—concēdo, permitto (sino),—statuo, constituo and dēcerno,—volo, mālo, opto, studeo, nītor, contendō, ēlabōro, pugno,—id ago, operam dō, lēgea, lex est, auctor sum, consilium dō.
Caesar suís imperávit nē quod omnínō tēlum in hostēs rējicerēn. Caesar gave orders to his (men) not to throw back any missile at all on the enemy.

Themistoclēs colōgis suís praedixit ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrunt lēgātōs dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Nep. Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he was sent back.

Ut nē is not used after verbs of negative signification, such as impedio, I hindered, recēso. I refuse. (548.)

Pompejus suís praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum excipere nēve locō movērent. Caes. Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position.

Neque is sometimes used after ut:

Monitor tuus suādēbit tibi ut hinc discēdās neque mihi ullum vērum respondeās. Cic. Your adviser will counsel you to depart hence and answer me never a word.

Remark.—1. Instead of ut with the Subjunctive, the Infinitive is frequently used with this class of verbs. So, generally, with jubeo, I order, 532. Authors vary in the use of the Infinitive is wider in poetry and later prose.

2. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Infinitive must be used. The English translation is that of the Indicative: volo, I will have it (maintain), moneo, I remark, persuādeo, I convince; dēcerno, I decide, cōgo, I conclude.

Moneo artem sine assiduitāte dīcēndī nōn multum juvāre. Cic. I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail.

Vix cuquam persuādēbatur Graeciōnēm cēssūrōs Rōmānōs. Liv. Scarcely one could be persuaded that the Romans would retire from all Greece.

Nōn sunt isti aūdiēnti qui virtūtem dūram et quasi ferream quandam volunt. Cic. (300.) These are not hearers who admire and seem almost to chide in a manner.

Est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere. Cic. It is the way of the world not to allow that the same man excels not in more things (than one).

3. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjunctive, without ut, is employed, and the restriction of sequence to Present and Imperfect is removed:

Existimēs velim nēminem cu quam cāriōre unquam fuisse quam tē x. Cic. I wish you to think that no one was ever dearer to anyone than you to me.

Malo tē sapiens hostis metuat quam stultī civēs laudent. Liv. I had rather wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you.

Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, ēno domi. Mart. (230.) Hūc ades, insānī feriant sine litterā fluétūs. Verg. Come hither (and) let mad waves dash the shores.

Tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima vēlēm. Ov. (316.) Nōllem dīxissem. Cic. (254, R. 2.) Occīdit occideritque sinās cum nōmine Trōjam. Verg. 'Tis fallen, and let it be fallen name and all.

So jubeo in poetry and later prose. Compare also potius quam. 579, R.
III. Verbs of Hindering.

547. The dependencies of Verbs of Hindering may be regarded as partly Final, partly Consecutive. Né and quōminus are originally final, but the final sense is often effaced, especially in quōminus. Quin is a consecutive particle. The sequence of Verbs of Hindering is that of the Final Sentence.

The negative often disappears in the English translation.

548. Verbs signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, take nē with the Subjunctive:

Impedior nē plūra dicam. Cic. I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more).

Compare: "Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?" Gal. v. 7.

Servitūs mea mihi interdīxit nē quid mīrer meum malum. Plaut. My slavery has forbidden me to marvel aught at (329, R. 1.) ill of mine.

Histiaeus obstītīt nē rēs consīcerētur. Nep. Histiaeus opposed the thing being done.

Rēgulus nē sententiam diceret recūsāvit. Cic. Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion.

Maledictīs dēterrēre nē scībat parat. Ter. (424.)

Tantum quum fīngēs nē sis manifesta cavētō. Ov. (264.)

Tantum nē noceās dum vīs prōdesse vidētō. Ov. Only see (to it) that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Preventing also take quōminus (549), and some of them the infinitive (532, R. 1). So regularly prohibēre:

Nēmo iēre quenquam pūblicā prohibet viā. Plaut. (387.)

Impedire, to hinder, dēterrēre, to frighten off, recūsāre, to refuse, sometimes have nē Infinitive.

2. Verbs signifying to Beware belong to Verbs of Hindering only so far as action is contemplated.

After caveo, I beware, nē is often omitted:

Cave crūdēs, Beware of believing.

(Cave ut crūdēs, Be sure to believe.)

Quōs vīcerīs tibi amīcōs esse cave crūdēs. Curt. Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are friends to you.

549. Quōminus (= ut ēō minus), that thereby the less, is used with verbs of Preventing:

Such as: impedīre, to hinder; prohibēre, to keep from; tenēre, to hold; dēterrēre, to frighten off; obstāre, to be in the way; recūsāre, to refuse; and the like:
VERBS OF HINDERING.

_Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendi studia teneāmus._ Cic. Age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture.

_Nōn déterret sapientem mors quōminus rei pūblīcae (347) cōnsulat._ Cic. Death does not deter the sage from consulting the interest of the State.

_Quid obstat quōminus Deus sit beātus? Cic._ What is in the way of God's being happy?

_Caes. Caesar cognōvit per Afrāniūm stāre quōminus proeliō dimicārētur._ Caes. Caesar found that it was Afranius's fault that there was no decisive fight (stat, there is a stand still).

**550. Quīn** is used like _quōminus_, with Verbs of Preventing, but only when they are negativated or questioned.

**Remarks.—1. Quīn** is compounded of _qui_ + _nē_, _how_ (in which way), _+ not_, and answers to _ut eō nōn_ or _quō nōn_. For _nōn quīn_ (=_ _nōn quō nōn_), see 541, R. 1.

2. _Quīn_ is used only after Negative Sentences, or Questions which expect a negative answer.

3. When _quīn_ is used as a Consecutive or Relative particle, _ut nōn_ or _quī nōn_, it has all the sequences of the Consecutive or Relative. See 556.

4. When _quīn_ is used after Negative expressions of Doubt it has the sequences of the Interrogative.

5. When _quīn_ is used with Verbs of Preventing it has the sequences of the Final Sentence.

**551. Quīn** is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt and Uncertainty, are negativated or questioned:

1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (Sequence of the Final Sentence):

   _Vīx nunc obsistitur illsī (208) quīn lantient mundum._ Ov. They are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe.

   _Antiochus nōn sē tenuit quīn contrā suum doctōrem librum ēderet._ Cic. Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher.

   _Nullum adhūc intermīsī diem quīn aliqūid ad té litterārum daret._ Cic. I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).

   _Facere nōn possum quīn quotidiē ad té mittam litterās._ Cic. I cannot do without (I cannot help) sending a letter to you daily.

   _Nullō modō facere possum ut nōn sim populāris._ Cic. I cannot help being a man of the people.

   _Nōn possum quīn exclāmem._ Plaut. I cannot but (I must) cry out.

   _Nihil abest quīn sim miserrimus._ Cic. There is nothing wanting that should be (= to make me) perfectly miserable.

   _Fieri nullō modō poterat quīn Cleomenī (208) parcerētur._ Cic.
could in no wise happen but that Cleomenes should be spared (= Cleomenes had to be spared).

Paulum āruit quin Fabius Vārum interficeret. Caes. There was little acting but Fabius (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus).

2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (Sequence of the Interrogative sentence):

Nōn dubium est quin uxorēm nōlit filiūs. Ter. There is no doubt that any son does not want a wife.

Quis dubitet (= nēmo dubitet) quin in virtūte divitiae sint? Cic. 51.)

Nōn dubitāriti dēbet quin fuerint ante Homērum poētae. Cic. It is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.

Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quin ventūrae nōn sint legiōnēs. Cic. 15.) Occasionally Verbs of Saying and Thinking are found with the same construction, because they are near equivalents.

Negāri nōn potest quin rectius sit etiam ad pācātōs barbarōs exerci-
mittī. Liv. It cannot be denied (doubted) that it is better for an army to be sent to the barbarians even though they be quiet.

Nōn abest suspicio (Lītotēs for dubitāriti nōn potest) quin Orgetorix se sibi mortem conscīverit. Caes. There is no lack of ground to suspect there is no doubt that, 448, R. 2) Orgetorix killed himself.

Remarks.—1. In Future relations nōn dubito quin (according to 515, R. 3) may have Simple Subjunctive instead of the Periphrastic:

Nōn dubitārē quin dē omnibus obsidibus supplicium sūmat Ariovistus. Caes. He did not doubt that Ariovistus would put all the hostages to death.” Comp. Cat. cvii.

So when there is an original Subjunctive notion:

Nōn dubito quin ad tē statim veniam. Cic. I do not doubt that I ought to come forthwith. (Veniam? Shall I come?)

2. Of course dubito and nōn dubito may have the ordinary interrogative constructions. On dubito an, see 459, R.

3. Nōn dubito. with the Infinitive, usually means I do not hesitate to:

Nōn dubitem dicere omnēs sapientēs semper beātōs esse. Cic. I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy.

Et dubitāmus adhuc virtūte extendere virēs? Verg. And do we still hesitate to extend our power by our prowess? Compare timeo, vereor, I fear, hesitate to.

So occasionally nōn dubito quin. See R. 1.

Rōmāni arbitrabuntur nōn dubitāturum fortēm virum quin cēderet aequō
mō legibus. Cic. The Romans thought that a brave man would not hesitate to yield to equity in the laws.

4. Nōn dubito with the Inf. for nōn dubito quin occurs chiefly in Nepos, Livy and other writers.

Sunt multi qui quae turpia esse dubitārē nōn possunt utilitātīs specīe ducti
bent. Quint. There are many who, led on by the appearance of profit, approve what they cannot doubt to be base.
IV. Verbs of Fearing.

552. Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative.

The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

With Verbs of Fearing, nē, lest, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; ut (nē nōn) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared: nē nōn is used regularly after the negative.

**Timeo nē hostis veniat,** *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming that he will come.*
(I wish he may not come.)

**Timeo nē hostis vēnerit,** *I fear lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come.*

**Timeo ut amicus veniat,** *I fear lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come.*
(I wish he may come.)

**Timeo ut amicus vēnerit,** *I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.*

**Nōn timeo nē amicus nōn veniat,** *I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.*

**Nōn timeo nē amicus vēnerit,** *I do not fear that my friend has not come.*

**Vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam.** Cic. *I fear lest, with I wish to lessen the toil, I increase it (that I am increasing it).*

**Verēmur nē parum hic liber mellis et absinthii multitum habēre vidētur.** Quint. *I am afraid that this book will seem to have too little honey and (too) much wormwood.*

**Timeo ut sustineās labōrēs.** Cic. *I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.*

**Nōn vereor nē tua virtūs opiniōni hominum nōn respondeat.** Cic. *I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to (come up to) public expectation.*

**Metuo nē id consiliō cēperim quod nōn facile explicāre possim.** Cic. *I fear that I have formed a plan that I cannot readily explain.*
Unum illud extimēscēbam nē quid turpius facerem vel dicam jam essečisem. The only thing I feared was, lest I should act disgracefully, or, I should (rather) say, (lest) I had already acted disgracefully.

Remarks.—1. With the Infinitive, Verbs of Fear are Verbs of Will. So especially vereor, I fear. Vereor ĭē laudāre praeśentem. Cic. (424) (Vereor = praē timōre nōlo.)

2. Vide nē, see to it lest, is often used as a polite formula for dubito an (459, R.), and has the same sequences.

Vide nē plus prōfutūra sit ratio ordināria. Sen. See to it lest (I am inclined to think that) the ordinary method will be the more profitable.

CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

Sentences of Tendency and Result.

553. Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions. In Latin, Result is a mere inference from Tendency, though often an irresistible inference. In other words, the Latin language uses so as throughout, and not so that, although so that is often a convenient translation. The result is only implied, not stated.

554. Consecutive Sentences, or Sentences of Tendency and Result, have the Subjunctive mood. Consecutive Subjunctives are put in the Present or Perfect, Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense according to the rules for sequence.

The introductory particle is ut.

In the leading clause, demonstratives are often employed in correlation with ut, which is a relative.

The Relative is sometimes used, parallel with ut (632).

The Negative is ut nōn, sometimes after negatives quīm. When the notion of Design or Condition enters, nē is also found.

555. Consecutive Sentences are used after

1. Demonstratives,
2. Transitive and
3. Intransitive Verbs, and
4. Phrases,

all implying the creation or existence of conditions that tend to a result.

556. 1. Consecutive Sentences are largely used after Demonstratives expressed or implied.

Tanta vis probitātis est, ut eam in hoste etiam diligāmus. Cic. So great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy.
Nēmo tam timidus est ut mālit semper pendēre quam semel cadere. Sen. No one is so timid as to prefer to be hanging always than to fall once (for all).

Neque mē vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vixi ut nōn frūstrā mē nātum existimem. Cic. (540.)

Nōn is es ut tē pudor unquam ā turpitūdine revocārit. Cic. You are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (= ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness.

Nēmo adeō ferus est ut nōn mitescere possit. Hor. No one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften.

After a negative quīn = ut nōn:

Nil tam difficile est quīn quaerendō investigāri possīt (possīt). Ter. Naught is so hard but it can (= that it cannot) be tracked out by search.

Nunquam tam maie est Siculis quīn aliquid facētē et commodē dicant. Cic. The Sicilians are never so badly off as not to (have) something or other clever and pat (to) say.

Remarks.—1. Notice especially tantum abest (Impers.) . . . ut . . . ut. The origin of the phrase is shown by

Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum alīud. Cic. So far is it from death (≠ so far is death from) being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.

Tantum abest ut nostrā mirēmur ut usque eō difficīlēs sumus ut nōbis nōn satisfaciāt ipse Dēmosthenēs. Cic. So far are we from admiring our own (compositions) that we are so hard to please that Demosthenēs himself fails to satisfy us.

The personal construction can be used when an abstract follows.

2. Dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy. aptus, idōneus, fit, take a consecutive sentence, but usually with qui, seldom with ut:

Digna fuit illa nātūra quae meliōra vellet. Quint. That nature was worthy of willing better things (≠ of better aims).

3. A consecutive sentence follows quam ut (Cic.) or quam quī:

Māior sum quām ut māncipium sim mēi corporīs. Sen. (313.)

Māior sum quām cui possīt Fortūna nocēre. Ov. (313.)

On the omission of ut with potius quam (priusquam), see 579, R.

4. Nē, lest, is sometimes irregularly used instead of ut nōn, especially when the idea of design or wish intrudes:

Ita mē gessī nē tībi pudōri essēm. Liv. I behaved myself so as not to be a disgrace to you.

5. Ita—ut (sometimes ut alone), so that, often serves to restrict and condition. The negative is often nē (comp. 554).

Ita probanda est manusētūdo ut adhibēatur reīpublicae causā severitās. Cic. Mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth.

Ita fruī volunt voluptātibus ut nullī propter eās dolorēs consequantur. Cic. They wish to enjoy pleasures without having any pain to ensure on account of them.

Pythagorās et Plato mortem ita laudant ut fugere vitam vetent. Cic. Pythagorēs and Plato so praise death that they, while they praise death, forbid fleeing from life.

Ita tū istaec tua miscēto nē mē admisceās. Ter. Mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal.
6. Ut non is often = without and the English verbal in -ing:

Octaviänus nunquam filiös suös populö commendævit ut non adicieret: Si merëuntur. Suev. Octavianus (Augustus) never recommended his sons to the people in such a way as not to add (= without adding): If they are worthy.

Qui non vèræ virtùtie studet certë mælet existimæri bonus vir ut non sit quam esse ut non putëtur. Cic. He who is not a true lover of virtue will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such).

After negatives quin = ut non. (550, R. 3.)

557. 2. Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is non or ne; the sequence, final.

Such verbs are facio, efficio, perficio, I make, effect, achieve; assequor, consequor, I attain, accomplish, and other verbs of Causation. Facere ut s often little more than a periphrasis.

Fortuna vestra facit ut fræ meae temperem. Liv. Your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger (put metes to my anger).

Invitus (324, R. 6) facio ut recorder ruinas reipublicae. Cic. (It is) against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.

Negatives:

Rærum obscûritas non verbörum facit ut non intelligatür orätio. Cic. It is the obscurity of the subject, not of the words, that causes the language not to be understood.

Potestis efficere ut male moriar, ne moriar non potestis. Plin. Ep. You may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot.

558. 3. Consecutive Sentences follow many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following, of Accident and Consequent:

Such verbs are fit, accidit, contingit, it happens, üsû venit, it occurs, coedét, there is added, sequitur, it follows. So also est, it is the case.

Fieri potest ut fallar. Cic. (It) may be (that) I am mistaken.

Potest fieri ut is unde té audíisse dicis irátus dixerit. Cic. (It) may be that he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger.

Persaepe evenit ut utilitáis cum honestáte certet. Cic. It very often happens that profit is at variance with honor.

Ad Appii Claudii senectútém accédébat etiam ut caecus esset. Cic. To the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind.

Remark.—Very common is the periphrasis fore (futurum) ut, which gives the common form of the Fut. Inf. See 240.

559. 4. Many abstract phrases are followed by consecutive sentences.
Such are: mos, consuetudo est, it is the way, the wont, opus, usus est, there is need, and the like. More rarely after adjectives such as aequum, justum, fair, just, and the like. So with the Genitive after esse.

The leading sentence is often a negative one to show the imaginary character of the result.

In all these relations the Accusative with the Inf. is more common.

Est mos hominum ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere. Cic. (546, R. 2.)
An cuiquam est usus homini se ut cruciet? Ter. (390, R.)
Dionysiō nē integrum quidem erat ut ad jūstitiam remigrāret. Cic.
Dionysius was not free even (if he had wished it) to return to justice.

Est miserorum ut malevolentēs sint atque invideant bonis. Plaut.
The wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-to-do.

Rarum (= rārō accidit) ut sit idoneus suae rei quisque defensor. Quint.
It is rare for a man to be a good defender of his own case.

Remark.—Necesse est, it is necessary, generally, and oportet, it behooves, always, omit ut:
Leuctrica pugna immorālis sit necesse est. Ner. The battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal.
Sed nōn effugīes; mēcum moriāris oportet. Pnor. But you shall not escape; you must die with me.

Exclamatory Questions.

560. Ut with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory Questions.

Egone ut tē interpellem? Cic. I interrupt you?
Tū ut unquam tē corrigās? Cic. You—ever reform yourself?

Remark.—The expression is closely parallel with the Accusative and Infinitive. The one objects to the idea; the other, to any state of things that could produce the result. In neither case is there any definite or conscious ellipsis.

Temporal Sentences.

561. The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations:

I. It may be antecedent:

Conjunctions: Postquam (Posteā quam), after that, after; ut, as; ubi, when (literally, where); simulac, as soon as; ut primum, cum primum, the first moment that.

II. It may be contemporaneous:
Conjunctions: *Dum*, *dōnec*, *while*, *until*; *quoad*, *up to* (the time) *that*; *quamdīū*, *as long as*; *cum*, *when*.

III. It may be subsequent:
Conjunctions: *Antequam*, *priusquam*, *before that*, *before*.

A special chapter is required by

IV. *Cum*, *when*.

Moods in Temporal Sentences.

562. 1. The mood of Temporal clauses is regularly the Indicative.

2. The Subjunctive is used only—
   1.) In *Orātio Obliqua* (509), Total or Partial. So also in the Ideal Second Person.
   2.) When the idea of Design or Condition is introduced.

I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

563. In historical narrative, Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *simulac*, *ut primum*, and *cum primum* commonly take the Historical Perfect or the Historical Present Indicative:

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

*Postquam Caesar pervēnīt, obsidēs poposcit.* Caes. *After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*

*Quae ubi nūntiantur Rōmam, senātus extemplō dictātōrem dīcī jussit.*

Liv. *When these tidings were carried to Rome, the senate forthwith ordered a dictator to be appointed.*

*Pompejus ut equitātum suum pulsūm vīdit, aciē excessit.* Caes. *As Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle.*

*Pelopidas nōn dubitāvit, simulac conspexit hostem, conffigere (551, R. 3.). Nep. As soon as he (had) caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage (him).*

Subjunctive in *Orātio Obliqua*:

*Ariovistum, ut semel Gallōrum copiās vīcerit (Ō. R. vīcit), superbē imperāre.* Caes. *"That Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly."*

Remark.—*Postquam* is rarely found with the Subjunctive outside of *ō*, *ō*.

564. The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).
ANTECEDENT ACTION.

The translation often indicates the spectator (294, R. 1).

Postquam nemo procéderere audébat, intrat. Curt. After (he found that) no one had the courage to come forth, he entered.

Ubi nemo obvius íbat, ad castra hostium tendunt. Liv. When (they saw that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.

Subjunctive in Órátió Obliqua:

Scripísti eum, postquam nón auderet (O. R. nón audébat) reprehendere, laudare coepisse. Cic. You wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise.

565. 1. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause; often of the Resulting Condition.

Albinus postquam décréverat nón égredi provinciá, milités statívís castrís habébat. Sall. After Albinus had fully determined not to depart from the province, he kept his soldiers in cantonments.

Posteáquam multitúdinem collégerat emblémátum, instituit officinam. Cic. After he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.

566. 2. The Pluperfect is used with postquam when a definite interval is mentioned.

Post and quam are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, post may be omitted.

Aristídes décessit fére post ánnum quartum quam Themístoclés Athénís erat expulsus. Nep. Aristides died about four years after Themistocles had been (was) banished from Athens.

Hamilcar nónô annô postquam in Hispániam vénérat occíus est. Nep. Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain.

Aristídes sextô fére annô quam erat expulsus in patriam restitútus est. Nep. Aristides was restored to his country about six years after he was exiled.

Subjunctive in Órátió Obliqua:

Scriptum à Posidónió est trígintâ annís vixisse Panaetium posteaquam librós dé officiis édídisset. Cic. It is recorded by Posidonius that Panaetius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties.

The attraction is sometimes neglected.

RemarK.—The Historical Perfect is also in frequent use:

Nero nátus est Antii post novem mensés quam Tiberius excessit. Suet. Nero was born at Antium nine months after Tiberius departed (this life).

On the Iterative Pluperfect, see below, 568.
567. **Postquam** and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causative signification (compare *quoniam, now that = since*):

*Cūria minūr mihi vidētur posteaquam est mājor.* Cic. *The senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is (really) greater.*

*Tremo horreōque post quam aspexi hanc.* Ter. *I quiver and shiver since I have seen her.*

So *cum* sometimes:

*Gratulor tibi cum tantum valēs.* Cic. *I wish you joy now that you have so much influence.*

**Iterative Action.**

568. **Rule I.**—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance:

*Humilēs labōrant ubi potentes dissident.* Phaedr. *The lowly suffer when the powerful disagree.*

*Populus mē sībilat; at mihi plaudo ipse domī simulac nummōs contemplor in arcā.* Hor. *The people hiss me; but I clap myself at home as soon as I gloat o'er my cash in the strong box.*

*Ut quisque maximē labōrābat locus aut ipse occurrēbat aut aliquōs mittēbat.* Liv. *As each point was hard pressed, he would either hasten to help himself or send some persons.*

The **Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person**:

*Bonus segnior fit ubi negligās.* Sall. *A good man becomes more sluggish when you neglect him.*

569. **Rule II.**—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect; the subsequent action, in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

As this use runs through all sentences involving antecedent action, all the classes are represented in the following examples:

**Remark.**—Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Comp. 236, R. 2.

*Quotīēs cecidit, surgit,* As often as he falls, he rises.

*Quotīēs ceciderat, surgēbat,* As often as he fell, he rose.

*Quotīēs ceciderit, surgēt,* As often as he falls, he will rise.

*Simul inflāvit tībicen ā perītō carmen āgnōscitur.* Cic. *As soon as the fluter blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur.*

*Alcibiadēs simulac sē remiserat, luxuriōsus reperiēbātur.* Nep. *As soon as Alcibiades relaxed, he was found a debauchee.*
Dociliōra sunt ingenia prius quam obdūrėrunt. Quint. Minds are more teachable before they (have) become hardened.

Ager quum multōs ānnōs requiēvit, überiōrēs efferre frūgēs solet. Cic. When a field has rested (rests) many years, it usually produces a more abundant crop.

Quum pālam ējus ānulī ad palmam converterat Gygēs, ā nullō vidēbātur. Cic. When (ever) Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward the palm (of his hand), he was to be seen by no one.

Sī pēs condoluit, sī dens, ferre nōn possumus. Cic. If a foot, if a tooth ache(s), we cannot endure it.

Stomachābātur senex, sī quid asperius dixeram. Cic. The old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that) was rather harsh.

Quod nōn dedit fortūna nōn ēripit. Sen. What fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.

Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et viderat [Themistoclēs]. Nep. Whatever Themistocles had heard and seen (= heard and saw) remained fixed in his memory.

Quī timēre désierint, ōdisse incipient. Tac. Those who cease to fear will begin to hate.

The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person:

Ubi consuluerīs, māturē factō opus est. Sall. When you have deliberated, you want speedy action.

The Subjunctive in Ōrātio Obliqua:

Cato mīrāri sē ājēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex haruspicem cum vīdisset. Cic. Cato said that he wondered that an haruspex did not laugh when he saw (another) haruspex. (Nōn ridet cum vidit.)

The Subjunctive by Attraction:

Rēte texunt arāneolae ut sī quid inhaeserit conficiant. Cic. (Sī quid inhaesit, conficiunt.)

Quāre fīēbat, ut omnium oculōs, quotiēscunque in públicum prōdisset, ad se converteret. Nep. (Quotiēscunque prōdierat, convertebāt.) (666)

Remark.—The Subjunctive (Imperf. and Pluperf.) is sometimes found in Iterative Sentences—chiefly after the Imperf. Ind. or some combination which shows Will, Habit, Expectation. The construction is best explained by Partial Obliquity (509, 3). It is found chiefly in later historians and in Nepos. The passages in Caesar are not numerous, and some are uncertain.

Incurrere ea gens in Macedoniam solita erat ubi rēgem occupātum externō bellō sensisset. Liv. That tribe was wont to make a raid in Macedonia whenever they perceived the king engrossed in foreign war.
Qui unum ejus ordinis offendisset omnēs adversōs habēbat. Liv. Whoso had offended one of that order was sure to have all against him.

Modum adhibendo ubi rēs posceret priōrēs erant. Liv. By the use of moderation, when the case demanded it, they were his superiors.


II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

570. Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are:

Dum, dō nec, while, so long as, until; quoad, up to (the time) that; quamdiū, as long as; cum, when.

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—so long as, while.

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—until.

REMARK.—Dum (while) yet, denotes duration, which may be coextensive, so long as, or not. It is often causal. Dō nec (old form dōnicum, of uncertain composition), parallel with dum in the sense, so long as, until. Cicero uses it only as until. Quam (cum) demands a separate treatment.

I. Contemporaneous in Extent.

(So long as, while.)

571. Dum, dō nec, quoad, quamdiū, so long as, while, take the Indicative of all the tenses.

Dum vītant stultī vitia in contrāria currunt. Hor. Fools, while they avoid (one set of) faults, run into the opposite.

Sibi vērō hanc laudem relinquunt, "Vixit, dum vixit, bene." Ter. They leave indeed this praise for themselves, "He lived well while he lived" (all the time).

Tiberius Gracchus tamdiū laudābitur dum memoria rērum Roma-nārum manēbit. Cíc. Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains (shall remain).

Fuit haec gens fortis dum Lycūrgi lēgēs vigēbant. Cíc. This nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.

Dō nec grātus eram tībī, Persārum vigūr rege beātior. Hor. While I was acceptable in your sight, I throve more blessed than Persia's king.

Quoad potuit, restitit. Cíc. As long as he could, he withstood.

Subjunctive in Ōrātio Obliqua:

[Regulus dixit] quamdiū jūre jūrandō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātōrem. Cíc. [Regulus said] that as long as he was bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a Senator. (Quamdiū teneor nōn sum senātor.)

Dum often resists the change. (658, R. 3.)
Subjunctive by Attraction:

_Vereor né, dum minuere velim, labórem augeam._ Cic. (552.) (Dum minuere _volo_, augeo.)

_Remark._—When the actions are coëxtensive, the tenses are generally the same in both members, but not always. _Dum_ with the Pluperf. Ind. is used of the Resulting condition. Liv. xxxii. 24.

572. _Dum_, while, while yet, commonly takes the Present Indicative after all Tenses: so especially in narrative.

*Cape hunc equum, dum tibi virium aliquid superest._ Liv. _Take this horse, while you have yet some little strength left._

*Dum haec Rómae aguntur, consules ambo in Liguribus gerébant bel-lum._ Liv. _While these things were going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria._

_Praetemissa éjus rei occásió est, dum in castellís recipiendís tempus terítur._ Liv. _The opportunity was allowed to slip by, while time was wasted in recovering miserable forts._

_Remark._—The relation is often causal, and the construction is parallel with the Present Participle, the lack of which in the Passive it supplies. Here the Present Ind. is simply a tense of continuance rather than an Hist. Present.

II. **Contemporaneous in Limit.**

(Until.)

573. _Dum_, donec, quoad, up to (the time) that, until, have the Present and Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative:

The Present is either an Historical Present, or looks forward to the Future.

*Tityre, dum redeó, brevis est via, pasce capelláss._ Verg. _Tityrus, while I am returning (= till I return)—the way is short—feed my kids._

_Epaminóndás ferrum in corpore usque eó retínuit, quoad renúntiá-tum est vícisse Boeótios._ Nep. _Epaminondas retained the iron in his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered._

_Donec redíit Marcellus, silentium fuit._ Liv. _Until Marcellus returned, there was silence._

_Haud désinam donec perfécero._ Ter. _I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished (it)._  

_Exspectábo dum venít._ Ter. _I will wait until he comes._

**Subjunctive in Órtatio Obliqua:**

_Scipióni Silánóque donec revocáti ab senátu forent prorogá tum imperium est._ Liv. _Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until "they should have been recalled by the senate."_
574. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until, take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved:

Verginius dum collēgam consuleret morātus est. Liv. Verginius delayed until he could (long enough to) consult his colleague.

At tībi sit tantī nōn indulgēre theātrīs, dum bene dē vacuō pectore cēdat amor. Ov. But let it be worth the cost to you (= deem it worth the cost) not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from (your) untenanted bosom.

Often with exspectō, I wait:

Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat amnis. Hor. The clown waits for the river to run off (dry).

Also: exspectāre ut, sī (never Infinitive), 462, 2.

 Remark.—The Subjunctive is sometimes used in narrative with dūm, while, and dōnec, while, until, to express subordination (like cum, 583). The principle is that of Partial Obliquity. There is often a Causal or Iterative sense.

Dum intentus in eum se rēx tōtus āverteret, alter ēlātam secūrim in caput dējēcit. Liv. While the king fixed upon him was quite turned away, the other raised his axe and planted it in his skull. (Āverteret from the point of view of alter = dum videt āvertentem.)

575. Dum, with the Subjunctive, is used in Conditional Wishes: Negative, dūm nē = nē interīm.

Oderint dum metuānt. Attrius. Let them hate so long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear).

Dumnē ob malefactiva peream parvī [id] aemînî. Plaut. (379.)
So also dummodo, modo, provided only, only:

Dummodo mōrāta rectē veniat, dōtāta est satis. Plaut. Provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed (= her dowry is) enough.

Multa [in eō] admiranda sunt: ōligere modo cūrae sit. Quint. Many things in him are to be admired; only you must be careful to choose.

Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tuī. Ov. (429, R. 1.)

III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

Antequam and Priusquam with the Indicative.

576. Antequam and priusquam, before, take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact.

 Remark.—The present is used in anticipation of the future. The elements ante, anteā, prius—quam, are often separated.
577. The Present Indicative is used after Positive Sentences:

Antequam ad sententiam redeo, dē me pauca dicam. Cɪc. Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.

Omnia experiri certum est priusquam pereo. Tᴇr. I am determined to try everything before I perish. (Priusquam peream = sooner than perish, to keep from perishing.)

Remark.—The Pure Perfect Indicative is used of Iterative Action. (569.)

Dociliōra sunt ingeniā priusquam obdāruērunt. Qᴜɪɴᴛ. The Present Subjunctive is more common in general statements.

578. The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used, especially after Negative Sentences. After Positive Sentences there is no necessary connection.

Lēgātī nōn ante profectī quam impositōs in nāvēs miliētēs vidērunt. Lɪv. The envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board.

Neque dēfatigābōr antequam illōrum viās ratiōnēsque percēpero, et prō omnibus et contrā omnia disputandī. Cɪc. I will not let myself grow weary before (until) I learn (shall have learned) their methods of disputing for and against everything.

Subjunctive in Ōrātīō Obliqua:

Themistoclēs colleiīs suis praedīxit, ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Nᴇᴘ. (546.) (Nēlīte dīmīterē priusquam ego ero remissus.)

Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.

579. Antequam and priusquam are used with the Subjunctive when an ideal limit is given; when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate.

An ideal limit involves necessary antecedence, but not necessary consequence. After Positive sentences, the Subjunctive is the rule, especially in Generic sentences and in narrative. (Compare curs, 585.) The Subjunctive is absolutely necessary when the action does not, or is not to, take place.

The translation is often before, and the verbal in -ing.

Ante vidēmus fulgūrātiōnem quam sonum audiāmus. Sᴇn. We see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound (we may never hear it).

In omnibus nēgōtīs priusquam aggrediāre adhibēnda est praeparātiō diligens. Cɪc. In all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make use of careful preparation. (Ideal Second Person.)
Collem celeriter priusquam ab adversāris sentiātur commūnit. Caes. He speedily fortified the hill before he was perceived by the enemy (too soon to be perceived by the enemy). \( \text{Prius quam} = \text{prius quam ut} \)

Hannibal omnia priusquam excederet pugnā erat expertus. Liv. Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight ( = to avoid withdrawing from the fight).

Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis prius quam ref pūblicae prōdesse potuisset extincta fuit. Cic. Often hath great native worth been extinguished before it could be of service to the State.

Ducentis ānnīs antequam urbem Rōmam caperent in Italiam Gallī dēscendērunt. Liv. (It was) two hundred years before their taking Rome (that) the Gauls came down into Italy.

Here the Subjunctive gives the natural point of reference.

After the Negative:

Inde nōn prius ēgressus est quam (nōn priusquam = dōnec) rēx eum in fīdem recipēret. Nep. He did not go away until the king took him under his protection. (He stayed to make the king take him under his protection.)

RemarK.—When the will is involved, potius quam is used in the same way as prius quam.

Dépugnā potius quam serviās. Cic. Fight it out rather than be a slave.

IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUUM).

580. Cum is a relative conjunction, and stands nearer to the Ablative than to the Accusative in signification, perhaps also in form (quo(fī)m). Cum is the classic spelling, as well as the classic pronunciation.

581. There are three great uses of cum:

I. Temporal cum (when—then) takes the Indicative;

II. Historical cum, as, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive;

III. 1. Causal cum, as, since; and

2. Concessive cum, whereas, although, takes the Subjunctive.

I. Cum vēr appetit, militēs ex hibernīs movēnt, When spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.

II. Cum vēr appeteret, Hannibāl ex hibernīs mōvīt, As spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.

III. 1. Cum vēr appetat, ex hibernīs movendum est, As (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.
III. 2. Cum vēr appeteret, tamen hostēs ex hibernis nōn mōvērunt, Whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.

Remark.—So called cum inversum (cum in the apodosis) is as natural in English as in Latin:

Jam vēr appetēbat, cum Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit. Liv. Spring was (already) approaching, when Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.
According to 581, I., it is, of course, put in the Indicative.

I. Temporal Cum.

582. Cum, when, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative, to designate merely temporal relations.

In the Principal clause, a temporal adverb or temporal expression is frequently employed, such as tum, tunc, then; nunc, now; diēs, day; tempus, time; jam, already; vix, scarcely; and the like.

Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret. Cic. The soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs.

Sex librōs tunc dē Rēpublicā scripsimus cum gubernācula reıpūblicae tenēbamus. Cic. I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State.

Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūrio maerens jacēbat in lectō. Cic. Remember the time when Curio the father lay abed from grief.

Longum illud tempus cum nōn ero magis mē movet quam hōo exiguum. Cic. That long time (to come), when I shall not exist, has more effect on me than this scant (present time).

Jam dilūcescēbat cum signum consul dedit. Liv. By this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consil gave the signal. (See 580, R.)

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive:
Pater, homīnīs immortālis est infāmia. Etiam tum vivit cum esse crēdās mortuam. Plaut. Father, immortal is the ill-fame of the world. I lives on even when you think that it is dead.

Remarks.—1. Fuit cum commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (633), and takes the Subjunctive:

Fuit tempus cum (=fuit cum) rūra coherent homīnēs. Varro. There was a time when mankind lived in the country.
The Indicative is rare.

2. Memini cum, I remember the time when, takes the Indicative; but audire cum takes the Subjunctive parallel with the Participle:

Audīvi Mētrōdōrum cum dē his ipsīs disputāret. Cic. I have heard Metrodorus discuss(ing) these very matters.

3. Peculiar is the use of cum with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated a Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative:

Multi anni sunt cum (= multōs annōs) in aere mēō est. (It is) many years (that he has been (221) in my debt.
583. Coincident Action.—When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, *cum* is almost equivalent to its kindred relative *quod*, *in that*:

_Cum tacent, clãmânt._ Cic. *When (= in that) they are silent, they cry aloud.*

*Dixi omnia cum hominem nõominâvi._ Plin. Ep. *I have said everything, in naming the man.*

584. Conditional use of *Cum.*—*Cum* with the Future, Future Perfect, or Universal Present, is often almost equivalent to _si_ , _if_, with which it is sometimes interchanged:

_Cum posscis, posce Latinë._ Juv. *When (If) you ask (for anything), ask in Latin.*

_Cum veniet contrâ, digitô compesce labellum._ Juv. *When (If) he meets you, padlock your lip with your finger.*

585. Iterative use of *Cum.*—*Cum* in the sense of _quotiès, as often as_, takes the Tenses of Iterative Action:

_Solet cum sé purgat in mé conferre omnem culpam._ Cic. *He is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me.*

_Ager cum multôs annôs requievit überiôrôs efferre frûgês solet._ Cic. *Ager cum multôs annôs requievit überiôrôs efferre frûgês solet._

_Cum pâlam ëjus ánuli ad palmam converterat Gýgês à nullô vidêbâtur._ Cic. (569.)

**Remark.**—The Subjunctive is also found (569, R.):

_Cum in jús dúcî débitôrem vidíssent, undique convolábant._ Liv. *Whenever they saw a debtor taken to court, they made it a rule to hurry together from all quarters.*

II. Historical *Cum.*

586. *Cum*, _when (as)_ , is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action.

**Remark.**—The subordinate clause generally precedes, and often indicates Causal as well as Temporal relation. The Subjunctive in some cases seems to be due to the Latin tendency to express inner connection (evolution) by the Subjunctive. In the absence of participles, *cum* with the Subjunctive is a parallel construction.
Agesilaus cum ex Aegyptō reverteretur dēcessit. Nep. Agesilaus died as he was returning from Egypt.

Zenōnem cum Athēnēs essem audiēbam frequenter. Cic. When I was (Being) at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently.

Atheniensēs cum statuerent ut nāvēs conscenderent, Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent, lapidibus coöperuērunt. Cic. (546.)

Cum Caesar Ancōnām occupāset, urbem reliquimus. Cic. When (As) Caesar had occupied Ancona (Caesar having occupied Ancona), I left the city.

Attalus moritur alterō et septuāgēsimō annō, cum quattuor et quadrāgintā annōs regnāset. Liv. Attalus died in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.

III. Causal and Concessive Cum.


587. Cum, when, whereas, since, seeing that, with the Subjunctive, is used to denote the reason, and occasionally the motive, of an action:

Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe nōn sit. Cic. Since these things are so, it is made out (proved) that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable.

Cum Athēnās tanquam ad mercātūram bonārum artium sis profectus, ināem redire turpissimum est. Cic. As (Since) you set out for Athens as if to market for good qualities, it would be utterly disgraceful to return empty (handed).

Dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Nep. He had to fight by stratagem, as he (seeing that he) was not a match in arms.

Remark.—The Subjunctive is used because the relation is a mere conception (characteristic); that it is a mere conception is emphasized by quīppe and utpote, as in the relative sentence.

On the occasional use of cum with the Ind. in a causal sense, see 567. Oftener in earlier Latin


588. Causal cum, whereas, becomes Concessive cum, whereas, although, when the cause is not sufficient: the relation is often adversative.

Nihil mē adjūvit cum posset. Cic. He gave me no assistance, although (at a time when) he had it in his power.

Cum prīmi ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrīmē reliquī re
sistebant. Caes. Although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen (been cut to pieces), nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously.

Perire artem putāmus nisi appāret, cum désinat ars esse, sī appāret. Quint. We think that (our) art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases to be art if it shows.

589. Cum—tum.—When cum, when, tum, then (both—and especially), have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative:

Pausanīās consilia cum patriae tum sibi inimīca capiēbat. Nep. Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.

When they have different verbs, the verb with cum may be in the Subjunctive, which often has a concessive force:

Sisennae historia cum facile omnēs superiōrēs vincat, tum indicat tamen quantum absit ā summō. Cic. Although the history of Sisenna easily surpasses all former histories, yet it shows how far it is from the highest (mark).

Conditional Sentences.

590. In Conditional sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the Protasis, that which contains the consequence is called the Apodosis.

Logically, Protasis is Premiss; and Apodosis, Conclusion.

Grammatically, the Apodosis is the Principal, the Protasis the Dependent, clause.

591. Sign of the Conditional.—The common conditional particle is sī, if.

Remarks.—1. Sī is a locative case, literally so, in those circumstances (comp. sī-c, so).

So in English: “I would by combat make her good, so were I a man.”—Shakesp.

Hence, Conditional clauses with sī may be regarded as adverbs in the Ablative case, and are often actually represented by the Ablative Absolute.

2. The connection with the Causal Sentence is shown by sī quidem, which in later Latin is almost = quoniam.

3. The temporal particles cum and quando, when, and the locative ubi, are also used to indicate conditional relations in which the idea of Time or Space is involved.

592. Negative of sī.—The negative of sī is either sī nōn or nisi.

Sī nōn negatives a particular word, if not; nisi, unless, negatives the whole idea—restricts, excepts.

Sī nōn is the rule—
1. When the positive of the same verb precedes:

Sí fécérís, magnam habēbo grātiam; sí nōn fécérís, ignōscam. Cic. If you do it, I will be very grateful to you; if you do not, I will forgive (you).

2. When the Condition is concessive:

Sí mihi bonā républicā frūi nōn licuerit, at carēbo malā. Cic. If I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.

Nisi is in favorite use after negatives:

Parvī (= nihilī) sunt forīs arma nisi est consilium domī. Cic. Of little (value) are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.

Nōn possem vivere nisi in litterīs vīverem. Cic. I could not live unless I lived in study.

Memoria minuitur nisi eam exercēās. Cic. Memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it. (Sī nōn exercēās, in case you fail to exercise it.)

So nisi sī, except in case:

Miserōs illūdī nōlunt homīnēs nisi sī sē forte jactant. Cic. Men do not like to have the unfortunate mocked unless (except in case) they happen to swagger.

Remarks.—1. Sometimes the difference is unessential:

Nisi Cūrio fuisset, hodie tē muscae comēdissent. Quint. If it had not been for Curio, the flies would have eaten you up this day. Sī nōn fuisset would be equally correct.

2. Nisi and nisi sī are often used after negative sentences or equivalents in the signification of but, except, besides, only:

Inspice quid portem; nihil hē nisi triste vidēbis, Ov. Examine what I am bringing; you will see nothing here except (what is) bad.

Falsus honor juvat et mendāx infāmē terret, quem nisi mendācem et mendōsum? Hor. “False honor charms and lying slander scares, whom but the false and faulty?”—BROUGHAM.

3. Nisi quod introduces an actual limitation—with the exception, that:

Nihil acciderat [Polycrati] quod nōllet nisi quod ānulum quō délectābatur in marī abjēcerat. Cic. Nothing had happened to Polycrates that he could not have wished, except that he had thrown into the sea a ring in which he took delight (= a favorite ring). So praeterea quod.


4. Nisi forte, unless perhaps, nisi vērō, unless indeed, with the Indicative, either limits a previous statement, or makes an ironical concession:

Nēmo ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insānit. Cic. There is scarce any one that dances (when) sober, unless perhaps he is cracked.

Licet honestā morte dēfungi, nisi forte satius est victōris exspectāre arbi
trium. Curt. We are free to die an honorable death, unless perhaps it is better to await the pleasure of the conqueror.

5. Nī is antiquated or poetical, and is equivalent to sī nōn:

Nī pārēre velīs, pereundum erit ante lucērnās. Juv. (532, R. 3.)

So in oaths, promīses, and the like:

Peream nī piscem putāvī esse. Varro. May I die if I did not think it was a fish.
593. Two Conditions excluding each the other.—When two conditions exclude each the other, si is used for the first; sin, if not (but if), for the second.

Sin is further strengthened by autem, but; minus, less (not); secus, otherwise; aliter, else:

Mercâtûra, si tenuis est, sordida putanda est; sin magna et cûpîosâ, nûn est admodum vituperanda. Cic. Mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty (work); if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with much.

Remark.—If the Verb or Predicate is to be supplied from the context, si minus, if less (not), sin minus, sin aliter, if otherwise, are commonly used, rarely si nûn:

Éduc têcûm omnês tuôs; si minus, quam plurîmôs. Cic. Take out with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible.

Öero si poterô; si nûn, invitus amâbo. Ov. (234, R. 2.)

594. Other Forms of the Protasis.—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative:

Qui vidêret urbem captam diceret. Cic. Whoso had seen it, had said that the city was taken.

Mîrârêtur qui tum cerneret. Liv. (252.)

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle:

Si latet ars, prôdest; affert déprensa pudôrem. Ov. If art is concealed, it does good; (if) detected, it brings shame.

Maximâs virtûtès jacère omnês nesse est voluptâté dominante. Cic. All the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.

Nihil potest âvenîre nisi causâ antecedenté. Cic. Nothing can happen, unless a cause precede.

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier:

Fécêrunt servî Milônis quod suôs quisque servôs in tâli rê facere voluisset. Cic. The servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case (si quid tâle accidisset).

At bene nûn poterat sine pûrô pectore vîvî. Lucr. But there could be no good living without a clean heart (nisi pûrum pectus esset).

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative:

Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dolôris. Ov. (542.)
Cēdit amor rēbus: rēs age, tūtus eris. Ov. Love yields to business; do business (if you plunge into business), you will be safe.

Immutā verbōrum collocātiōnem, perierit tōta rēs. Cic. (236, R. 4.)

595. Correlatives of Si.—The correlatives of Si are: Sic, so; ita, thus; but they are commonly not expressed. Occasionally tum, then; and ea condicio, on those terms, are employed.

Dē frūmentō responsum est ita āsūrum eō populum Rōmānum, si pretium acciperent. Liv. In the matter of the corn, answer was made that the Roman people would avail themselves of it, on condition that they accepted the value.

CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

596. Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis:

I. Logical Conditional Sentences: Si, with the Indicative.
II. Ideal Conditional Sentences: Si, with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.
III. Unreal Conditional Sentences: Si, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

I. LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

597. The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the elements in question, according to the formula:

If this is so, then that is so; if this is not so, then that is not so.

It may be compared with the Indicative Question.

The Protasis is in the Indicative; the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used.

* In some grammars of Greek and Latin, conditional sentences, and sentences involving conditional relations, have been divided into particular and general. Whether a condition be particular or general depends simply on the character of the Apodosis. Any form of the Conditional Sentence may be general, if it implies a rule of action. The forms for Iterative action have been given. (568, 569.)
LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Protasis.
Si id crēdis,
If you believe that,
Si id crēdēbās,
If you believed that,
Si id crēdidistī,
If you (have) believed that,
Si id crēdēs,
If you (shall) believe that,
Si id crēdideris,
If you (shall have) believe(d) that,
Si quid crēdidistī,
If you have believed anything
(= when you believe anything),
Si quid crēdiderās,
If you had believed anything
(= when you believed anything),

Apodosis.
errās,
you are going wrong.
errābās,
you were going wrong.
errāstī,
you have gone (you went) wrong.
errābis,
you will (be) going (wrong) ; (234, R. S).
errāveris,
you will have gone (will go) wrong.
errās,
you go wrong. Comp. 569.
errābās,
you went wrong.

Si spiritum dūcit, vīvit. Cic. If he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living.

Parvī sunt forīs arma nisi est consilium domī. Cic. (412, R. 1.)
Si occīdī, rectē fēcī; sed nōn occīdī. Quint. If I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him.

Nātūram si sequēmur ducem, nunquam aberrābimus. Cic. If we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray.

Improbōs si meus consultās sustulerit, multa saecla propāgārit rei publicae. Cic. If my consulship shall have done away with the destructives, it will have added many ages to the life of the State.

Si pēs condoluit, si dens, ferre nōn possimus. Cic. (569.)

Stomachābātur senex, si quid asperius dixeram. Cic. (569.)

Vivam, si vīvet; si cadet illa, cadam. Prop. Let me live, if she lives; if she falls, let me fall.

Nunc si forte potes, sed nōn potes, optima conjux, finitīs gaudē tot mihi morte malīs. Ov. Now, if haply you can, but you cannot, noble wife, rejoice that so many evils have been finished for me by death.

Flectere si nequeō superōs, Acheronta movēbō. Verg. If I can’t bend the gods above, I’ll rouse (all) hell below.

Si tot exempla virtūtis non movent, nihil unquam movēbit; si tanta clādēs vīlem vitam nōn fēcit, nulla faciet. Liv. If so many examples of valor stir you not, nothing will ever do it; if so great a disaster has not made life cheap, none ever will.

Dēsinēs timēre si spērāre désieris. Sen. You will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope.

Remarks.—1. After a Verb of Saying or Thinking (Orātio Obliqua), the Protasis must be put in the Subjunctive, according to the rule.
II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

598. The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The supposition is more or less fanciful, and no real test is to be applied. There is often a wish for or against.

The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person.

On the difference between Subjunctive and Future, see (27.)

**Protasis.**

1. If you should (prove to) have believed that,
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës,} \)
   
   you would be going wrong.
   
   \( \text{id} \),
   
   you would (have) go(ne) wrong.
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
   
   \( \text{Si \ id \ cr\ëd\ës (rare),} \)
UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Si vièñus tuus equum meliòrem habet quam tuus est, tuumne equum mális an illius? Cic. If your neighbor (were to) have a better horse than yours is, would you prefer your horse or his?

Si gladium quis apud tè sàna mente déposuerit, repetat insàniens, reddere peccâtum sit, officium nón reddere. Cic. If a man in sound mind were to deposit (to have deposited) a sword with you (and), reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it.

Si nunc mè suspendam meam operam lùserim, et meis inimícis volup-tàtem çráèverim. Plaut. Should I hang myself now, I should (thereby) (have) fool(ed) my work away, and give(n) to my enemies a charming treat.

Ut reedant veterès: Cicerònì nèmo ducentòs nunc dederit nummòs nisi fulserit ánulus ingens. Juv. Let the ancients return: no one would give Cicero now-a-days two hundred two-pences unless a huge ring glittered (on his hand).

Si is dèstituat, nihil satìs tútum habèbis. Liv. Should he leave us in the lurch, you will find no safety.

Si valeant hominès, ars tua, Phoebe, jacet. Ov. Should men keep well, your art, Phoebe, is naught.

Óti si tollás, perière Cupídinis arcús. Ov. (155, R. 6.)

Si vèrum excutiàs, faciès nón uxor amatür. Juv. If you (were to) get out the truth, it is the face, not the wife, that is loved.

Nulla est excúsátio peccátì, sì amici causà peccáverís. Cic. It is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend.

REMARKS.—1. The Potential of the Past coincides in form with the Unreal of the Present. (Comp. 252, R. 2.) Clear examples of definite persons are rare. Hon. Sat. I. 3, 5.

Of indefinite persons: Miràretur quì tum cernèret. Liv. (252.)

So. Erat Quinctius, si cèderès, plàcàbilis. Liv. Quinctius was, if you yielded to him, (sure to be) placable. (Est si cèdàs.)

Si luxuriae temperàret, avùritiam nòn timèrè. Tac. If he were to control his love of pleasure, you should not have feared avarice. (Si temperet, nón timeas.)

2. The lively fancy of the Roman often employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. (Comp. 248, R. 2.)

Tù si hic sìs, alìter sentiàs. Ter. If I were I (Put yourself in my place), you would think differently.

Haec si tècum patria loquàtur, nònne impertràre débeat? Cic. If your country should (were to) speak thus with you, ought she not to get (what she wants)?

In comparing Ideal and Unreal Conditionals, be careful to exclude all forms of future verbs, such as posse, to be able; velle, to wish, and the like.

Sometimes the conception shifts in the course of a long sentence:

Si reviviscant et tècum loquantur—quid tèlibus virìs respondentès? Cic. If they should come to life again, and speak with you—what answer would you make to such men?

3. In Òràtio Obliqua the difference between Ideal and Logical Future is necessarily effaced, so far as the mood is concerned. (659.)

III. UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

599. The Unreal Conditional sentence is used of that which is Unfulfilled or Impossible, and is expressed by the Imperfect
Subjunctive for continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present; and by the Pluperfect Subjunctive—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

The notion of Impossibility comes from the irreversible character of the Past Tense. Compare the Periphrastic Future Perfect and Imperfect. Any action that is decided is considered Past. (Comp. 266, R. 3.)

**Protasis.**

Si id crēderēs,

If you believed (were believing) that, [you do not,]

Si id crēdidiussēs,

If you had believed that, [you did not,]

Sapientia nōn expeterētūr, si nihil efficeret. Cic. Wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good.

Caederem tē, nisi frāserēr. Sen. I should flog you, if I were not getting angry.

Si ībi tē esse scīssēm, ad tē ipse vēnissem. Cic. If I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself.

Hectora quis nōsset, si fēlix Trōja fuisset. Ov. Who would know (of) Hector, if Troy had been happy?

Nisi ante Rōmā praecoptus essēs, nunc eam certē relinquerēs. Cic. If you had not departed from Rome before, you would certainly leave it now.

Ego nisi peperīssēm, Rōmā nōn oppugnārētūr; nisi filium habērem, libera in liberā patriā mortua esse. Liv. Had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.

**Apodosis.**

errāēs,

you would be going wrong.

errāvissēs,

you would have gone wrong.

Remark.—1. The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used in opposition to continuance in the Past. This is necessarily the case when the Protasis is in the Imperfect, and the Apodosis in the Pluperfect, except when the Imperfect denotes opposition to a general statement, which holds good both for Past and for Present:

Nōn tam facile opēs Carthaginis tantae condidissent. nisi Sicilia classibus nostrīs patēret. Cic. The great resources of Carthage (Carthage with her great resources) would not have fallen so readily, if Sicily had not been open to our fleets.

Si pudōrem habērēs, ultimam mihi pensiōnem mihi remissēs. Sen. If you had (i.e. you had not, as you have not) any delicacy, you would have let me off from the last payment.

Memoriam ipsam cum vōce perdidissēmus. si tam in nostrā potestāte esse obliviscī quam tacēre. Tac. We should have lost memory itself, together with utterance, if it were as much in our power to forget as to keep silent.

The Imperfect in both members is rare:

Si Protogenēs Ialysum illum suum caenōblūtum vidēret. magnum. crēdo: at ciperet dolōrem. Cic. If Protogenes had seen that famous Ialyrus of his besmeared with mud, he would have felt a mighty pang.

Perhaps this may be regarded as a form of Repraesentātio. (657, R.)

2. In Unreal Conditions, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Imperfect Indicative, when the action is represented as interrupted (224); by the Pluperfect and Historical Perfect, when the conclusion is confidently anticipated. (246, R. 3.)
LABEBAR LONGUS. NISI MĪ RETINUÍSSEM. CIC. (246, R. 3.)
Omnīnō erat supervacua doctrīna. sī nātūra suffōceret. QUINT.
Peractum erat bellum, sī Pompejum opprimere Brundusīf potuisset. FLOR.
The war was (had been) finished, if he had been able to crush Pompey at Brundusium.
The Imperfect Indicative is sometimes found in the Protasis:
IPSAM TIBI EPİSTOLAM MISISSEM, NISI TAM SUBITO FRĀTRIS PUER PROFICICOEBĀTUR. CIC. I should have sent you the letter itself, if my brother’s servant was not starting so suddenly.
3. The Indicative is the regular construction with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the Active and Passive Periphrastic—vīx. paene, scarcely, hardly, and the like.
Consul esse quī potuī, nisi eum vītae cursum tenuīssem? CIC. How could I have been consul, if I had not kept that course of life?
Antōnī potuit gladiōs contemnere, sī sic omnia dīxisset. JCV. He might have despised Antony’s swords, if he had thus said all (that he did say).
Emendātūrus, sī licuisset, eram. OV. I should have removed the faults, if I had been free (to do it).
In bona ventūrus, sī paterēre (R. 1.) fuit. OV. He would have come into (my) property, if you had permitted it.
Pons iter paene hostibus dedit (paene dedit = dabat = datūrus erat.) nī ānus vir fuisset. LIV. The bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man.
4. In ĒRATĪO OBĪQUA, the Protasis is unchanged; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Future Active, with esse and fuisse for the Active, futūrum (fore) ut, futūrum fuisse ut for Passive and Supineless Verbs.
   A. Dico (dīxi), tē, sī id crēdērēs, errātūrum esse.
   B. Dico (dīxi), tē, sī id crēdīdīssēs, errātūrum fuisse.
   A. Dico (dīxi), sī id crēdērēs, forē ut dēcipērēris.
   B. DICO (dīxī), sī id crēdīdīssēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēcipērēris.
A is very rare; A theoretical. For the long form, B. the simple Perfect Infinitive is found. Examples, see 662, R.
5. When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjunctive, the Pluperfect is turned into the Periphrastic Perfect Subjunctive; the Imperfect form is unchanged.
Nōn dubito. quīn, sī id crēdērēs, errārēs.
I do not doubt. that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.
Nōn dubītabam, quīn, sī id crēdīdīssēs, errātūrus fuerīs.
I did not doubt. that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.
Honestum tāle est ut, vel sī ignōrārent id homīnēs, esset laudābile. CIC. Virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it.
Nec dubium erat quīn, sī tam pauci simul obīre omnia possent, terga datūri hostēs fuerint. LIV. There was no doubt that, if it had been possible for so small a number to have managed every thing at the same time, the enemy would have turned their backs.
Dico quidnam factūrus fuerīs, sī eō tempore censor fuisse? LIV. Tell (me) what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time?
Adēo inopīs coactus est Hannibāl, ut, nisi tum fugae specīm abundō timuisset, Gālliam repetītūrus fuerit. LIV. Hannibal was so hard pressed by want of provisions, that, had he not at the time feared (presenting) the appearance of flight by retreating, he would have gone back to Gaul.
The Periphrastic Pluperfect Subjunctive occurs rarely, and then only in the Depend-
cent Interrogative.
Potui (246. R.1) commonly becomes potuerim, and the Periphrastic Passive with fui becomes fuerim:
Haud dubium fuit quin, nisi ea mora interventisset, castra eō die Punicacapt potuerint. Liv. There was no doubt that, had not that delay interfered, the Punic camp could have been taken on that day.

The Passive Conditional is unchanged:

Id ille sī repudiāsset, dubitātis quīn eī vis esset allāta? Cic. If he had rejected that, do you doubt that force would have been brought (to bear) on him?

The active form is rarely unchanged. (Liv. II. 33.) In the absence of the periphrastic tense use potuerim.

INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

600. Omission of the Conditional Sign.—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign:

An ille mihi (351) liber, cui mulier imperat? poscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum; ējicit, abeundum; minātur, extimescendum. Cic. Or is he free (tell), me, to whom a woman gives orders? she asks, he must give; she calls, he must come; she turns out (of door), he must go; she threatens, he must be frightened.

Unum cognōris, omnēs nōris. Ter. You know one, you know all.

Dedissēs huīc animō pār corpus, fēcisset quod optābat. Plin. Ep. Had you given him a body that was a match for his spirit, he would have accomplished what he desired.

601. Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.—When the Verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis:

Si quisquam, Cato sapiens fuit = Si quisquam fuit. Cic. If any one was wise, Cato was.

602. Total Omission of the Protasis.—The Protasis is often contained in a Participle or involved in the context (594, 2).

The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes mechanically explained by the omission of an indefinite Protasis. See 252, R. 1

Nimiō plūs quam velim Volscōrum ingeniā sunt mōbilīa. Liv. The dispositions of the Volsci are (too) much more unstable than I should like (if I had my way, if I could manage it, or what not).

Velim sīc existimēs. Cic. I should like you to think so. (Utinam existimēs !)

Tam félix essēs quam formōssissima vellem. Ov. (316). (Utinam essēs, The impossibility of definite ellipsis constitutes the Modality.
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

603. *Omission of the Apodosis.*—The Apodosis is omitted in *Wishes*, in conformity with the vague character of the expression, which is poetical. See 254 and R. 1.

O mihi praeteritōs referat sī Jūppiter Annōs. Verg. (254.)

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

604. The Apodosis is omitted in comparisons with *ut sī*, *velut sī*, *ac sī*, *quam sī*, *tanquam sī*, *quasi*, or simply *velut* and *tanquam*, *as if*.

The verb is to be supplied from the Protasis, as is common in correlative sentences.

The Mood is the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary use of the conditional. In English, the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

*Nōli timēre quasi [≡quam timeās sī] assem elephantō dēs. Quint.*

Don't be afraid, *as if* you were giving a penny to an elephant.

Parvī primō ortū sīc jacent tanquam [*≡jaceant sī*] omnīnō sine animō sint. Cic. Babies, when first born, *lie* (there), *as if* they had no mind at all.

Hic est obstandum, militēs, velut sī ante Rōmāna moenia pugnēmus. Liv. *Here* (is where) *we must oppose* them, soldiers, *as if we were fighting before the walls of Rome* (*velut obstēmus, sī pugnēmus*, *as we would oppose them, if we were to fight*).

Mē juvāt, velut ipse in parte labōris ac periculi fuerim, ad finem bellī Pūnicī pervēnisse. Liv. *I am delighted* to have reached the end of the Punic war, *as if* I had shared in the toil and danger (of it).

Suspectus tanquam ipse suās incenderit aedēs. Juv. *Suspected as if he had* (of having) set his own house on fire.

Tantus patrēs metus cēpit velut sī jam ad portās hostis esset. Liv. *A great fear took hold* of the senators, *as if the enemy were already at their gates*.

Dēlēta est Ausōnum gens perinde ac sī internecivō bellō certāsset. Liv. *The Ausonian race was blotted out, just as if it had engaged in an internecine war* (war to the knife).

Remarks.—1. Occasionally the sequence is violated out of regard to the Conditional:

Massiliensēs in eō honōre audīmus apud Rōmānōs esse ac sī medium umbilici Graeciae incoherent. Liv. *We hear that the people of Marseilles are in as high honor with the Romans as if they inhabited the mid-navel (= the heart) of Greece.*
2. As in the ordinary conditional sentence, so in the comparative sentence, the Protasis may be expressed by a Participle:

Galli laeti ut exploratā victoriā ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt. CAES. *The Gauss in their joy, as if (their) victory had been fully ascertained, proceeded to the camp of the Romans.*

Antiochus sēcūrus erat dē bellō Rōmānō tamquam nōn transitūris in Asiām Rōmānis. Liv. *Antiochus was as unconcerned about the war with Rome as if the Romans did not intend to cross over into Asia Minor.*

**Concessive Sentences.**

605. Concessive Sentences are introduced—
1. By the conditional Particles, etsi, etiamsi, tametsi.
2. By the Generic Relative, quamquam.
3. By the compounds, quamvis, quantumvis.
4. By the Verb licet.
5. By the Final Particles, ut (nē).
6. By quum (cum): all answering generally to the notion although.

Remarks.—Etsi (et + si), even if; etiamsi. even now if; tametsi. yet even if; quamquam. (quam + quam). to what extent soever; quamvis, to what extent you choose; quantumvis. to what amount you choose; licet. it is left free (perhaps intrans. of linquo. I leave).

606. Etsi, etiamsi, and tametsi, take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of si, if. The Indicative is more common, especially with etsi and etiamsi:

Dē futūris rēbus etsi semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum conjectūrā possis accēdere. Cic. *Although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing.*

Hamilcar etsi flagrābat bellandī cupidītāte, tamen pāci serviendum putāvit. Nep. *Although Hamilcar was on fire with the desire of war, nevertheless he thought that he ought to subserve (to work for) peace.*

Inops ille etiamsi referre grātiam nōn potest, habēre certē potest. Cic. *The needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it.*

Mē vēra prō grātis loqui, etsi meum ingeniūm nōn monēret, necessitātās cōgit. Liv. *Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak the truth instead of the smooth.*

Remark.—SI itself is often concessive, 592.

607. Quamquam, to what extent soever, falls under the head of generic relatives (246, R. 4), and, in the best authors, is constructed with the Indicative:
Medici quamvis intellegunt saepe, tamen nunquam ægris dicunt, illō morbō eōs esse moriturōs. Cic. Although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that disease.

Remarks.—1. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes found with quamvis: Quamquam exercitum qui in Volscis erat mālet, nihil recūsāvit. Liv. Although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection.

2. Quamquam is often used at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English, And yet, Although, However, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence; less frequently etsī, tametsī.

3. The Indicative, with etsī and quamquam, is, of course, liable to attraction into the Subjunctive in Ὄρατο Ὢβλίκα. (509.)

608. Quamvis follows the analogy of volō, I will, with which it is compounded, and takes the Subjunctive. Quantumvis and quamlibet (as conjunctions) belong to poetry and silver prose.

Quamvis sint sub aquā, sub aquā maledicere tentant. Ov. Although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile.

Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tū candidus essēs. Verg. Although he was black, although you were fair.

Vitā mentis, quantumvis exigua sint, in mājus excēdent. Sen. Mental ailments (= passions), no matter how slight they be, go on increasing.

Remarks.—1. In later Latin, quamvis and quamquam change parts:

Quamvis ingenīō nōn valet. arte valet. Ov. Although he does not tell by genius, he does tell by art.

In Tacitus, for instance, quamquam regularly has the Subjunctive.

2. The Verb in quamvis is sometimes inflected:

Quam velīt sit potens. nunquam impetrāvisset. Cic. No matter how powerful she may be, she would never have obtained it.

609. Licet retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive:

Licet irrīdeat sī qui vult. Cic. Let any one laugh who will.

Ardeat ipsa licet, tormentīs gaudēt amantis. Juv. Though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover.

Sim licet extrēmum, sīcūt sum, missus in orbem. Ov. Although I be sent, as I have been, to the end of the world.

Remarks.—1. Exceptions are extremely rare: Juv. xiii. 56.

2. Quantumvis is sometimes combined with licet.

610. Ut and né are also used concessively:

Ut désint virtēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās. Ov. Granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will.
Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est. Cic. Granted that
pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.

Remark.—Ut nōn can be used on the principle of the Specific Negative:
Hic diēs ultimus est; ut nōn sit, prope ab ultimō. Sen. This is your last day;
granted that it be not, it is near the last.
On ita—ut, see 255; on ut—ita, see 484, 2.

611. Concessive sentence represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

Risus interdum ita repente érumpit, ut eum cupiētēs tenēre nequeāmus. Cic. Laughter between whiles (occasionally) breaks out so suddenly that we cannot keep it down, although we desire to do so.
Multōrum tē oculī et aurēs nōn sentientem custōdient. Cic. (Of, many (the) eyes and ears will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not (without your perceiving it).

Quis Aristidem nōn mortuam diligit. Cic. Who does not love Aristides (though) dead?

Remark.—Later writers combine etsi, quanquam, or quamvis, with the Participle.
Caesarem milītēs quamvis recūsantem ultrō in Africam sunt secūti. Suet. The soldiers followed Caesar into Africa of their own motion, although he declined it.
With Adjectives quamvis is used even in the best writers:
Saepe bibi sūcōs quamvis invitus amārōs. Ov. I have often drunk bitter potions although against my will.

Relative Sentences.

612. The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.

Remarks.—1. The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation, may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction or the employment of an abstract noun:
Quae quum ita sint. Now since these things are so (Ciceronian formula).
Futūra modo exspectant; quae quia certa esse nōn possunt. cōnsciiuntur et angōre et metū. Cic. They only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out with distress and fear.
Epicūrus nōn satīs politus īs artibus quās qui tenent, ērudītī appellantur. Cic. Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which, people are called cultivated.
Notice especially quod in combination with sī, ubi, in which quod means and as fo that, and is sometimes translated by and, but, therefore, sometimes not at all.
2. The Relative is the fertile source of many of the introductory particles of the compound sentence, and is therefore put last on account of the multiplicity of its uses.

613. Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative Pro
RELATIVE SENTENCES.

nouns in all their forms: Adjective, Substantive, and Adverbial. (See Tables.)

Remarks.—1. The relative adverbs of Place, and their correlatives, may be used instead of a preposition with a relative. Unde, whence, is frequently used of persons, the others less frequently: \( \text{i} \text{bi} = \text{i} \text{n} \text{e} \text{o}, \&c.; \text{u} \text{bi} = \text{i} \text{n} \text{qu} \text{o}, \&c.; \text{in} \text{d} \text{e} = \text{e} \text{x} \text{e} \text{o}, \&c. \);
unde = ex quæ, \&c.; eō = in eum. \&c.; quō = in quem. \&c.;

Potest fieri ut is, unde tē audisse dīcis. irātus dixerit. Cic. It may be that he, from whom you say you heard (it), said it in anger.

2. The relative is not to be confounded with the dependent interrogative sentence.

(469, R. 3.)

Quae probat populus ego nēscio. Sen. The things that the people approves, I do not know (quid probet, what it is the people approves).

Et quīd ego tē velim. et tū quod quaeris, sciēs. Ter. You shall know both what (it is) I want of you, and what (the thing which) you are asking (= the answer to your question).

614. Position of Relatives.—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The Preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its relative. (44.)

615. Antecedent.—The word to which the Relative refers is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.

Remark.—The close connection between Relative and Antecedent is shown by the frequent use of one preposition in common. (416.)

CONCORD.

616. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person:

Is minimō eget mortālis, quī minimum cupit. Syrus. (293.)

Uxor contenta est quae bona est ūnō virō. Plaut. (373, R. 1.)

Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtāri nōn potest. Syrus. Bad is the plan that cannot (let itself) be changed.

Hoc illis nārrō quī mē nōn intelligunt. Phaedrus. I tell this tale for those who understand me not.


Remarks.—1. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes:

Tū es is, quī mē ad caelum extulistī. Cic. You are he that has extolled me to the skies.

So occasionally in English: Acts xxl. 38.
When the Relative refers to a sentence, **id quod, that which,** is commonly used (parenthetically):

Sì a vobis désérar, (id quod nôn spéro,) tamen animô nôn déficiam. Cic. If I should be deserted by you, (which I do not expect,) nevertheless I should not become faint-hearted.

3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined:

I. By the sense, and not by the form.

II. By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent:

**Examples:**

I. **Sex mília qui Pydnam perfugerant.** Liv. Six thousand, who had fled to Pydna.

Equitātum omnem praemittit, quī videant. Liv. He sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).

II. **Thēbae, quod caput Boeōtiae est.** Liv. Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.

Flūmen Scaldis, quod inftuit in Mosam. Caes. The river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas.

Jūsta glōria, quī est fructus virtūtis. Cic. Real glory, which is the fruit of virtue.

4. The apposition may be incorporated into the relative:

Testārum suffrāgis quod illī ostracismum vocant. Nep. By potsherds of a thing which they call “ostracism.”

5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 282:

Grandēs nātū mātrēs et parvulī libērī, quōrum utrōrumque āètās miserīcor diam nostrām requirīt. Cic. Aged matrons and infant children, whose age on either hand demands our compassion.

Otium atque divitiae, quae prīma mortālēs putant. Sall. Leisure and money which mortals reckon as the prime things.

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred:

Eae frūgēs atque fructus quōs terra gignit. Cic. Those fruits of field and tree which earth bears.

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 283.

617. Repetition of the Antecedent.—The Antecedent of the Relative is quite often repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive:

Caesar intellexit diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mēti oportēret. Caes. Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which (day behooved to measure) corn (was to be measured out) to the soldiers.

618. Incorporation of the Antecedent.—The Antecedent at the Adjective, or the apposition of the Antecedent, are often incorporated into the Relative clause:

In quem primum ēgressī sunt locum Trōja vocātur. Liv. The fig place they landed at was called Troy.
Amānus Syriam ā Ciliciā dīvidit, qui mons erat hostium plēnus. Cic. Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies.

Themistoclēs, dē servīs suis quem habuit fidēlissimum, ad Xerxem nīsit. Nep. Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to Xerxes.

Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat. Cic. What trade each man understands, in that let him practise himself (= every man to his trade).

Remark.—Especially to be noted are the phrases: quae tua prūdentia est, which (such) is your prudence; qua prūdentia es (= tū es ēa prūdentia), of which (such) prudence are you (= prō tuā prūdentia, in accordance with your prudence). See 628.

619. Attraction of the Relative.—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the Antecedent, rarely into any other case:

Hoc confirmāmus illō augūriō quō dīximus. Cic. We confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.

Remarks.—1. This attraction takes place chiefly when the verb of the relative clause must be supplied from the principal sentence:

Quibus sauciis poterat sēcūm ducitis ad urbem pergīt. Liv. Having taken with all the wounded he could, he proceeded to the city.

2. Inverted Attraction.—So-called Inverted Attraction is found only in poetry, and then the Accusative case, which may be considered as an object of thought or feeling:

Urban quam statuo, vestra est. Verg. (As for) the city which I am rearing, (it) is yours.

Istum quem quaeris, ego sum. Ter. (As for) that man whom you are looking for, I am he. ("He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.")

620. Correlative Use of the Relative.—The usual Correlative qui is, more rarely hic, ille:

Is minimō eget mortālis, qui minimum cupid. Syr. (293.)

Hic sapiens, de quō loquor. Cic. (290, 3.)

Illa diēs veniet, mea quā lāgubria pōnam. Ov. (292, 4.)

621. Omission of the Correlative.—The Correlative, is, is often omitted, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative:

Postume, nōn bene olet, qui bene semper olet. Mart. Postumus, (he) sells not sweet, who always smells sweet.

Quem arma nōn frēgerant vitia vicērunt. Curt. (Him) whom arms had crushed did vices overcome.

Quem diē diligunt adulscens moritur. Plaut. (He) whom the gods love is young.
Xerxes praemium propositu qui [= ei qui] invénisset novam voluptätem. Cic. Xerxes offered a reward to him who should invent a new pleasure.

Miseranda vita qui [= eōrum qui] sē metui quam amāri mālunt. Nep. Pitiable is the life of those who would prefer being feared to being loved.

Discite sānāri per quem [= per eum, per quem] didicistis amāre. Ov. (403.)

622. Position of the Correlative clause.—The Relative clause often precedes the Correlative; incorporation is common:

Male rēs sē habet quum quod virtūte effici dēbet id tentātur pecūnīā. Cic. It is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth is attempted by money.

Quod vīdēs accidere pueris hōc nōbis quoque mājusculis pueris ēvenit. Sen. What you see befalls children (this) happens to us also, children of a larger growth.

Quae quia nōn liceat nōn facit, illa facit. Ov. (541.)

Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat. (618.)

The Correlative omitted:

Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit. Sen. What fortune has not given, she does not take away.

Per quās nōs petitis saepe fugātis opēs. Ov. The means you take to win us, often scare us off.

623. Indefinite Antecedent.—The Indefinite Antecedent generally omitted:

Elīge cuī dicās: tā mihi sōla placēs. Ov. Choose some one to whom you may say: You alone please me.

Remark.—Such sentences are sometimes hardly to be distinguished from Interrogative:

Conōn nōn quaeśīvit ubi ipse tūtō vīveret. Nep., (297), might be either.

TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

624. Future and Future Perfect.—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (234, 236):

Sit liber, dominus quī volet esse meus. Mart. He must be free as wishes (shall wish) to be my master.

Quī prior strinxerit ferrum, ējus victōria erit. Liv. (236, R. 2.)
625. *Iterative Action.*—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (568, 569):

I. Contemporaneous action:

ombies trahit quodcumque potest, atque addit acervō. Hor. *Drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure.*

Quācumque incedebat agmen, lēgātī occurrēbant. Liv. *In whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them.*

II. Prior action:

Terra nunquam sine īsūrā reddi, quod accēpit. Cic. *The earth never returns without interest what it has received.*

Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit. Sen. (622.)

Nōn cēnat quoties nēmo vocāvit eum. Mart. *He does not dine as often as (when) no one has invited him.*

Hārebant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et viderat [Themistocles]. Nep. (569.)

Sequentur tē quōcumque pervēneris vitia. Sen. *Vices will follow you whithersoever you go.*

Quī timēre désierint, ōdisse incipient. Tac. (569.)

**Remark.**—According to 569, the Subjunctive is used

1.) In *Oratio Obliqua* (Total or Partial);

2.) By Attraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses):

Quis eum diligat quem metuat? Cic. *Who could love him whom he fears?*

Mōs est Athēnīs laudāri in cōntiōne eōs qui sīnt in praelīs interfectī. Cic. *It is the custom at Athens that a panegyric be pronounced on those who have been killed in battle.*

(Laudantur, qui interfectī sunt.)

3.) In the Ideal Second Person:

Bonus segnior fit ubi neglegās. Sall. (568.)

4.) On the general principle of oblique sense, chiefly in later historians:

Qui ōnum ejus ordinis offendisset omnēs adversōs habēbat. Liv. (569.)

**Moods in Relative Sentences.**

626. The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood:

Uxor quae bona est, *A wife who is good (a good wife).*

**Remark.**—The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a Substantive, with this difference: that the Substantive expresses a permanent relation; the Relative a transient relation: *si qui docent = those who teach = the teachers (inasmuch as they are exercising the functions).*

627. The Explanatory Relative *qui,* with the Indicative, = *is enim, for he,* often approaches *quod,* in that.
Habeo senectūtī magnam grātiam, quae mihi sermōnīs aviditātem auxit. Cic. I am very thankful to old age, which (= it, in that it) has increased me (= in me) the appetite for talk.

Remark.—Quī with the Subjunctive gives a ground = cum is (637); quī with the Indicative, a fact; and in many passages the causal sense seems to be inevitable:

Errāverim fortasse quī mē esse aliquem putāvī. Plin. Ep. I may have erred in thinking myself to be somebody.

Improbā [i. e., Ardea] quae nōstrōs cōgis abesse virōs. Ov. Naughty Ardea, that forest (for forcing) our husbands to be away.

In some authors this causal sense is heightened by ut, utpote, as; quīppe, namely but with these particles the Subjunctive is far more common.

628. Quī = sī quis, if any, has the Indicative when the Conditional is logical. So in Generic Sentences. (246, R. 4.)

Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit. Cic. (Si quid accēpit.) (625.)

Quī morī didicit, servīre dēdidicit. Sen. (424.)

Remark.—On the Relative with the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences, see 594.

629. The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses where it would be used in a simple sentence.

Potential: Habeo quae velim. Cic. I have what I should like.

Optative: Quod faustum sit, rēgem create. Liv. Blessing be on your choice, make ye a king.

Remark.—Especially to be noted is the Subjunctive in Restrictive phrases. This Relative often takes quidem, sometimes modo. Such phrases are quod sciam = quantō scio, for all I know; quod meminerim, so far as memory serves me.

Omnium ērātōrum quōs quidem cognōverim acūtissimum jūdico Sertōrium. Cic. Of all orators, so far as I know them, I consider Sertorius the most acute.

Nullum ornātum qui modo nōn obscūret subtrahendum putō. Quint. I the no ornament is to be withdrawn, provided that it do not cause obscurity.

Sometimes quī quidem is found with the Indicative.

630. The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the utterance or the view of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted. (587; R.) So especially in Ōrātiō Obliqua and Final Sentences:

Rectē Graeci praecipiunt, nōn temptanda quae effici nōn possunt. Quint. Right are the Greeks in teaching, that those things are not to be tempted, which cannot be accomplished.

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait, bestiōs quāsdam nāscī quē ūnum diem vivant. Cic. (653.)

Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit. (This is Paetus' statement; otherwise: quōs frāter ējus (521) reliquerat)
Xerxes praemium proposuit qui [= ei qui] invenisset novam volup-
tatem. Cic. (621.)

Multis suam vitam neglecterunt ut eos qui his cariorès quam ipsi sibi
essent liberarent. Cic. Many have neglected their own lives, that they might
free those who were dearer to them, than they were to themselves.

Remarks.—Even in Órátió Obliqua the Indicative is retained:
1. In explanations of the narrator:
Nuntiatur Afraniö magnos commeatús qui iter habebant ad Caesarém ad
dūmen constitisse. Caes. It (was) announced to Afranius that large supplies of pro-
visions (which were on their way to Caesar) had halted at the river.

In the historians this sometimes occurs where the Relative clause is an integral part
of the sentence, especially in the Imperfect and Pluperfect; partly for clearness, partly
for liveliness. For shifting Indicative and Subjunctive, see Liv. xxvi. 1.

2. In mere circumlocutions:
Quis neget haec omnia quae videmus deorum potestate administrari? Cic.
Who would deny that this whole visible world is managed by the power of the gods?

Prōvidendum est nē ea quae dōcuntur ab eō qui dicit dissentiant. Quint. We
must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with the speaker.

631. Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and
Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put
in the Subjunctive (Attraction of Mood):

Pigri est ingenii contentum esse iis quae sint ab aliis inventa. Quint.
It is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been found out by
others.

Quis eum diligat quem metuat aut eum a quō sē metuī putet? Cic.
Who could love a man whom he fears, or by whom he deems himself feared?

Nam quod emās possis jūre vocāre tuum. Mart. For what you buy,
you may rightly call your own.

Ab aliō exspectās alterī quod fēcerīs. Syr. (306.)
In virtūte sunt multi ascensis, ut is gloriā maximē excellat, quī vir-
ūte plūrum praestet. Cic. In virtue there are many degrees, so that he
feels most in glory, who has the greatest eminence in virtue.

Si sólōs eōs dicerès miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eōrum
ūi viverent excipēres; moriendum enim est omnibus. Cic. If you
killed only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except none who
ved (live); for all have to die.

Remarks.—The Indicative is used:
1. In mere circumlocutions; so, often in Consecutive Sentences:
Necessē est facere sūmptum qui quaerit lucrum. Plaut. (535.)
Efficitur ab orātōre, ut iī qui audiunt ita afficiantur ut orātor velit. Cic. It is
ought about by the orator that those who hear him (= his auditors) are affected as he
ishes (them to be).

2. Of individual facts:
Et quod vidēs perisse perditum dūcās. Cat. And what you see (definite thing,
finite person) is lost for aye, for aye deem lost. (Quod videās, any body, any thing.)
632. Relative Sentences of Design.—Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive (of Design) when qui = ut is:

Sunt multi qui aliis ēripiant quod aliis largiantur. Cic. Many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others.

Senex serit arborēs, quae alteri seculō prōsint. Cic. (545.)

Semper habē Pyladēn, qui consōlētur Orestēn. Ov. (545.)

Artaxerxēs Themistoclē Magnēsiam urbem dōnāverat, quae ei pānen praebeēret. Nep. (545.)

Remark.—In many combinations this Relative leans to the Characteristic, and the conception seems Potential rather than Optative.

633. Relative Sentences of Tendency.—Optative Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive (of Tendency) when qui = ut is:

The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation:

Damna nulla tanta sunt quae nōn virī fortēs ferenda arbitreōntur. Cic. There are no losses so great, that brave men should not think them endurable (great enough to keep brave men from thinking them endurable).

Ille ego sum cūjus laniet furīosa capillōs. Ov. I am the man whose hair she tears in her seasons of frenzy.

Nil prōdest quod nōn laedere possit idem. Ov. (296.)

Quem mea Calliopes laeserit únus ego. Ov. I am the only one that my Calliopes (= my Muse) has hurt.

Mājor sum quam cuī possit Fortūna nocēre. Ov. (313.)

Digna fuit illa nātūra quae meliōra vellet. Quint. (556, R. 2.)

634. This construction of the Characteristic Relative especially common after such general expressions as

Est qui, sunt qui, there is, there are some who; nēmo est qui, there

none to; nihil est quod, there is nothing; habeo quod, I have to; repe

untur qui, persons are found who (to) . . . ; quis est qui? who is the

who (to) . . . ? est cūr, there is reason for, &c. So, also, if

cum, there was a time when.

Sunt qui diessum animi ā corpore putent esse mortem. Cic. There

are some who (to) think that death is the departure of the soul from the body.

Fuit qui suādēret appellātiōnem mēnsis Augustī in Septembrī transferendam. Suet. There was a man who urged (= to urge) that

name of the month (of) August should be transferred to September.

Multī fuērunt qui tranquilliōtem expeptentēs ā negotiōs públicīs ē

remōverint. Cic. There have been many who, in the search for quiet, have

withdrawn themselves from public engagements.

Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam mali. Plaut. A
dead there is no ill in death for me to dread.
Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condat erit. Ov. And there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers.

Miserrimus est qui cum esse cupit quod edat nōn habet. Plaut. He is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not any thing to eat.

Nōn habet quid edat would mean: does not know what to eat.

Nōn est quod paupertās nōs ā philosophiā revocet nē egestās quidem. Sen. There is nothing to make narrow circumstances recall us from philosophy—not even (== or even) want.

Remarks.—1. The Indicative may be used in the statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics:

Multī sunt qui ēripiant,
There are many to snatch away.

Of course this happens only after affirmative sentences. The poets use the Indicative more freely than prose writers:

Sunt-qui (= quidam) quod sentiunt nōn audent dicere. Cic. Some dare not say what they think.

Sunt-quibus ingrātē timida indulgentia servit. Ov. To some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thanklessly.

Est-ubi profectō damnōm praestat facere quam lucrum. Plaut. Sometimes, in point of fact, 'tis better to lose than gain.

2. When a definite predicate is negatived, the Indicative may stand on account of the definite statement, the Subjunctive on account of the negative:

a. Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum qui id possideat meliōrem facit; or,

b. Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum qui id possideat meliōrem faciat.

a. Nothing that does not make its owner better is good.

b. There is nothing good that does not make its owner better.

635. Negative of Qui in Sentences of Character.—Qui nōn, sometimes quae nōn, quod nōn, &c., are represented after negative clauses by quīn :

Sunt certa vitia quae nēmo est quīn effugere cupiat. Cic. There are certain faults which there is no one but (== everybody) desires to escape.

Nil tam difficile est quīn quaerendō investigāri possīt (== possīt).

Ter. (556.) But as quīn = ut nōn, the demonstrative may be expressed:

Nōn cum quōquam arma contulī quīn is mihi succubuerit. Nep. I have never measured swords with any one that he has not (but he has) succumbed to me.

For other uses of quīn, see 551.

636. Relative in a Causal Sense.—When quī = cum is, as he, the Subjunctive is employed.
The particles ut, utpote, quippe, as, are often used in conjunction with the Relative:

[Caninius] fuit mīrificā vigilantīā quī suō tōtō consulātū somnum nōn viderit. Cic. Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have seen (= taken a wink of) sleep in his whole consulship.

Ω fortūnāte adolescens, qui tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnen invē- nerīs! Cic. Lucky youth! to have found a crier (= trumpeter) of your valor (in) Homer!

Mājor glōria Scipiōnis, Quinctī recentior ut quī eō annō triumphāset. Liv. Scipio's glory was greater, Quinctius' was fresher, (as was to be expected in) a man who (inasmuch as he) had triumphed in that year.

Plato a Dionysiō tyrannō crādēliter violātus est quippe quem vēnumdari jussisset. Nep. Plato was cruelly maltreated by the tyrant Dionysius, seeing, namely, that he had ordered him to be sold.

637. Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.—Quī is sometimes used as equivalent to cum is in a Concessive or Adversative Sense:

Ego qui leviter Graecās litterās attigitissem, tamen cum vēnissem Athenās complūrēs diēs ibi commorātūs sum. Cic. Although I had dabbled but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days.

638. Accusative Relative and Infinitive.—The Accusative Relative, with the Infinitive, may be used in Ōrātio Obliqua when the Relative is to be resolved into a Coördinating Conjunction and the Demonstrative:

Philosophi cēsent unusquemque nōstrum mundī esse partem, ex quō illud nātūrā consequi ut commūnem utīlitātem nōstrae antēpōnāmus. Cic. Philosophers think that every one of us is a part of the universe and that the natural consequence of this is for us to prefer the common with fare to our own.

Remark.—So also sometimes sentences with the relative particles quia, cum, ut, quanquam, etc.: quia trucidāre = quia trucidārent, because they butchered (only in the later historians).

639. Combination of Relative Sentences.—Relative Sentences are combined by means of Copulative Conjunctions only when they are actually coördinate.

When the second Relative would stand in the same case as the first, it is commonly omitted.
When it would stand in a different case, the Demonstrative is often substituted; or, if the case be the Nominative or Accusative, the Relative may be omitted altogether:

Dumnorix qui principātum obtinebat cuique plēbs favēbat,
Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;
Dumnorix qui principātum obtinebat ac plēbi acceptus erat, (Caes.),
Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (who) was acceptable to the commons;
Dumnorix qui principātum obtinebat eiique plēbs favēbat,
Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;
Dumnorix qui principalum obtinebat et plēbs diligēbat,
Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (whom) the commons loved;
Dumnorix quem plēbs diligēbat et principātum obtinebat,
Dumnorix, whom the commons loved, and (who) held the chieftaincy.

Remark.—The Relative is not combined with adversative or illative conjunctions (but who, who therefore), except at the beginning of a sentence, when it represents or anticipates a demonstrative. (622.)

Qui fortis est fidens est. qui autem fidens est is nōn extimēscit. Cic. He who is brave is confident, but he who is confident is not afraid.

Sed qui, qui tamen, can be used in antithesis to adjectives.

Sophrōn mīmōrum quidem scriptor sed quem Plātō probāvit. Quint. Sophron, a writer of mimes, 'tis true, but (one) that Plato approved.

640. Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.—The Relative sentence is sometimes represented by a Participle, but generally the Participle expresses a closer connection than the mere explanatory Relative:

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs perfidi sunt. Cic. All who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous.

Pisistratus Homēri librōs confūsōs anteā sic disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus. Cic. Pisistratus is said to have arranged the books of Homer, which were (whereas they were) in confusion before, as we have them now.

Comparative Sentences.

641. A peculiar phase of the Relative sentence is the Comparative, which is introduced in English by as or than, in Latin by a great variety of relative forms:

I. By correlatives;
II. By atque or ac;
III. By quam.

642. Moods in Comparative Sentences.—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is
required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (604).

**Remark.**—On potius quam with the Subjunctive, see below. 647, R. 4.

643. The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause:

Ignoratio futūrorum malorum utilis est quam scientia. Cic. (311.)
Servī mōribus īisdem erant quibus dominus. Cic. (206, R. 1.)

644. When the dependent clause (or standard of comparison) borrows its verb from the leading clause, the dependent clause is treated as a part of the leading clause; and if the first of leading clause stands in the Accusative with the Infinitive, the second or dependent clause must have the Accusative likewise.

Ita sentio Latinam linguam locupletiorem esse quam Graecam. Or. It is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the Greek.

Ego Gājum Caesarēm nōn eadem dē rēpublicā sentīre quae mē scī. Cic. I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same views with regard to the state as I (have).

### I. CORRELATIVE COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

645. Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives:

1. Adjective correlatives:

| tot, totidem | quot,       | (so) as many |
| tantus      | quantus,    | (so) as great |
| tālis       | quālis,     | such         |
| idem        | quī,        | the same     |

2. Adverbial correlatives:

| tam          | quam,       | (so) as much |
| tantopere    | quantopere  | (so) as much |
| totīēs       | quotīēs,    | as often     |
| tamdiū       | quamdiū,    | as long      |
| ita, sic     | quamadmodum | so (as) = as |
| item, itidem | quōmodo,    |

Quot hominēs, tot sententiae, (as) many men, (so) many minds. Pro. Frāmentum tanti fuit quanti iste aestimāvit. Cic. Corn was worth much as he valued it.
COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

Quālem invēnī tālem reliquī. Front. Such as I found (him), I left (him).

Cimon incidit in eandem invidendam quam pater seu. NEP. (296.)

Nihil tam populāre quam bonitās. CIC. Nothing is so winning as kindness.

Sic de ambitiōne quōmodo dē amică queruntur. SEN. They complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart.

Tamdiū requiēsco quamdiū ad tē scribo. CIC. I rest as long as I am writing to you.

Remarks.—1. On other forms with idem see 296.

2. Ut quisque with the Superlative is more common than quō quisque with the Comparative, and is translated in the same way:

Ut quisque sibi plārium consīdit, ita maximē excellit. CIC. The more a man trusts himself, the more he excels.

Obscūrior quō quisque dēterior. QUINT. The obscurer a man (a speaker) is, the worse he is.

One member often cocalesces with the other:

Optimum quidque rārissimum est = Ut quidque rārissimum est, ita optimum.

See 305.

3. Ut—ita is often used concessively (484). On ita—ut, in Asservations, see 355:

4. Ut and pro eō ut are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense, so far as, inasmuch as: Prō eō ut temporum difficīlās tūlit, so far as the hard times permitted; ut tum rēs erant, as things were then; ut temporibus illis, for those times; ut erat furīosus, stark mad as he was.

Vir ut inter Aetolōs facundus. LIV. A man of eloquence for an Aetolian.

Ut sunt hūmāna, nihil est perpetuum datum. PLAUT. As the world goes, nothing is given for good and all.

5. On quam, quantus, and the Superlative, see 311.

Notice in this connection quam qui with the Superlative:

Tam sum amicus reipublicae quam qui maximē (= est). CIC. I am as devoted a friend to the State as he who is most (= as any man).

II. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES WITH atque (ac).

646. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take atque or ac:

Virtus eadem in homine ac deō. CIC. Virtue is the same in man as in god.

Date operam nē simili fortūnā útāmur atque anteā úsī sumus. TER. Do your endeavor that we have not (ill)-lucky like that we had before.

Dissimulātiō est quum alia dicuntur ac sentiās. CIC. Dissimulation is when other things are said than what you mean (something is said other than what you mean).

Similiter facis ac sī mē rogēs cūr tē duōbus contuear oculis, et nōn alterō. CIC. You are acting (like) as if you were to ask me why I am looking at you with two eyes, and not with one.
Nōn dixi secus (aliter) ac sentiēbam. Cic. I did not speak otherwise than I thought.

Remarks.—1. The expression is commonly explained by an ellipsis:
Aliter dixi atque [aliter] sentiēbam, I spoke one way and yet I was thinking another way.
So we find:
Timeo nē aliud crēdās atque aliud nūntiēs. Ter. I fear that you believe one thing and tell another.
Et and -que are occasionally used in the same way.*
2. Alius. alīter, secus, seldom have quam: nōn alius and other negative combinations seldom have atque, commonly quam or nisi. (592, R. 2.)
Philosophia quid est aliud (= nihil est aliud) nisi dōnum deōrum? Cic. Philosophy—what else is it but the gift of the gods?
Nōn alīter has either quam or atque.

III. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES WITH quam.

647. Comparative Sentences with quam follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.
The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 643.
In Comparative Sentences quam takes the same case after it as before it:

Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria. Liv. (292, R. 1.)
Potius amīcum quam dīctum perdidī. Quint. I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke.
Existimēs velīn nēminem cuīquam cāriōrem unquam fuisse quam tē mihi. Cic. (546, R. 3.)

Remarks.—1. When the second member is a subject, and the first member an oblique case, the second member must be put in the Nominative, with the proper form of the verb esse, unless the oblique case be an Accusative:
Vīcīnus tuus equum meliōrem habet quam tuus est. Cic. (598.)
Haec verba sunt Varrōnis, hominis doctōris quam fuit Claudius. Gell. These words are (the words) of Varro, a person of greater learning than Claudius (was).
Ego hominem callidiōrem vīdī nēminem quam Phormiōnem Ter. I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio (= quam Phormio est).
2. On quam prō, see quam quī, 313. On the double comparative, 314.
3. Atque for quam after a comparative is poetical.
4. When two clauses are compared by potius, rather, prius, before, citius, quicker, sooner, the second clause is put in the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive (512), with or without ut.
Dēpugnā potius quam serviās. Cic. (579 R.)
Vir bonus statuit intolerābili dolōre lacērātī potius quam ut officium prōdat. Cic. A good man resolves to let himself be torn by unsufferable anguish, rather than be untrue to his duty.

* Still, -que in atque connects these clauses with the Relative, and the explanation of atque as ad + que, in comparison with + how (Ribbeck) is worthy of note.
Moriturōs sē affirmābant citius quam in aliēnōs mōrēs verterentur. Liv. They declared that they had rather die, than let themselves be changed to foreign ways.

If the leading clause is in the Infinitive, the dependent clause may be in the Infinitive likewise, and this is the more common construction when the Infinitive follows a verb of Will and Desire:

Haec patienda censeo, potius quam trucidāri corpora vestra. Liv. I think these things are to be endured, rather than that your bodies ( = you) should be butchered.

5. Instead of tam—quam, as—so, the Roman prefers the combinations nōn minus quam—nōn magis quam (by Litotes).

5.) Nōn minus quam means no less than = quite as much:

Patria hominibus nōn minus eāra esse dēbet quam liberī. Cic. Country ought to be no less dear to men than children ( = quite as dear as).

2.) Nōn magis quam means quite as little, or quite as much:

Animus nōn magis est sānus quam corpus. Cic. The mind is no more sound than the body = as little sound as the body.

Or it might mean:
The mind is no more sound than the body = the body is quite as sound as the mind.

Fabius nōn in armīs praestantīor fuit quam in togā. Cic. Fabius was not more distinguished in war than in peace (no less distinguished in peace than in war, quite as distinguished in peace as in war).

The Abridged Sentence.

648. The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

The Infinitive and Infinitive Forms.

649. The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered:

Infinitive after Verbs of Creation: 424 and after.
Gerund and Gerundive: 426 and after.
Supine: 435 and after.
Infinitive in Object Sentences: 526 and after.
Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences: 532.
Infinitive in Relative Sentences: 638.

Remark.—Under the head of the Abridged Sentence, will be treated the Historical Infinitive and Orātio Obliqua: the Historical Infinitive, because it is a compendious Imperfect; Orātio Obliqua, because it foreshortens, if it does not actually abridge, and effaces the finer distinctions of Orātio Recta.

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

650. The Infinitive of the Present is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid outline of events, with the
subject in the Nominative; generally, several infinitives in succession:


Remarks.—1. The ancient assumption of an ellipsis of coepit, began (Quint. ix. 3, 58), serves to show the conception, although it does not explain the construction. There is no ellipsis. The Infinitive is to be explained as in Óráti̇o Oblique. It takes the place of the Imperfect, is used chiefly in rapid passages, and gives the outline of the thought, and not the details.

2. The Historical Infinitive is sometimes found after cum, ubi, etc.:

Non multum erat progressa nāvis cum dato signō ruere tectum. Tac. Not far (but a little way) had the ship advanced, when, at a signal given, the roof came down with a rush (began to tumble).

Óráti̇o Oblique.

651. The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called Óráti̇o Recta, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or Óráti̇o Oblique, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

Remarks.—1. Under the general head of Óráti̇o Oblique are embraced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 509.

2. Inquam, quoth I, is used in citing the Óráti̇o Recta; ājo, I say, generally in Óráti̇o Oblique. Inquam is always parenthetic; ājo may or may not be parenthetic. Óráti̇o Recta may also be cited by a parenthetic “ut ait,” “ut ājunt,” as he says, as they say. When the subject of inquit is mentioned it is commonly postponed.

652. Óráti̇o Oblique differs from Óráti̇o Recta, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the Pronouns.

Remarks.—1. It must be remembered that Ō. O. is necessarily less accurate in its conception than Ō. R., and hence it is not always possible to restore the Ō. R. from the Ō. O. with perfect certainty. What is ideal to the speaker, may become unreal to the narrator from his knowledge of the result, and hence, when accuracy is aimed at, the narrator takes the point of view of the speaker, and in the last resort passes over to Ō. Recta.

2. Ō. Oblique often comes in without any formal notice.

Moods in Óráti̇o Oblique.

653. In Óráti̇o Oblique the principal clauses are put in the Infinitive, the subordinate clauses in the Subjunctive.
Oratio Recta: Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,
Oratio Obligua: Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait,
O. R.: bestiolae quaedam nascuntur,
O. O.: bestiolās quāsdam nāscī,
O. R.: quae ūnum diem vivunt,
O. O.: quae ūnum diem vivant.

O. R.—On the river Bog, says Aristotle,
O. O.—Aristotle says that, on the river Bog,

little creatures are born, that live (but) one day.

Sōcratēs dīcere solēbat:
O. R. Omnēs in ēō quod scint satis sunt eloquentēs.
O. O. Omnēs in ēō quod scirent satis esse eloquentēs.

O. R. Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."
O. O. Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.

Remark.—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indicative, the Infinitive is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjunctive, as in the Ideal and Unreal conditions, special rules are necessary. (659.) Otherwise, Subjunctive in O. R. continues to be Subjunctive in O. O.

654. Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive according to 469:

Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnīsse quam populum Rōmānum: quid sibi vellet čur in suās possessionēs venīret. Caes. Ariovistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people: what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into his possessions? (Quid tibi vis?)

Thrasybūlus magnā vōce exclāmat; čur sē fugiant? Thrasybulus cried out with a loud voice (asking), "why they ran from him." (O. R., čur mē fugitis?)

Remarks.—1. Indicative Rhetorical Questions (466) are transferred from the Indicative of the Oratio Recta to the Accusative and Infinitive of O. O.; but seldom in the Second Person, which is commonly in the Subjunctive.

Quid est turpius? What is baser? [Nothing.] Quid esse turpius? What was baser?

Quō sē repulsōs ab Rōmānis itūrōs? Liv. Whither should they go, if repelled by the Romans? (Quō iīmus?)
Cui nōn appārēre ab ēō qui prior arma intulisset injūriam ortam esse? Liv. To whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war? (Cui nōn appāret?)
Sī bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent? Liv. If they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty? (Sī bonum dūcitis, quid prō noxiō damnāstis?)

2. In Subjunctive Rhetorical Questions the Subjunctive is either retained, or transferred to the Infinitive. The Deliberative Subjunctive is always retained.

14*
Quis sibi persuāderēt sine certā rē Ambiorigem ad ējusmodī consilium dēscendisse? Caes. Who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without (having made) a sure thing (of it)? *(Quis sibi persuādeat?*)

The Infinitive form would be the Future: *quern sibi persuasurum?* (659) and is not to be distinguished from the Future Indicative.

655. Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive: the Negative is, of course, nē:

Redditur responsum: *Nōndum tempus pugnae esse; castrīs sē tenērent.* Liv. *There was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp.* (Ō. R. castrīs vōs tenēte.)

Vercingetorix cohortātus est: *nē perturbārentur incommodō.* Caes. Vercingetorix comforted them (by saying) that they must not allow themselves to be disconcerted by the disaster. (Ō. R. nōlīte perturbārī.)

Remark.—*Ut* can be used in the first sentence, according to 546; but only in the first.

Pythia respondit ut moenibus ligneis sē mūnīrent. Ner. The Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.

TENSES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

656. The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530):
The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;
The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;
The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

657. The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.

Remark.—By assuming the point of view of the speaker, greater liveliness as well as greater accuracy is imparted to the discourse. This form is technically called *Repraesentātio.* In Conditional Sentences *Repraesentātio* often serves to prevent ambiguity. The point of view not unfrequently shifts from reporter to speaker, sometimes in the same sentence.

Point of View of the Reporter:

Lēgātiōni Ariovistus respondit: *sibi mīrum vidēri quid in suā Galliā quam bellō vicisset, Caesarī negotiī esset.* Caes. *To the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him (he wondered) what business Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.*

Point of View of the Speaker:

Lēgātis Helvétiōrum Caesar respondit: *consuēsse deōs immortālēs,*
quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere ēorum ulciscī velint, hīs secundīōrēs interdum rēs concēdere. CAES. To the envoys of the Helvetians Caesar replied, that the gods were (are) wont, that men might (may) suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime. (A long passage may be found in Liv. xxviii. 32.)

Point of View shifted:

Ad haec Marius respondit: Si quid ab senātū petere vellent, ab armīs discēdant. SALL. Thereto Marius replied: If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.


Examples of Ō. O. in Object Clauses, 524.
Causal, 541.
Temporal, 562, 563, 564, 566, 570, 572, 576.
Relative, 630.

Remarks.—1. Coördinate Relative Clauses are put in the Accusative and Infinitive (638).
2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative: 1. In mere circumlocutions. 2. In explanations of the narrator. (630, R. 1.)
3. Dum, with the Indicative, is often retained as a mere circumlocution (so also sometimes cum):

Dic, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hic vidisse jacentēs, dum sanctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur. Cic. Tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country's hallowed laws.

659. Conditional Sentences in Oratio Obliqua (Total and Partial).

1. The Protasis follows the rule.
2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with futūrum fuisset ut . . . 240, R. 2.

Remark.—Posse needs no Future (345, R. 3), and potuisse no Periphrastic Perfect Infinitive, so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.

3. Identical Forms.—In the transfer of conditions to Ō. Ō., the difference between many forms disappears. For instance:
I. Si id crēdis, errābis.
   Dico tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse.
Si id crēdās, errēs.

II. Si id crēdis, errābis.
   Dīxi tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.
Si id crēderēs, errēs.

III. Si id crēdiderīs, errābis.
   Dīxi tē, si id crēdiddissēs, errātūrum esse.
Si id crēdiddissēs, errārēs.

Remark.—In No. I the difference is not vital, though exactness is lost.
In No. II. the ambiguity is avoided by Repraesentātio for the logical condition, and
the use of the Periphrastic Perfect for the Unreal, wherever it is possible. The difference
between an Unfulfilled Present and an Unfulfilled Past would naturally vanish to the nar-
rator, to whom both are Past.*

No. III., like No. II., is used chiefly of the Future:
Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsis ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad illum ventū-
rum fuisse: si quid ille sē velit illum ad sē venire oportēre. Caes. Ariovistus
answered, that if he had wanted anything of Caesar he would have come to him; if he
(Caesar) wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).

O. R. Si quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad illum vēnissem; si quid ille
mē vult illum ad mē venire oportet.

660. Logical Conditions in Oratio Obliqua:

1. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praes-
ocrēberet quem ad modum suō jūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō
Rōmānō in suō jūre impedīrī. Caes. To this Ariovistus made answer: If
he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right, he ought
not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his right. (O. R. Si
ego nōn praescribo, nōn oportet mē impedīrī.)

2. Si bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent? Sin (593) noxiō
comperissent, quid alterum consulātum crēderent? Liv. If they thought
him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty; if on the other
hand they had found him guilty, why did they intrust him with a second con-
sulship? (O. R. Si—dūcitis, quid damnāstis? Sin—comperistis, quid crē-
ditis?)

3. Titurius clāmitābat, suam sententiam in utramque partem esse
tūtam; si nihil esset (O. R., si nihil erit) dārius, nullō periculō ad proxī-
mam legiōnem perventūrōs (O. R., perveniētis); si Gallia omnis cum
Germanīs cōnsentīret (O. R., si cōnsentitis) ūnam esse (O. R., est) in cele-
ritāte positam salūtem. Caes. Titurius kept crying out that his resolution
was safe in either case: if there were (should be) no especial pressure, they

* Cıc. Fin. i. 2, 20; v. 31, 32. Weissennorn on Liv. xxxiv. 4.
would get to the next legion without danger; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only safety lay in speed.

4. Eum omnium labōrum finem fore exīstimabant si hostem ab Hibērō interclūdēre potissent. Caes. They thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro. (O. R., is labōrum finis erit (or fuerit) si hostem interclūdēre potuerimus.)

5. [Hi] Jugurthae nōn mediocrem animum pollīcitandō accendēbant si Micipsa rēx occidisset, fore utī sōlus imperīō Numīdiae potīrētur. Sall. These persons kindled no little courage in Jugurtha's heart) by promising over and over that if King Micipsa fell, he alone should possess the rule over Numidia. (O. R., si Micipsa occiderit, tū sōlus imperīō potīēris.)

6. Fidēs data est, si Jugurtham vivum aut necātum sibi trādīdisset fore ut illī senātus impūnitātem et sua omnia concēderet. Sall. His word was pledged that if he delivered to him Jugurtha, alive or dead, the senate would grant him impunity, and all that was his. (O. R., si mihi trādidizer, tībi senātus tua omnia concēdet.)

7. Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudita vōx est .. futūrum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperētur. Cīc. Not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken. (O. R., nisi prōvisum erit, Rōma capiētur.)

8. Ariovistus respondit si quid ille sæ velit illum ad sæ venire opor-tēre. Caes. (659, R.)

9. [Ariovistus respondit] nisi dēcedat [Caesar] sæsē illum prō hoste habitūrum; quodsī eum interfēcerit, multīs sæsē nōbilibus principibusque populī Rōmānī grātum factūrum. Caes. Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the Roman people. (O. R., Nisi dēcedēs te prō hoste habēbo .. si te interfēcero grātum fēcero (236, R. 2).

10. Fertur Jugurtha dīxisse urbem vēnālem et mātūrē perītūram si emptōrem invēnerit. Sall. (Perf. Subj.) Jugurtha is reported to have said that the city was for sale, and would soon perish if it found a buyer. (O. R., urbs peribit si emptōrem invēnerit: Fut. Perf. Ind.)

Remark.—Posse is used as has been stated. (659.)

Negārunt bellum dirimī posse nisi Messēnīs Achaei Pylum redderent. Lat. They said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaeans restored Pylus to the Massa-nesians. (O. R. Bellum dirimī nōn potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.)

Docent, si turris condīdisset, nōn posse militēs continērī quīm spē praedae in urbem irruperant. Caes. They show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept from bursting into the city in the hope of booty. (O. R. si conciderit, nōn possunt (poterunt) continērī.)

661. Ideal Conditions in Ōrātio Obliqua:

1. Ait sē si ērātur "Quam hoc suāve" dictūrum. Cīc. He declares
that if he were to be burnt he would say, "How sweet this is." (O. R. Si ūrar, dicam, same form as Logical.)

2. Voluptātem si ipsa prō sē loquātur concessūram arbitror Dignitātī. Cic. I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she would yield (the palm) to Virtue. (The context shows (Fin. III. 1) that the condition is Ideal, not Logical. Si loquātur, concēdat. Comp. 598, R. 2.)

662. Unreal Conditions in Ōrātio Obliqua:

1. Titurius clāmitābat Eburōnēs, si Caesar adesset, ad castra [Rōmānōrum] ventūrōs [nōn] esse. CAES. Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp of the Romans. (O. R., si Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs nōn venirent.) On the rareness of this form see 659, R.

2. Appārēbat si diūtius vixisset Hamilcare duce Poenōs arma Italiae illātūrōs fuisset. LIV. It was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punic arms would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar's conduct.

3. Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victōriā essent allāti existimābant plērique futūrum fuisset opippidum āmisset. CAES. Had not news of Caesar's victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost. (O. R., nisi nūntiī allāti essent, oppidum āmisset esse.)

Remark.—As the Pluperfect Indicative is sometimes used (rhetorically) for the Subjunctive (246, R. 3), so the ordinary Perfect Infinitive is sometimes employed instead of the Periphrastic:

Nēmō mihi persuādēbit multōs praestantēs virōs tanta esse cōnātōs (= cōnātūrōs fuisset) nisi animō cernerent (599, R. 1) posteritātem ad sē pertinēre. Cic. No one will persuade me that (so) many eminent men had made such mighty endeavors, had they not seen with their minds' (eye) that posterity belonged to them.

Pompejum plērique existimābant si ācrius insequī voluisset bellum eō diē potuisset finēre, CAES. Most people think that if Pompey had (but) determined to follow up more energetically, he could have finished the war on that day. (O. R., si voluisset post tuit, 599, R. 2.)

Namque illā multitūdine sī sāna mens esset (599, R. 1) Graeciae, supplicium Persās dare potuisset. NEP. For with that number if Greece had had (= been in her sound mind, the Persians might have paid the penalty (due). (O. R. Si sāna mens esse Graeciae. supplicium Persae dare potuērunt.)

Pronouns in Ōrātio Obliqua.

663. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down 520, and after.

2. The person addressed is ille or is:


Of course this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.
3. *Hic* and *iste* are commonly changed into *ille* or *is*, as *nunc* into *tum* and *tunc*.

Diodórus respondit sē pauciš illis dieibus argentum misisse Lily-baeum. *Cic.* (389, R. 4.)

4. *Nōs* is used when the narrator's party is referred to. *Caes.* B. G. I. 44.

---

664. *Specimens of the conversion of *Oratio* Obliqua into *Oratio* Recta.*

---

*Oratio Obliqua.*

1. *Ariovistus respondit:* Transisse Rhēnum sēse nōn suā sponte sed rogātum et accessītum a Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spe magnīsque praemiīs domum proprioquoque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Gallīā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere jūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere consuērunt. Nōn sēse Gallīs sed Gallōs sībi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse et contrā sē castra habuisse; ēās omnēs copiās a sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīri velint, sī iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, iniquum est sē stipendīō recusāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus peperēntur. *Amicitiam populī Romānī* sībi ornāmento et præsidīo, non dētremēntō esse oportēre idque sē sē spe petisse. Sī per populum Romānum stipendium remittētur et dēditīcit subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēse recusātūrum populī Romānī amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germanōrum in Galliam traducat, id sē suī muniendi, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; ējus reī testimōniō esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit sed dēfenderit.

*Caes.* B. G. I., 44.

---

*Oratio Recta.*

Transīt Rhēnum nōn meā sponte sed rogātus et accessītus a Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spe magnīsque praemiīs domum proprioquoque reliquisse; sēdēs habēhe in Gallīā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere jūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere consuērunt. Nōn ego Gallīs sed Gallī mihi bellum intulurent; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnurent et contrā mē castra habuerunt; ēās omnēs copiāe a mē ūnō proelic pulsae ac superātēae sunt. Sī iterum experīri voluunt, iterum parātum sum dēcertāre, sī pāce ūtī voluunt, iniquum est sē stipendīō recusāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus peperūrent. *Amicitiam populī Romānī* mihi ornāmento et praeclusio, non dētremēntō esse oportēre idque sē spe petiī. Sī per populum Romānum stipendium remittētur et dēditīcit subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recusāsīo populī Romānī amicitiam quam appetiī. Quod multitūdinem Germanōrum in Galliam traducam,* id mē muniendi nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facio; ējus reī testimōniō est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnt et quod bellum nōn intuīt sed dēfendī.

---

*Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise tradūco.*
Oratio Obliqua.

2. **Hic Caesar ita respondit**:

Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari quod ēās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētī commemorassent memoriā tenēret atque eō gravius ferē quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alīcījus ĵīnjūrīa sibi conscīus fuisset non fuisset difficīle cavēre; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēret quārē timēret neque sine causa timēndum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet num etiam recentium ĵīnjūrīarum, quod ēō invitō īter per prōvinciam per vim temptasset, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambaruōs, quod Allobrogas vexassent memoriām dépōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter gloriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne tulisse ĵīnjūrias admirārentur ēōdem pertinēre. Consuessē enim deōs immortālēs quō gravīus homīnēs ex commūtātiōne rērum dolent, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, īs secundōrēs īterdum rēs et diūturnērēm impūnītātem concedere. Cum ea īta sint, tamen sī obsidēs, ab īs sībi dentur ut ā quae pollicēantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs de ĵīnjūris quās īpsīs sociōsque eōrum intulerint, ītum sī Allobrogiōbus satisfaciēnt sēsē cum īs pācem esse factūrōm.

**Caes. B. G. I., 14.**

Oratio Recta.

Hoc mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur quod ēās rēs quās vōs, lēgātī Helvētī, commemorastis, memoriā teneo atque eō gravius ferō quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidērunt; quī sī alīcījus ĵīnjūrīa sibi conscīus fuisset, non fuit difficīle cavēre; sed eō dēceptus quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quārē timēret neque sine causa timēndum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet volo, num etiam recentium ĵīnjūrīarum, quod mē invitō īter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis quod Aeduōs, quod Ambaruōs, quod Allobrogas vexastis, memoriām dépōnere possam? Quod vestra victōriā tam insolenter gloriāminī. Quodque tam diū mē impūne tulisse ĵīnjūrias admirāminī ēōdem pertinēnt. Consuēverunt enim di immortālēs quō gravīus homīnēs ex commūtātiōne rērum dolent, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī volunt, īs secundōrēs īterdum rēs et diūturnērēm impūnītātem concedere. Cum haec īta sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, utī ca, quae pollicēminī, factūrōs intellegam et sī Aeduīs de ĵīnjūris quās īpsīs sociōsque eōrum intulistis, ītum sī Allobrogiōbus satisfaciētis, ego vōbiscum pācem faciam.

3. **Sulla régī patefēcit**:

Quod pollicēātur, senātum et populum Rōmānum, quoniam amplius armīs valuērunt, nōn in grātīam habitūrōs; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse videērētur; īd ideō in prōmptū esse, quoniam Jugurthae cópiam habēret, quem sī Rōmānīs trādīcesset, fore ut illī plurīmum débērētur; amicītiam, fōdus, Numidiae partem, quam nunc peteret, tunc ultrō adventūrām.

**Sall. B. J. 111.**

Quod pollicēris, senātus et populum Rōmānus quoniam amplius armīs valuērunt, nōn in grātīam habēbunt; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam tua rētulisse videērētur; īd ideō in prōmptū est, quoniam Jugurthae cópiam habēs, quem sī Rōmānīs trādīdēris tibi plurīmum débēbitur; amicītia, fōdus, Numidiae pars, quam nunc petis, tunc ultrō adveniet.

*[Kraner's interpretation would require dolent.]*
Involved Oratio Obliqua. Attraction of Mood.

665. Oratio Obliqua proper depends on some verb of Thinking or Saying, expressed or understood. In a more general sense, the term Ὄ. Obliqua is used of all complementary clauses, that belong to ideal relations. The principle is the same in both sets of sentences, for in the one as in the other, the Infinitive takes its dependencies in the Subjunctive, on account of the close relation between the Ideal mood and the Substantive Idea of the verb. Hence the favorite combination of the Infinitive and the Ideal second person:

Proprium hūmānī ingenīi est ēdisse quem laeseris. Tac. It is peculiar to human nature to hate whom you have injured. (But Odisti quem laesisti.)

The so-called attraction of mood by which clauses originally Indicative become Subjunctive in dependence on Subjunctives, is another phase of the same general principle.

666. All clauses which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive:
Recordātione nōstrae amicitiae sic fruor ut beātē vixisse videar quia cum Scipīōne vixerim. Cīc. I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship so much that I seem to have lived happily because I lived with Scipio.

Vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam. Cīc. I fear lest while I am wishing to lessen the toil I may increase it (dum minuere volo, augeo).

Corporis vīribus ūtāre dum adsint, cum adsint nē requīrās. Cīc. (264.)

Quārē sīēbat ut omnium oculōs quotiēscumque in pūblicum prōdisset ad sē convertēret. Nēp. Whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all, every time he went out in public (quoiēscumque prōdierat convertēbat).

Nēscīre quid antequam nātus sīs acciderit, id est semper esse puerum. Cīc. Not to know what happened before you were born, (that) is to be always a boy.

Fraus fīdem in parvīs sībī praestrūit ut cum operae pretium sit, cum magnā mercēde fallat. Cīc. Fraud lays itself a foundation of credit in small things in order that when it is worth while it may make a great profit by cheating.


Abeuntī sī quid poposcerit concēdere mōris. Tac. To the departing (guest) it is customary to grant anything that he asks (Sī quid poposcit concēdunt).

Remarks.—1. From this it is easy to see how the Subjunctive came to be used in a Generic or Iterative sense after Tenses of Continuance. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative may all involve the Notion of Habit, Will, Inclination, Endeavor, and the complementary clauses would follow the sense rather than the form (Partial Obliquity). Examples, see 565, R.

2. Dum not unfrequently resists the Attractive both in prose and poetry:

Tantum nē noceās dum vīs prōdesse vidētō. Ov. (548.)

Participial Sentences.

667. Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as Time and Circumstance, Cause and Occasion, Condition and Concession. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

Remarks.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial Sentence by a coordinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coordinate, and such clauses are never equivalents. (409, R. 2.)

Manlius Gallum caesium torque spoliāvit. Liv. Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain (after slaying the Gaul stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, etc.).
PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

Miltiades capitis absolutus, pecunia multatus est, Nep. Miltiades (though) acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money (was acquitted, but mulcted).

2. A common translation of the Participle is an Abstract Noun: See 324, R 3:
Terra mutata non mutat morés. Liv. The change of land changeth not the character.

Teucer Ulixen reum facit Ajacis occisi. Quint. Teucer indicts Ulysses for the murder of Ajax.

On the Participle after Verbs of Perception and Representation, see 524, R. 1 and 536.

668. Participles may represent Time when:

Alexander moriens āuulum suum dederat Perdiccae. Nep. Alexander (when he was) dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat. Cic. Dionysius the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse (after his exile from Syracuse), taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.

Ablative Absolute:

Solōn et Pīsistratus Serviō Tulliō regnante viguerunt. Cic. Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king (in the reign of Servius Tullius).

Sōle ortō Volsci sē circumvallātōs vidērunt. Liv. When the sun was risen (after sunrise), the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.

Remark.—On the Ablative Absolute of the Simple Participle, see 438, R. 1.

669. Participles may represent Cause Why:

Arēopagitae damnāverunt puerum coturnīcum oculōs ēruentem. Quint. The court of Mars' Hill condemned a boy because he plucked out (for plucking out) the eyes of quails.

Athēniensēs Alcibiadem corruptum ā rége Persārum capere nōluisse Cŷmēn arguēbant. Nep. The Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.

Ablative Absolute:

Rōmānī veterēs regnārī omnēs volēbant libertātís dulcēdine nōndum expertā. Liv. The old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.

Remark.—An apparent cause is given by ut as velut, as, for instance, tanquam (so) as, quasi, as if, see 604, R. 2.

670. Participles may represent Condition and Concession:

Sī latet ars prōdest, affert dépresa pudōrem. Ov. (594, 2.)
Risus interdum ita repente ērumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus. Cīc. (611.)

Miltiadēs capitis absolutus pecūniā multātus est. Nep. (667, R.)

Ablative Absolute:
Maximās virtūtes jacere omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante. Cīc. (594, 2.)

Remark.—Later writers combine with the Participle etsī, quanquam, quamvis, see 611, R.

671. Participles may represent Relative Clauses (640):

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs, perfidi sunt. Cīc.

Pīsistratus Hōmēri librōs confūsōs anteā sic disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus. Cīc.

Remark.—So called, quī dicitur, vocātur, quem vocant; above-mentioned, quem anteā, suprā diximus.

672. Future Participle (Active).—The Future Participle is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with sum, I am, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin, it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Peculiar is the free use of it in Sentences of Design, and especially noticeable the compactness gained by the employment of it in Conditional Relations.

673. In later Latin, the Future Participle (Active) is used to represent subordinate relations:

1. Time When:

Tiberius trājectūrus (cum trājectūrus esset) Rhēnum commeātum nōn transmīsit. Suet. When Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.

2. Cause Why:

Dēridiculō fuit senex foedissimae adūlātiōnis tantum infāmiā ēsūrus. Tac. A butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul fawning.

Antiochus sécūrus erat dē bellō Rōmānō tanquam nōn transitūris in Asiam Rōmānis. (604, R. 2.)

3. Purpose:

Maroboduus mīsit lēgātōs ad Tiberium orātūrōs auxilia. Tac. (548 R. 2.)
Remark.—The Present Participle is sometimes used in a similar sense, but the Purpose is only an inference:

Lēgātī vēnērunt nūntiantēs Asiae quoque cīvitātēs sollicitārī. Liv. Envoys came with the announcement that the states of Asia (Minor) also were tampered with.

4. Condition and Concession:

1.) Protasis.

Dēditūris sē Hannibālī fuisse accersendum Rōmānōrum praesidium? Liv. If they had been ready to surrender to Hannibal, would they have had to send for a Roman garrison? (= Sī dēditūrı́ fuissent, Ō. R. sī dēditūrı́ fuērunt.)

2.) Apodosis.

Quatiunt arma, ruptūrı́ imperium nī dācantur. Tac. They clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward.

Librum mīsī exigentī tībi, missūrūs etsī nōn exēgissēs. Plin. Ep. I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

674. The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.

675. Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness. Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm.

1. Emphasis is produced 1. By reversing the ordinary position.

2. By approximation of similars or opposites.

3. By separation.

In all sentences beginning and end are emphatic points. In long sentences the means as well as the extremes are the points of emphasis.

2. Rhythm.—Much depends on the rhythmical order of words, for which the treatises of the ancients are to be consulted. Especially avoided are poetic rhythms. So, for example, the dactyl and spondee, or close of an hexameter at the end of a period.

676. Rule I.—The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows:

1. The Subject and its Modifiers.

2. The Modifiers of the Predicate.

3. The Predicate Proper or Verb.
ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.


Rhetorical positions:
Potentēs sequitur invidia. Quint. (479.)
Nōbis nōn satisfacit ipse Dēmosthenēs. Cīc. (556. R. 1.)
Dēscriptus erat populus Romanus censū, ordinibus, aetātibus. Cīc.

Intrā moenia sunt hostēs. Sall.

Remark.—The modifiers of the predicate stand in the order of their importance. The following arrangement is common:
1. Place, Time, Cause, or Means.
2. Indirect Object.
3. Direct Object.
4. Adverb.
5. Verb.

677. Rule II.—Interrogative Sentences begin with the interrogative, subordinate clauses with the leading particle or relative:

Quis eum diligat quem metuat? Cīc. (637.)
Postquam Caesar pervēnīt obsidēs poposcit. Cæs. (563.)
Si spiritum dūcit vivit. Cīc. (597.)
Qui timēre dēsierint ōdisse incipient. Tac. (569.)

Rhetorical position:
Nātūram sī sequēmur ducem, nunquam aberrābimus. Cīc. (597.)
Dē futūris rēbus etsi semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum conjecērā possīs accēdere. Cīc. (606.)

Cato mirāri sē ajēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex, haruspicem cum vīdisset. Cīc. (569.)

678. Rule III.—An Adjective or dependent Genitive follows the word to which it belongs:

Torquātus filium suum necāri jussit. Sall. (540.)
Sensum oculōrum praecipit animus. Quint. (540.)

Rhetorical positions:
Hannibalem sūi cīvēs ē cīvitāte ejēcērant. Cīc. (295, R. 1.)
Īsocrātēs queritur plūs hcnōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dari. Quint.

Ager, cum multōs annōs requiēvit, ūberōrēs efferre frūgēs solet. Cīc. (567.)

Vereor nē parum hīc liber mellis et absinthii multum habēre videātur. Quint. (552.)

Remarks.—1. Many expressions have become fixed formulae: So titles, proper names, and the like: see 284:

Facinus est vincīri cīvem Rōmānum. Cīc. (535.)
2. The demonstrative pronouns regularly precede:

Vereor nē hic liber absinthī multum habēre videātur. Quint. (551.)

Rhetorical position:

Recordāre tempus illud, cum pater Cūrio maerens jacēbat in lectō. Cíc. (582.)

3. New modifiers of either element may be inserted, prefixed, or added:

Catōnem vidi in bibliothecā sedentem multīs circumfusum Stōicōrum libris. Cíc. (536.)

Saepe magna indolēs virūtis priusquam reipūblīcae prōdesse potuisset exstincta fuit. Cíc. (579.)

At vidēte homīnis intolerābilem andāciam. Cíc. (490.)

3. New modifiers of either element may be inserted, prefixed, or added:

Catonem vidi in bibliotheca sedentem multīs circumfusum Stōicorum libris. Cíc. (536.)

Saepe magna indolēs virūtis priusquam reipūblīcae prōdesse potuisset exstincta fuit. Cíc. (579.)

679. Rule IV.—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends a sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb:

Zēnōnem cum Athēnīs essem audiēbam frequenter . . . Cíc. (586.)

Nēmo ērūtōrem admirātus est quod Latinē loquerētur. Cíc. (542.)

Vix cuīquam persuādēbatur Graeciō omni cessūrōs Rōmānīōs. Liv. (546, R. 2.)

Risus interdum ita repente ērumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus. Cíc. (611.)

Rhetorical positions:

Īram bene Ennīus initium dixit insāniae. Cíc. (441.)

Saepe magna indolēs virūtis priusquam reipūblīcae prōdesse potuisset exstincta fuit. Cíc. (579.)

Remarks.—1. Ferē, paene, prope, usually follow:

Nēmo ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insānit. Cíc. (591, R. 4.)

2. Negatives always precede, see 447.

680. Rule V.—Prepositions regularly precede their case.

(A rectā conscientiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere. Cíc. (382.)

Remarks.—1. On versus, tenūs and the regular postposition of cum in combination with the Personal Pronouns and the Relative, see 414, R. 1.

2. Monosyllabic prepositions are not unfrequently put between the Adjective and Substantive:

Magna cum cūrā (401).

Less frequently between the Genitive and Substantive; except when the relative is employed.

3. Dissyllabic prepositions are sometimes put after their case (Anastrophe), especially after a relative or demonstrative: most frequently contrā, inter, propter. So also adverbs.

4. The preposition may be separated from its case by a Genitive or an Adverb.

Ad Appīi Claudīi senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset. Cíc. (558.)

5. Monosyllabic prepositions such as cum, ex, dē, post, sometimes append the en-
ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

clitics -que. -ve. -ne, as ex que ils, and from them. Usually, however, the enclitics join the dependent substantive: in patriamque reedit, and returned to his country.

On the position of per, see 415, R.

681. Rule VI.—Particles vary:
Enim commonly takes the second, seldom the third place; nam and namque are regularly prepositive.
Ergō in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows; igitur is commonly second or third; itaque regularly first.
Tamen is first, but may follow an emphatic word.
Etiam usually precedes, quoque always follows.
Quidem and dēmum (at length) follow the word to which they belong.

682. Rule VII.—A word that belongs to more than one word regularly stands before them all, or after them all, sometimes after the first (287):

Ariovistus respondit multīs sēsē nōbilibus principibusque popul
Rōmānī grātum factūrum. Caes. (670, R. 9.)
Īsocratēs quēritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus
dari. Quint. (542, R.)
Longum est mūlōrum persequī īūtilitātēs et asinōrum. Cic. (246, R)

683. Rule VIII.—Words of kindred or opposite meaning are often put side by side for the sake of complement or contrast:

Manus manum lavat, One hand washes the other.
Cato mīrári sē ājēbat quod nōn rīdēret haruspex, haruspicem cur
vidisset. Cic. (569.)
Ēmit morte immortālitātem. Quint. (404.)

684. Rule IX.—Contrasted Pairs.—When pairs are contrasted, the second is put in the same order as the first, but often in inverse order. This inverse order is called Chiasmus, or crosswise position, and gives alternate stress. The principle is of wide application.

Same order:

Fortūnā vestra facit ut īrae meae temperem. Liv. (557.)
Mālo tē sapiens hostis metuat quam stultī civēs laudent. Liv. (54 R. 2.)

* From the Greek letter X.

1. Foris 2. arma.
2. consilium X 1. domi.
Inverse order (Chiasmus):

Ante vidēmus (1) fulgurātiōnem (2) quam sonum (2) audiāmus (1).

Sen. (579.)

Parvī sunt forōs (1) arma (2) nīsi est consiliō (2) domī (1). Crc. (412, R. 1.)

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

685. A period is a compound sentence with one or more subordinate clauses, in which sentence the meaning is kept suspended to the close.

686. Latin periods may be divided into two classes:
1. Responsive or Apodotic, in which a Protasis has an Apodosis.
2. Intercalary or Enthetic, in which the various items are inserted in their proper place between Subject and Predicate.

687. Care must be taken—
1. To vary the clauses, so as to prevent too great uniformity of rhythm.
2. To observe a certain proportion in the length of the clauses.

The following passages may be cited as specimens of long periods:

Ut sāpe homīnes aegrīs morbōs gravi, cum aestū febrīque jactantur, si aquam gelidam bibērunt, prīmō relevāri videntur, deinde multō gravius vehementiusque afflictingur: sīc hīc morbus, quī est in rēpublicā, relevātus istīus paenā, vehementius, vivīs reliquis, ingravescet. Crc. (Apodotic.)

Catuvolcus, rēx dimidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorīge consiliō inierat, aetāte jam confectus, cum labōrem aut belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgem, quī ējus consiliō auctōr fuisset, taxō, cūjus magna in Gallīā Germānīaque cōpia est, sē examināvit. Cæs. (Enthetic.)

FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

688. Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective (195, R. 1), the copula of the predicate (200), the verb of the adverb.

Remark.—When the ellipsis is indefinite, do not attempt to supply it. The figure is much abused by commentators in the explanation of grammatical phenomena.

689. Brachylogy (*breviloquentia*) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.

Tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima (= es) vellem. Ov. (316.)

690. Zeugma (*yoking*) is a junction of two governing words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

Manūs ac supplicēs vōcēs ad Tiberium tendens. Tac. Stretching out hands and (uttering) suppliant cries to Tiberius.

691. Aposiōpēsis is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian *Quōs ego*.

692. Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words.

693. Hyperbaton, or Trajection, is a violent displacement of words.

Lēidia dic per omnēs tē deōs ὕρῳ. Hor. (415, R.)

694. Anacolūthon, or *want of sequence*, occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

695. Hendiadys (*ἐν δια δυοίν*) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive:

Vulgus et multitudo, *the common herd.*
Via et ratio, *scientific method.*
Vi et armīs, *by force of arms.*

Remark.—This figure is much abused by commentators.

696. Constructio Praegnans. So-called *constructio praegnans* is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

Exitium irritat. Tac. *He provokes destruction.* (Ad exitium irritat.)

697. On Lētōtēs, see 448, R. 2.
PROSODY.

698. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

Remark.—Prosody originally meant Accent. Latin Accent is regulated by Quantity, and as classic Latin versification is also quantitative, Prosody is loosely used of both quantity and versification.

Quantity.

699. Rule I.—A syllable is said to be long by nature when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: ō, vae, légēs, saevae.

Remark.—Every vowel sound followed by j is long. This is due sometimes to the broad sound of the j itself, sometimes to natural length of the vowel, sometimes to compensation (Gājus for Gāius, pējero for perjero). J does not make position in the compounds of jugum, yoke; bijugus, two-horse.

700. Rule II.—A syllable is said to be long by position when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: a rs, c o llum, d i sco, c a stra.

Remarks.—1. The consonants may be divided between two words: per m are, in t errīs; but when all the consonants are in the second word, the preceding short syllable commonly remains short: praemiā scribae.

2. The natural length of a vowel before two consonants is often hard, often impossible, to determine. Every vowel before nf and ns seems to have had a long sound. Other points are too much disputed to be introduced into an elementary treatise. With the clear and full pronunciation of the vowels, the difference between length by nature and length by position was probably not so great as might be supposed.

701. Rule III.—A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by l or r, is common: tenē-brae.
Remarks.—1. The syllable must end in a short vowel: nāvī-fragus, mellī-flus; but ā-b-rumpo, ē-b-liviscor.

2. In Greek words, m and n are included under this rule: Tē-cmēssa, Cyē-cnus.

702. Rule IV.—Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: s a e vus, conclūdo (from claudo), in i quus (from aequus), cōgo (from coigo = con + ago).

Exception.—Prae in composition is shortened before a vowel; praeu-ustus.

703. Rule V.—One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or h, makes a short syllable: déus, God; pūer, boy; nihil, nothing.

Exceptions.—1. a in the old Genitive of the First Declension: aurāī.

2. e in -ei of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: diēī, but fidēī.

3. a and e before i in proper names in -jus: Gāi, Pompeī.

4. i in the Genitive form -ius. Alterīus is often shortened, perhaps even in prose: ünīus, ullīus, nullīus, tōtīus, are found in poetry. In aliūs the i is never shortened (alius for alīius).

5. i in fio (for fuio) is long, except before r: fio, but fieret.

6. ēheu, Dīāna, ōhē, dīus (= dīvus).

7. Many Greek words: ā ēr, Menelāus, mūs ē um, Mēdēa.

Quantity of Final Syllables.

A. Polysyllables.

704. Rule VI.—In words of more than one syllable, final a, e, and y are short; i, o, and u are long.

1. a is short: terrā, earth; dōnā, gifts; capitā, heads.

Exceptions.—1. Ablative of the First Declension: terrā.

2. Vocative of words in ās (Aenēā), and Greek Nominative in α long (Electrā).

3. Imperative of First Conjugation: amā.

4. Most uninflected words: trigintā, juxtā; but itā quia, ējā, putā (for instance).
2. e is short.

Exceptions.—1. Ablative of the Fifth Declension: diē.
2. Imperative of Second Conjugation: monē (but cāve and occasionally other Iambic Imperatives).
3. Most adverbs of Second Declension: rectē (but bene, malē, infernē, supernē, saepē).
4. Greek words in e long (η): Tempē, melē.

3. y is always short, except in contracted forms: misy (Dative misy = misyi).
4. i is long: domīnī, vīgintī, audī.

Exceptions.—1. Greek Dative sī: Trōasī.
2. Greek Nominatives, sināpī Vocatives, Parī; Datives Sing. (rarely) Minōdī.
3. quasī, nisī, cúr (when a dissyllable).
4. i is common in mīhī, tībī, sībī, ibī, ubī.

Observe the compounds: ibīdem, ibīque, ubīque, ubīnam, ubīvīs, ubīcunque, nēcubī; (utī, but) utīnam, utīque, sīcūtī.

5. o is long: bonō, tūtō.

2. Common in verbal forms, but more rarely outside of the Present Tense or in verbs with long penults: sciō, putō, volō; estō, crēdō. The short pronunciation extended sometimes even to the Gerund: amandō.
3. o is short in modō, citō, duō, octō, egō, illicō, immō, and in many other words (in later poetry).

6. u is always long: cornū, fructū, audītū.

705. Rule VII.—All final syllables that end in a simple consonant other than s are short.

Exceptions.—1. ālēc, liēn, and many Greek nouns.
2. The adverbs and oblique cases of illic, illūc, istic, istūc, can hardly be considered exceptions, as -c is for -ce, and is merely enclitic.
4. itī, petītī, and their compounds.

706. Rule VIII.—Of final syllables in s: as, es, os, are long; is, us, ys, short.
QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. as is long: Aenēās, servās, amās.

Exceptions.—1. Greek nouns in ās, ādis: Arcās, Arcādis.
   2. Greek Accusative Plural, Third Declension: hērōās, Arcadās.
   3. anās, anātis.

2. es is long: rēgēs, diēs, monēs.

Exceptions.—1. Nominative Singular Third Declension, when the Genitive has ētis, ētis, ēdis: segēs, milēs, obsēs; but abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.
   2. Compounds of ēs, be: adēs, potēs.
   3. penēs (Preposition).
   4. Greek words in ēs (ē$): Nominative Plural, Arcadēs; Vocative, Dēmosthenēs; Neuter, cacoēthēs.

3. os is long: deōs, nepōs.

Exceptions.—1. Compōs, impōs, exōs.
   2. Greek words in ēs (os): melōs.

4. is is short: canīs, legīs.

Exceptions.—1. Dative and Ablative Plural: terrīs, bonīs.
   3. In the Nominative of sundry words, increasing long in the Genitive: Quirīs, Quiritīs.
   5. In the verbal forms from vīs, sīs, fīs, and velīs: nō-līs, mā-līs, ad-sīs, cale-fīs.
   6. In the Second Person Singular Future Perfect Indicative and Perfect Subjunctive, is is common; viderīs.

5. us is short: servūs, currūs.

   2. Nominative Third Declension, when the Genitive has a long u: virtūs, virtūtīs; incūs, incūdis: tellūs, tellūris.
   3. In Greek words with u long (ov$): tripūs, Sapphūs; but Oedipūs and polypūs.

6. ys is short: chlamŷs.
B. Monosyllables.

707. Rule IX.—All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long: ā, dā, mē, dē, ĥī, sī, ē, dō, tū.

Except the enclitics: -quē, -vē, -nē, -cē, -tē, -psē, -ptē.

708. Rule X.—Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given: dās, fēs, scīs, dāt, fēt, is, īd, quīs, ēs, quis, quōs.

hic and hoc (Nominative and Accusative) are sometimes short; dīc and dūc have the quantity of their verbs; es, be, is short.

709. Rule XI.—Monosyllabic Nominatives of Substantives and Adjectives are long when they end in a consonant, even if the stem-syllable be short: ōs, mōs, vēr, sōl, fūr, plūs; lār (lāris), pēs (pēdis), bōs (bōvis), pār (pāris).

Exceptions.—vir and lac, os (ossis), mel;
Also cor, vas (vadis), fel.

710. Rule XII.—Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short: ān, ēs, īn, nēc, pēr, tēr.

Excepting ēn and nōn and quīn;
And also crās and cūr and sīn;
Also the Adverbs in c: hīc, hūc, hāc, sīc.

Quantity of Stem-Syllables.

711. Rule XIII.—The quantity of stem-syllables, when not determined by the general rules, is fixed by the usage of the poets (long or short by authority).

Remarks.—1. The changes of quantity in the formation of tense-stems have been set forth in the conjugation of the verb, (153, 2.)

2. The occasional differences in the quantity of the stem-syllables, which spring from the same radical, can only be explained by reference to the history of each word, and cannot be given here.
Quantity in Compounds.

712. Rule XIV.—Compounds generally keep the quantity of their constituent parts: (cēdo), ante-cēdo, de-cēdo, prō-cēdo, (caedo), occīdo (cādo), occīdo.

Remarks.—1. Of the inseparable prefixes, dī, sē, and vē, are long, rē, short: didūco, sēdūco, vēcōr, rēdūco. Exceptions: dī in ēsertus is short; in dirīmo dīr stands for dis.

2. Nē is short, except in nēdūm, nēmo (ne-hemo), nēquam, nēquidquam, nēquaquam, nēquitia, nēve, nēcubī, nēcunde.

3. Rē is sometimes lengthened; the following letter is then doubled in many texts: rel(l)igio, rel(l)iquiae, rep(p)erit, re(t)tulit; compare reddō. Re is for red, but, except in perfect stems and in dactylic poetry, there is no compensation.

4. Prō is shortened in many words, especially before f: prōfugio, prōfugus, prōfundus, prōfiteor, prōfāri, prōfānus, prōficiscor, prōcella, prōcul, prōnepōs. The older language shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words prō (πρό) is generally short: prōphēta.

5. The second part of the compound is sometimes shortened: dējērō, (from jūrō), cognitus, agnitus (from nōtus). Notice the quantity in the compounds of -dicus: fātīdīcus, vērīdīcus (dīco), and innūba, prōnūba (nūbo).

6. Mechanical rules, more minute than those given above, might be multiplied indefinitely, but they are all open to so many exceptions as to be of little practical value. A correct pronunciation of Latin cannot be acquired except by constant practice, under the direction of a competent teacher, or by a diligent study of the Latin poets, and consequently of Latin versification.

Figures of Prosody.

713. Poetry often preserves the older forms of language, and perpetuates peculiarities of pronunciation, both of which are too frequently set down to poetic licence.
714. **Hiatus** and **Elision**.—Hiatus is the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables, which meeting produces an almost continuous opening (yawning) of the vocal tube. In the body of a word this hiatus, or yawning, is avoided sometimes by contraction, often by shortening the first vowel (13).

In poetry, when one word ends with a vowel and another begins with a vowel, or h, the first vowel is *elided*. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a hurried half-pronunciation.

---

**O felix un(a) ant(e) alias Priameia virgo.**—Verg.

In like manner m final (a faint nasal sound) is elided with its short vowel before a vowel or h (*Ecthipsis*).

**Monstr(um), horrend(um), inform(e) ingens cui lumen ademptum.**—Verg.

**Exceptions.**—After a vowel or m final, the word est, is, drops its e and joins its preceding syllable.

**Si rixa s t ubi tu pulsas ego vapulo tantum.**—Juv.

**Aeternas quoniam paenas in morte timendum s t.**—Lucr.

**Remarks.**—1. The Hiatus is sometimes allowed: a, in the Arsis, chiefly when the first vowel is long; b, in the Thesis, when a long vowel is shortened; c, before a period.

a. Stant et juniperf (h) et castaneae (h) hirsutae. Verg.

b. Crēdimus? an qui (h) amant ipsi sibi somnia fingunt? Verg.


2. Mono syllabic interjections are not elided.

3. On the elision of e in -ne? see 456, R. 2.

---

715. **Diastolé.**—Many final syllables, which were originally long, are restored to their rights by the weight of the Arsis. This is called Diastolé.

**Hostis est uxor invita quae ad virum nuptum datur.**—Plaut.

**Dummodō morata recte veniat dotatast satis.**—Plaut.

**Pectoribūs inhians spirantia consultit exta.**—Verg.

**Perrupit Acheronta Herculeus labor.**—Hor.

Sometimes, however, Diastolé arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation).

**Nec quas Priamides in aquosis vallibus Idae.**—Ov.

**Desine plura puēr—et quod nunc instat agamus.**—Verg.

**Remarks.**—1. Scholars are not agreed on all these points.

2. Notice especially -quē:

**Sideraquē ventique nocent avidaeque volucres.** Ov,
716. Systolé.—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (Systolé).

Obstupui stetērunque comae vox faucibus haesit.—VERG.
E terra magn(um) alterius spectare laborem.—LUCR.
Unius ad certam formam primordia rerum.—LUCR.
Nullius addictus jurare in verba magistri.—HOR.

Remarks.—1. Many regard the short penult of the Perf. in stetērun, dedērun, as original (dedro in inscriptions).
2. In earlier poetry (e. g. Plautus), many syllables otherwise long by position are shortened: So ille, and its forms ēste, more rarely ipse. Also ēnde, ūnde, and others.

717. Hardening.—The vowels i and u assert their half-consontant nature (Hardening): ābjētē, (ābītē), ēnvā (gēnūā), tēnviā (tēnūiā).

Flāv jurum rex Eridanus camposque per omnes.—VERG.
Nam quae tēnviā sunt hiscendist nulla potestas.—LUCR.

718. Dialysis.—The consonants j and v assert their half-vowel nature (Diálysis): dissōlūo (dissolvo), Gaiūs (Gājus, from Gāvius).

Adulteretur et columba mi lu o.—HOR.

719. Syncopé.—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose (Syncopé): calfacio for calefacio.

Templorum positor templorum sancte repōstor.—Ov.
Quiddam magnum addens unum me surpīte (= surripite) morti.—HOR.

720. Tmēsis.—Compound words are separated into their parts (Tmēsis).

Quo me cunque rapit tempestas deferor hospes.—HOR.

Remark.—The earlier poets carry Tmēsis much further in unwise emulation of the Greek. Celebrated is:

Saxo cere comminuit brum. ENNIUS.

721. Synizēsis.—Vowels are connected by a slur (Synizēsis), as often in the living language: dēinde, dēinceps.

Quid faciam roger anne rogem? quid dēinde rogabo?—Ov
So even when h intervenes, as dehinc:
Eurum ad sē Zephyrumque vocat, dehinc talia fatur. VERG.
VERSIFICATION.

Remark.—Synizesis (settling together) is also called Synaeresis (taking together), as opposed to Diaeresis (5); but Synaeresis properly means contraction, as in côgo (for coigo), and nêmo (for nehemo). Synaloepha is a general term embracing all methods of avoiding Hiatus.

722. Peculiarities of s.—In the older poetry, final s, preceded by a short vowel, is dropped before a consonant.

În somnîs vidît priu(s) quàm sam (= eam) dîscere côepit.—Ennius.

Often in Lucretius.

Remark.—In comic poetry, a short final syllable in s blends with est, and sometimes with es: opust (= opus est); simili’s (= similis es).

VERSIFICATION.

723. Rhythm.—Rhythm means harmonious movement. In language, Rhythm is marked by the stress of voice (Accent). The accented part is called the Arsis; the unaccented, the Thesis. The Rhythmical Accent is called the Ictus (blow, beat).

Remark.—Besides the dominant Ictus, there is a subordinate or secondary Ictus, just as there is a dominant and a secondary Accent in words.

724. Metre.—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in Metre (Measure). A Metre is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

725. Unit of Measure.—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable: Mora, Tempus (Time), ♩.

The value in music is ♩ = ⅛.

The long — is the double of the short.

The value in music is ♩ = ¼.

Remark.—Any quantity that cannot be measured by the standard unit is called irrational.

726. Resolution and Contraction.—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

Resolution, ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩. Contraction, ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩.

727. Feet.—As elements of musical strains, Metres are called Bars.
As elements of verses, Metres are called Feet.

As musical strains are composed of equal bars, so verses are composed of equal feet, marked as in music, thus |.

Remark.—Theoretically, the number of metres is unrestricted; practically, only those metres are important that serve to embody the principal rhythms.

728. Names of the Feet.—The feet in use are the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feet of Three Times</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trochee,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iambus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribrach,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feet of Four Times</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dactyl,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anapaest,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spondee,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feet of Five Times</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cretic,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Paeon,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Paeon,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacchius,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibacchius,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feet of Six Times</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iōnicus ā mājōri,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iōnicus ā minōri,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choriambus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ditrochee,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diambus,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Diagram representation of the feet with musical notations]
729. **Ascending and Descending Rhythms.**—Rhythms are divided into ascending and descending. If the Arsis follows, the Rhythm is called *ascending*; if it precedes, *descending*. So the Trochee has a descending, the Iambus an ascending, rhythm.

Ascending rhythms may become descending by Anacrusis. When the Thesis precedes the Arsis, it is cut off and called an Anacrusis (upward stroke, signal-beat). So the Iambus is regarded as an Anacrustic Trochee, the Anapaest as an Anacrustic Dactyl, the Iōnicus a minōri as an Anacrustic Iōnicus a mājōri. The sign of the Anacrusis is:

730. **Names of Rhythms.**—Rhythms are commonly called after their principal metrical representative. So the Trochaic Rhythm, the Anapaestic Rhythm, the Iambic Rhythm, the Dactylic Rhythm, the Ionic Rhythm.

731. **Classes of Rhythms.**—In Latin, the musical element of versification is subordinate, and the principles of Greek rhythm have but a limited application.

The Greek classes are based on the relation of Arsis to Thesis.

I. Equal Class, in which the Arsis is equal to the Thesis (γένος ἰδιον).
   This may be called the Dactylic-Anapaestic class.

II. Unequal Class, in which the Arsis is double of the Thesis (γένος διπλασίαν).
   This may be called the Trochaico-Iambic class.

III. Quinquepartite or Paeonian Class (Five-eighths class), of which the Cretic and Bacchius are the chief representatives (γένος ἕμιόλιον).

732. **Rhythmical Series.**—A Rhythmical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monopody</th>
<th>one foot.</th>
<th>Tetrapody</th>
<th>four feet.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dipody</td>
<td>two feet.</td>
<td>Pentapody</td>
<td>five feet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tripody</td>
<td>three feet.</td>
<td>Hexapody</td>
<td>six feet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VERSIFICATION.

Remarks.—1. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (meter) in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.

2. There are limits to the extension of series.
   In Latin, four feet is the limit of the Dactylic, six of the Trochaic and Iambic series. All beyond these are compounds.

733. Equality of the Feet.—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods:

1. Syllaba Anceps.
2. Catalexis.
3. Protraction.
4. Correption.

734. Syllaba Anceps.—The final syllable of a series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long; long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a Syllaba Anceps.

735. Catalexis and Pause.—A complete series is called Acatalectic; an incomplete series is called Catalectic. A series or verse is said to be Catalectic in syllabam, in dissyllabum, in trisyllabum, according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \\
  \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \\
\end{array}
\]  
Trimeter dactylicus catalepticus in syllabam.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \\
  \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \overline{\text{\textbullet}} \\
\end{array}
\]  
Trimeter dactylicus catalepticus in dissyllabum.

The time is made up by Pause.

The omission of one mora is marked

```
\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \text{\textbullet} \text{\textbullet} \\
  \text{\textbullet} \text{\textbullet} \\
\end{array}
\]
```

```
\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \text{\textbullet} \text{\textbullet} \\
  \text{\textbullet} \text{\textbullet} \\
\end{array}
\]
```

736. Protraction and Syncope.—Protraction (τονή) consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more theses, which omission is called Syncope.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \text{\textbullet} = 3 = \text{\textbullet} \\
  \text{\textbullet} = 4 = \text{\textbullet} \\
\end{array}
\]

737. Correption.—Correption is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.
So $\omega = $ two short syllables with the value of one.
So the ordinary (heavy) dactyl is $-\cdot\cdot = \begin{array}{c} \cdot \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \cdot \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \cdot \end{array}$

The light (irrational) dactyl is $\sim \cdot = 3 (1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1) \begin{array}{c} \cdot \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \cdot \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \cdot \end{array}$

Remark.—Under this head, notice the frequent use of the irrational long in Trochaic and Iambic verses, and in Anacrusis. The irrational long is marked $>$. The following line illustrates all the points mentioned:

$$\text{Nullam | Vare sa-} | \text{cra || vite pri-} | \text{us || severis | arbo | -rem. Hor.}$$


738. Verse.—A Simple Rhythm is one that consists of a simple series.
A Compound Rhythm is one that consists of two or more series.
A Verse is a simple or compound rhythmical series, which forms a distinct and separate unit. The end of a verse is marked—

1. By closing with a full word. Two verses cannot divide a word between them.
2. By the Syllaba Anceps, which can stand unconditionally.
3. By the Hiatus, i.e., the verse may end with a vowel, though the next verse begin with one.

Remark.—Occasionally, one verse is run into another by Elision. This is called Synapheia ($\sigma\nu\nu\alpha\phi\varepsilon\iota\alpha$). It is a violation of the fundamental law, and is not to be imitated. Verg. Aen. i., 392-3, 448-9; ii., 745-6.

739. Methods of Combining Verses.—The same verse may be repeated throughout without recurring groups. So the Heroic Hexameter, the Iambic Trimeter (Linear Composition). Or the same verse or different verses may be grouped in pairs (distichs), triplets (tristichs), fours (tetrastichs). Beyond these simple stanzas Latin versification seldom ventured.
Larger groups of series are called Systems.
Larger groups of verses are called Strophes, a name sometimes attached to the Horatian stanzas.

740. Union of Language with Rhythm.—When embodied in language, rhythm has to deal with rhythmical groups already
in existence. Every full word is a rhythmical group with its accent, is a metrical group with its long or short syllables, is a word-foot. Ictus sometimes conflicts with accent; the unity of the verse-foot breaks up the unity of the word-foot.

741. Conflict of Ictus and Accent.—In earlier Latin poetry, the coincidence and conflict of Ictus and Accent are regulated by subtle laws, the exposition of which would require too much space. In ordinary Latin verse, Ictus overrides Accent, at least according to modern pronunciation.

742. Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked †.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse.

Remarks.—1. So in the Heroic Hexameter the great caesura falls before the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first arsis of the second half.

\[
\text{Una salus victis † nullam sperare salutem. Verg.}
\]

It does not occur at the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

2. In many treatises any incision in a verse is called a Caesura.

743. Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on an arsis, it is called a Masculine Caesura; when on a thesis, a Feminine Caesura.

\[
\text{Una sa | lus † vi | ctis † nul | lam † spe | rare † sa | lutem.}
\]

\(a, b, c,\) are Masculine Caesurae; \(d,\) a Feminine Caesura.

744. Diæresis.—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diæresis arises, marked thus: ||.

\[
\text{Ite domum saturae † venit \| Hesperus \| ite capellae.—Verg.}
\]

Remark.—Diæresis, like Caesura, serves to distribute the masses of the verse and prevent monotony. What is Caesura in an ascending rhythm becomes Diæresis as soon as the rhythm is treated anacrustically.

\[
\text{Suis \| et i | psa † Ro | ma vi | ribus | ruit. Iambic Trimeter.}
\]

\[
\text{Su: is et | ipsa \| Roma \| viri | bus † ru | it. Troch. Trimeter, Catal., with Anacrusis.}
\]
745. Recitation.—When the word-foot runs over into the next verse-foot, a more energetic recitation is required, in order to preserve the sense, and hence the multiplication of Caesurae lends vigor to the verse.

Remark.—The ordinary mode of scanning, or singing out the elements of a verse, without reference to signification, cannot be too strongly condemned, as,

Unasa, lusvic, tisnul, lamspe, raresa, lutem!

Trochaic Rhythms.

746. The Trochaic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the arsis is double of the thesis. It is represented—

By the Trochee: \( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \);  
By the Tribrach: \( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \); and, at the end of a series,  
By the Spondee: \( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \), or rather the irrational Trochee, \( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \).

Remarks.—1. Anapaests are rare. Dactyls are used only in proper names. Both are of course irrational. In the earlier poets, however, the treatment of the Trochaic verse is very free.  
2. Trochaic-meters, being compounded of dipodies (ditrochaei), have \( \frac{3}{8} \) instead of \( \frac{3}{8} \) time (729). The second trochee of each dipody (-meter) may be irrational on the principle of syllaba anceps. Hence the rule:

747. Trochaic-meters admit the substitution of a long for the short of the even places.

1. Trochaic Tripody (Ithyphallie).  
Bassareu bicornis.—Atil. Fort. \( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \)

2. Trochaic Tetrapody (Catalectic).  
Aulia divitem manet.—Hor. \( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \)

a. Vive laetus quisque vivis. \( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \)

b. Vita parvom munus est.—Anthol. Lat. \( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \)

4. Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis (Alcaic).  
Si fractus illabatur orbis.—Hor. \( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \)

748. 5. Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Octonarius).  
\( \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} | \mathbb{\alpha} \mathbb{\alpha} \)

Párce jam camoéna vati párce jam sacró furori.—Servius.

Remark.—This verse and the following are compounds. The Octonarius is compounded of two Dimeters acatalectic; hence regular Diaeresis after the Dimeter; freely handled in comedy; Hiatus in the Diaeresis; Monotonous, on account of the division into two equal parts. It occurs occasionally in Plautus and Terence.
VERSIFICATION.

Verba dum sint, verum si ad rem conferentur, vapulabit. Ter.  
Sine modo et modestia sum sine bono jure atque honore. Plaut.  
Petulans prōtervo iracundo animo indomito incogitato. Plaut.

749. 6. *Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic (Septēnārius).*

\[ \overline{\text{- - - | - - - | - - - | - - -}} \]

Cras amet qui nunquam amavit \| quique amavit cras amet. Pervig.  

Ven.

Tu me amoris magi' quam honoris \| servavisti gratia. Ennius.  

Vapulare te vehementer jubeo: ne me territes. Plaut.

Remark.—The Trochaic Tetrameter (so called by eminence) is of frequent occurrence in comic poetry. It is compounded of Dimeter + Dimeter Catalectic. Hiatus is often found at the break.

Manibu' puris capite operto \| ibi continuo contonat. Plaut.

IAMBIC RHYTHMS.

750. The Iambic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the arsis is double of the thesis. It is represented

By the Iambus: \( \dot{\text{- -}} \);
By the Tribrach: \( \dot{\text{- - -}} \);
By the Spondee: \( \dot{\text{- \-}} \) (in -meters);
By the Dactyl: \( \dot{\text{- -}} \) (sometimes); and
By the Anapaest: \( \dot{\text{- - -}} \).

Remark.—Of course, Spondee, Dactyl, and Anapaest, are all irrational. The Spondee
\( = \dot{\text{-}} \), the Anapaest, \( \dot{\text{- -}} \), and the Dactyl, \( \dot{\text{- - -}} \).

751. Iambic -meters admit substitution of a long for the short of the odd feet.

Remark.—Regarding the Iambus as an Anacrustic Trochee, the same rule and reason hold for the substitution in the one, as in the other (746, R. 2).

752. 7. *Iambic Dimeter.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Usual Scheme</th>
<th>Anacrustic Scheme</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inarsit aestuosius</td>
<td>( \dot{\text{- - - - - - - - - -}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imbres nivesque compar</td>
<td>( \text{--- - - - - - - - -} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Videre properantes domum</td>
<td>( \text{--- - - - - - - - -} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ast ego vicissim risero. Hor.</td>
<td>( \text{--- - - - - - - - -} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remark.—According to the Anacrustic Scheme, the Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic is a Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic with Anacrusis.
VERSIFICATION.

753. 8. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.

Mea renidet in domo lacunar
Regumque pueris nec satelles Orci. Hor.  

Anacrustic Scheme:  \( \uparrow : \uparrow | \downarrow | \downarrow | \downarrow | \downarrow | \downarrow | \wedge \) (with Syncope).

754. 9. Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic (Sénárius).

Suis et ipsa \( \uparrow \) Roma viribus ruit  
Heu me per urbeam \( \uparrow \) nam pudet tanti  
malii
Deripere lunam \( \uparrow \) vocibus possim meis  
Infamis Helenae \( \uparrow \) Castor offensus  
vicem
Optat quietem \( \uparrow \) Pelopis infidi pater  
Alitibus atque \( \uparrow \) canibus homicidam  
Hectorem  

Anacrustic Scheme:  \( \uparrow : \uparrow | \downarrow | \downarrow | \downarrow | \downarrow | \downarrow | \wedge \)

Remarks.—1. The Iambic Trimeter when kept pure has a rapid aggressive movement. Hence, it is thus used in lampoons and invectives. It admits the Spondee in the odd places (first, third, fifth foot); the Tribrach in any but the last; the Dactyl in the first and third. The Anapaest is rare. When carefully handled, the closing part of the verse is kept light, so as to preserve the character. Special study is necessary to understand the treatment of the comic Trimeter.

2. Caesurae.—The principal caesura is the Penthemimeral, which falls on the middle of the third foot \( (\pi\nu\nu\nu\nu\nu) = 2\frac{1}{2} \) and is rarely wanting. Less important is the Hepthemimeral \((\epsilon \varphi \nu\nu\nu\nu\nu) = 3\frac{1}{2})\), which falls on the middle of the fourth foot.

Levis crepante \( \uparrow \) lympha \( \uparrow \) de silit pede. Hor.

Of course in the Anacrustic Scheme the Caesura of the ordinary scheme becomes Diaeresis.

3. A break (Diaeresis) at the middle of the verse is avoided. Short particles, which adhere closely to the following word, do not constitute exceptions.

Laboriosa nec cohor\( \_\_\)s Ulixsei. Hor.

Adulteretur et columba miluo. Hor.

In like manner explain—

Refertque tanta grex amicus ubera. Hor.
755. 10. Trimeter Iambicus Claudus (Choliambus); Scazon (= Hobbler) Hipponacteus.

Miser Catulle desinas ineptire. Cat. 
Fulsere quondam candidi tibi soles. Cat. 
Dominis parantur ista; serviunt vobis.

Remarks.—1. In the Choliambus the rhythm is reversed at the close, by putting a trochee or spondee in the sixth foot. The lighter the first part of the verse, the greater the surprise. It is intended to express comic anger, resentment, disappointment.

2. The Anacrustic measurement is as follows:

\[ \Uparrow : \_U | \_U | \_U | \_U | \_U | \_U \]. Trochaic Trimeter with Anacrusis Syncopé and Protraction.

756. 11. Iambic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Octonarius).

Hic finis est iambe salve || vindicis doctor mali. Servius.
Te cum securi caudicali || praeficio provinciae. Plaut.

Remark.—This verse occurs frequently in the comic poets, and is to be regarded as a compound. It either divides itself into equal parts at the end of the first Dimeter (with Hiatus and Syllaba Anceps) or has a Caesura in the first Thesis of the third Dimeter.

1. 0 Troja, 0 patria, 0 Pergamum, 0 Priame, peristi senex. Plaut.
Is porro me autem verberat || incursat pugnis calcibus. Plaut.
2. Facile omnes quum valemus recta || consilia aegrotis damus. Ter.

757. 12. Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic (Septenarius).

Remitte pallium mihi || meum quod involasti. Cat.

Remarks.—1. This verse is to be regarded as a compound of Dimeter + Dimeter Catalectic: hence, regular Diaeresis after the first Dimeter:
With Syllaba Anceps:
Si abduxeris celabitur || itidem ut celata adhuc est. Plaut.
With Hiatus:
Sed si tibi viginti minae || argenti proferuntur. Plaut.
2. It may be measured anacrustically:

\[ \Uparrow : \_U | \_U | \_U | \_U | \_U | \_U | \_U | \_U \].

Dactylic Rhythms.

758. The Dactylic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the Arsis is equal to the Thesis \((2 = 2)\).
The Dactylic Rhythm is represented by the Dactyl: \(\_\_\_\). Often, also, by the Spondee: \(\_\).

\[ \]
A Dactylic verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, a Tetrameter; of five, a Pentameter; of six, an Hexameter.


Terruit urbem. Hor.  

Remark.—Though generally measured thus, this verse is properly logaoedic, and will recur under that head.


Pulvis et umbra sumus. Hor.  

15. Dactylic Tetrameter Catalectic in Dissyllabum.

Aut Epheson bimarisve Corinthi  
O fortes pejoraeque passi  
Mensorem cohibent Archyta. Hor.  


Nunc decet aut viridi nitidum caput  
Pallida mors aequo pulsat pede  
Vitae summa brevis spem nos vetat  

Occurs only in combination.

**Heroic Hexameter.**

761. 17.  

1. Ut fugiunt aquilas † timidissima † turba columbae. Ov.  
2. At tuba terribili † sonitu † procul † aere canoro. Verg.  
3. Quadrupedante putrem † sonitu † quattuor ungula campum. Verg.  

Five Dactyls.

4. Cum medio celeres † revolant † ex aequore mergi. Verg.  
5. Vastius insurgens † decimae † ruit † impetus undae. Ov.  
6. Et reboat raucum † regio † cita † barbar † bombum. Lucr.  

Four Dactyls.

7. Muta metu terram † genibus † summissa petebat. Lucr.  
8. Inter cunctantes † cecidit † moribunda ministros. Verg.  
9. Ne turbata volent † rapidis † ludibria ventis. Verg.  

Three Dactyls.

10. Versaque in obnixos † urgentur † cornua vasto. Verg.  
11. Processit longe † flammantia † moenia mundi. Lucr.  
12. Portam vi multa † converso † cardine torquet. Verg.  
13. Tectum augustum ingens † centum sublime columnis. Verg.  

Two Dactyls.


One Dactyl.

15. Ne Dactyl.
VERSIFICATION.

22. Et migræ violæ + sunt | et vaccinia nigra. Verg.
25. Me me adsunt qui sed in me convertite ferrum. Verg.

Remarks.—1. The Heroic Hexameter is composed of two dactylic tripodies, the second of which ends in a spondee. Spondees may be substituted for the dactyl in the first four feet; in the fifth foot, only when a special effect is to be produced. Such verses are called Spondaic. The longest hexameter contains five dactyls and one spondee (or trochee)—in all, seventeen syllables; the shortest in use, five spondees and one dactyl—in all, thirteen syllables. This variety in the length of the verse, combined with the great number of casusae pauses, gives the Hexameter peculiar advantages for continuous composition.

2. The two reigning lictores are the first and fourth, and the pauses are so arranged as to give special prominence to them—the first by the pause at the end of the preceding verse, the fourth by pauses within the verse, both before and after the arsis.

3. The principal Caesura in Latin poetry is the Penthemimal (3\%), i.e., in the arsis of the third foot, or masculine caesura of the third foot. The next is the feminine caesura of the third foot, the so-called Third Trochee, which is less used among the Romans than among the Greeks; then the Hepthemimal (3\%) in the arsis of the fourth foot. In Latin poetry is largely rhetorical, and the caesura is of more importance for recitation than for singing. The Roman poets are very exact in the observance of these pauses.

4. The Dixeresis which is most carefully avoided is the one after the third foot, especially if that foot ends in a spondee (27), and the verse is thereby split in half.

Examples are found occasionally, and if the regular caesura precedes, the verse is not positively faulty.

His lacrimis vitam + damus | — et miserescimus ultro. Verg.
It is unambiguous when no other caesura proper is combined with it.
Poeni | pervortentes | omnia | circumcursorunt. Ennius.
On the other hand, the Bucolic tetrapody, or pause at the end of the fourth foot divides the verse into proportionate parts (16 and 8 morae or 2 to 1), and gives a graceful trochaic movement to the hexameter. It is often sought after.

Ite domum satureae | venit Hesperus | ite capellae. Verg.
5. Much of the beauty of the Hexameter depends on the selection and arrangement of the words considered as metrical elements. The examples given above have been chosen with especial reference to the picturesque effect of the verse. Monosyllables at the end of the Hexameter denote surprise; anapaestic words, rapid movement, and the like.

Again, the Hexameter may be lowered to a conversational tone by large masses of spondees, and free handling of the caesura. Compare the Hexameters of Horace in the Odes with those in the Satires.
762. 18. Elegiac Pentameter (Catalectic Trimeter repeated).

At dolor in lacrimas | vérterat omne
  merum. Tib. 2 0 0 0 0

Mé legat ét lectó | cármine dóctus
  amét. Ov. 2 0 0 2 2

Āt nunc bárbariés | grándis habére
  nihil. Ov. 2 0 0 0 0

Concessum nullá | lége redíbit iter.
  Prop. 2 2 2 2 2

The Elegiac Pentameter occurs only as a clause to the Heroic Hexameter, with which it forms the Elegiac Distich.

Saepe ego tentavi curas depellere vino
  At dolor in lacrimas | vérterat omne merum. Tib.

Ingenium quondam fuerat pretiosius auro
  At nunc barbaries | grandis habere nihil. Ov.

Par erat inferior versus: risisse Cupido
  Dicitur atque unum | surripuisse pedem. Ov.

Saepe ego cum dominae dulces a limine duro
  Agnosco voces | haec negat esse domi. Tib.

Remarks.—1. The Elegiac Pentameter consists of two Catalectic Trimeters or Penthesimemes, the first of which admits spondees, the second does not. There is a fixed Diaeresis in the middle of the verse, as marked above. The Pentameter derives its name from the old measurement:  0 0 0 | 0 0 0 | 0 0 0 | 0 0 2; and the name is a convenient one, because the verse consists of 3 8 + 2 8 Dactyls. The Elegiac Distich is used in sentimental, satirical, epigrammatic poetry.

2. The musical measurement of the Pentameter is as follows:

- 0 0 | 0 0 | 0 0 | - | 0 0 | 0 0 | -

This shows why neither Syllaba Anea nor Hiatus is allowed at the Diaeresis, and explains the preference for length by nature at that point.

3. As the Latin language is heavier than the Greek, the Roman lightens the close of the Pentameter as much as possible. The Ovidian Distich of the best period shows great mechanical exactness. Almost every pentameter ends in a disyllable, and elision is avoided.

Anapaestic Rhythms.

763. The Anapaestic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the arsis is to the thesis as 2 to 3. It is represented—

By the Anapaest: ⊔ ⊔ ⊔; or

By the Spondee: - - -; or

By the Dactyl: - ⊔ ⊔.

The Anapaestic Meter consists of two feet. The measure is little used among the Romans.
19. *Dimeter Catalécticus (Paroemiacus)*.

Volucér pede corpore púlcher
Linguá catus ore canórus
Verúm memorare magí quem
Functúm laudare décébit. *Auson.*

20. *Dimeter Acatalectus.*

Venient annís saecúla serís
Quibus Óceanus vincúlum rerum
Laxét et ingens pateat tellus
Tethysque novos detegat orbes

**Syllaba Anceps** is rare.

**Remarks.**—Latin anapaests, as found in later writers, are mere metrical imitations of the Greek anapaests, and do not correspond to their original in contents. The Greek anapaest was an anacrustic dactylic measure or march (in $\frac{4}{4}$ time). Hence the use of Pause to bring out the four bars.

*Paroemiacus: Anacrustic Scheme.*

Volucér pede corpore pulcher

*Dimeter Acatalectus: Anacrustic Scheme.*

Quibus Óceanus vincúla rerum

The Theses of the last feet are supplied by the Anacrusis of the following verse.

**LOGAOEDIC RHYTHMS.**

764. The Logaedic Rhythm is a peculiar form of the trochaic rhythm in which the thesis has a stronger secondary ictus than the ordinary trochee.

Instead of the trochee, the light dactyl may be employed. This light or cyclical dactyl is represented in morae by $1\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, 1$; in music, by $\frac{3}{16}, \frac{1}{16}, \frac{1}{8}$.

When dactyls are employed, the trochee preceding is called a Basis, or *tread*. This trochee may be irrational -> (so-called spondee). If the basis is double, the second is almost always irrational in Latin poetry. The basis is commonly marked $\times$. Instead of the trochee, an iambus is sometimes prefixed. Anacrusis and Syncope are also found.

**Remarks.**—1. Logaedic comes from λόγος, *prose*, and αἰώνιος, *song*, because the rhythms seem to vary as in prose.

2. Dactyls are not necessarily employed. No. 4 (Alcaic enneasyllabic) is logaedic.
### One Dactyl

21. *Adonic.* (See No. 13.)  
**Tērruit ūrbem. Hor.**  
\[ \_\_00_0_0 \]

22. *Aristophanic (Choriambic).*  
**Lύdia díc per omnes. Hor.**  
\[ \_\_0_0_0_0 - \]

### One Dactyl, with Basis

23. *Pherecratēan.*  
**Nígris aēquora véntis. Hor.**  
\[ \_\_0_0_0_0 - \]

24. *Glyconic.*  
**Émirābitur ínsoléns. Hor.**  
\[ \_\_0_0_0_0 - \]

25. *Phalaecean (Hendecasyllabic).*  
**Pāsser mórtuus ést meae puellae**  
**Arídá modo púmice expelitum**  
**Túae Lésbia sint satis superque. Cat.**  
\[ \_\_0_0_0_0 - \]

**Remark.**—The so-called spurious Phalaecean admits the Spondee — in the place of the dactyl.

### One Dactyl, with Double Basis

26. *Sapphic (Hendecasyllabic).*  
**Aúdiét cívēs † acuisse ferrum. Hor.**  
\[ \_\_0_0_0_0 - \]

**Remark.**—The Greek measure (Catullus) is \[ \_\_0_0_0_0 - \]

### One Dactyl with Double Basis and Anacrusis

27. *Alcaic (Greater) Hendecasyllabic.*  
**Vidēs ut álta || stēt nive cándidum**  
**Sorácte néc jam || sústineánt onús. Hor.**  
\[ \_\_0_0_0_0 - \]

**Remark.**—The second basis always a spondee in Horace.

### Two Dactyls

28. *Alcaic (Lesser) or Decasyllabic.*  
**Vértēre fúnernibús triumphos. Hor.**  
\[ \_\_0_0_0_0 - \]
In all these, the Dactyl has a diminished value. More questionable is the logaoedic character of the Greater Archilochian.


\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{Solvitur acris hiems grata vice} & | & \text{veris et Favoni. Hor.}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{Remarke.} & \text{If measured logaoedically, the two shorts of the dactyl must be reduced in value to one (} & -^\infty & -^\infty & -^\infty & -^\infty & -^\infty
\end{array}
\]

Logaoedic tetrapody + Logaoedic tetrapody with Syncopé.

770. Choriambic Rhythms.—When a logaoedic series is syn-copated, apparent choriambi arise. What is | - - | - | - seems to be - - - - - - . Genuine choriambi do not exist in Latin.

30. Asclepiadean (Lesser). _x_ _ - - - - - - - 
Maecenas atavis || edite regibus. Hor. & > | - - | - | - - | - |

31. Asclepiadean (Greater). _x_ _ - - - - - - - - - - - - 
Nullam Vare sacra || vite prius || severis arbo- rem. Hor. & > | - - | - | - - | - - |

32. Sapphic (Greater). _x_ _ - - - - - - - - - - - 
Te deos oro Sybarin || cur properas amando. Hor. & - | - > | - - | - - | - | - - |

33. Priapēan (Glyconic + Pherectæan). _x_ _ - - - - - - - - - - 
Hunc lucum tibi dedico || consecroque Priape. Cat. & > | - - | - - | - - | - - | - - |

Cretic and Bacchic Rhythms.

771. These passionate rhythms are found occasionally in the comic poets. They both belong to the Quinquepartite or Five-Eighths class.

1. The distribution of the Creticus is 3 + 2 morae.
The metrical value of the Creticus is - - - (Amphimacer).
VERSIFICATION.

Second long resolved  - O O O  Paeon Primus.
First long resolved  O O O  Paeon Quartus.

34. Tetrameter Catalecticus.
Da mi(hi) hoc mel meum si me amas saudes. Plaut.

35. Tetrameter Acatalecticus.
Ex bonis pessumi et fraudulentissumi. Plaut.

The Bacchius has the following measure:  O  1 + 2 + 2 morae
(\louz\louz\louz), or if the descending form  O  be regarded as the normal one 2 + 2 + 1 morae (\louz\louz\louz).

36. Bacchic Tetrameter.
Quibus nec locust ullu' nec spes parata
Misericordior nulla mest feminarum

IO\NC RHYTHM.

772. The Ionic Rhythm is represented by Iōnicus ā mājōri
- O O O  \louz\louz\louz. For the Iōnicus ā mājōri may be substituted
the Ditrochaeus - O - O. This is called Anáclasis (breaking-up).

The verse is commonly anacrustic, so that it begins with the
thesis O O : - - . Such verses are called Iōnicī ā minōri.

The second long has a strong secondary ictus.

773. 37. An Ionic System is found in Horace, Od. iii. 12.
It consists of two periods, the first being made up of two dipodies, the second of two tripodies.

Iōnicus ā minōri scheme:
Miserarum est neque amori
  dare ludum neque dulci
  mala vino lavere aut exanimari
  metuentes patruae verbera linguae

Iōnicus ā mājōri scheme:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\louz\louz\louz</th>
<th>\louz\louz</th>
<th>\louz\louz</th>
<th>\louz\louz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Remarks.—1. The Roman numerals refer to periods, the Arabic to the number of feet or bars, the dots indicate the end of a line.

The Ionicus is an excited measure, and serves to express the frenzy of distress as well as the madness of triumph.

774. 38. Tetrameter Catalectic.

The Galliambic verse (Tetrameter Catalectic) is found in a famous poem by Catullus (lxiii).

Ordinary Scheme:
Without Anacolus:  
With Anacolus:  

Anacrustic Scheme:
Without Anacolus:  
With Anacolus:  

The Anacolastic form is the more common. The Anacolus may be contracted (9 times in the Attis).

The frequent resolutions and conversions give this verse a peculiarly wild character.

Et earum omnia adirem furibunda latibula
Quo nos decet citatis celerare tri-pudiis
Itaque ut domum Cybebes tetricere lassulae
Super alta vectus Attis celeri rate maria
Jam jam dolet quod egi jam jaque paenitet

775. Verses Compounded of Iambi and Dactyls.

39. 1. Iambelegus. Iambic Dimeter and Dactylic Penthemimeris.

Tu vina Torquato move || consule pressa meo. Hor.

Or as two verses:

\[> : - o | - o | - o | - \wedge \|

- oo | - oo | - \wedge \|
776.
40. 2. Elegiambus (Dactylic Penthemimeris and Iambic Dimeter).

Desinet imparibus | certare submost puder. Hor.

Or as two verses:

\[
\begin{align*}
| & | & | & | \\
\wedge & | & | & |
\end{align*}
\]

**Saturnian Verse.**

777. The Saturnian verse is an old Italian rhythm which occurs in the earlier monuments of Latin literature. It divides itself into two parts, with three Arses in each:

The queen was in her parlor,

Eating bread and honey.

Dabunt malum Metelli Naevio poetae
Iterum triumpan in urbem Romam reedit
Duello magno dirimundo regibus subigundis.

778. **Lyric Metres of Horace.**

I. Asclépiadéan Strophe No. 1. Lesser Asclépiadéan Verse (No. 30) repeated in tetrastichs.

\[
\begin{align*}
| & | & | & | \\
\wedge & | & | & |
\end{align*}
\]

Or thus:

\[
\begin{align*}
| & | & | & | & | & | \\
\wedge & | & | & | & | & |
\end{align*}
\]

In Od. i. 1; iii. 30; iv. 8.

II. Asclépiadéan Strophe No. 2. Glyconéus (No. 24) and Lesser Asclépiadéan (No. 30) alternating, and so forming tetrastichs.

\[
\begin{align*}
| & | & | & | \\
\wedge & | & | & |
\end{align*}
\]
Versification.

Or thus:

- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  

In Od. i. 3, 13, 19, 36; ii. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; iv. 1, 3.

III. Asclépiadean Strophe No. 3. Three Lesser Asclépiadean Verses, followed by a Glyconic (Nos. 30 and 24).

- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  

In Od. i. 6, 15, 24, 33; ii. 12; iii. 10, 16; iv. 5, 12.

IV. Asclépiadean Strophe No. 4. Two Lesser Asclépiadean Verses (No. 30), a Pherecratean (No. 23), and a Glyconic (No. 24).

- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  

In Od. i. 5, 14, 21, 23; iii. 7, 13; iv. 313.

V. Asclépiadean Strophe No. 5. Greater Asclépiadean (No. 31), repeated in fours.

- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  

Or thus:

- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  
- $\Rightarrow | \sim \circ | \sim | \sim | \sim | \sim \| \sim$  

In Od. i. 11, 18; iv. 10.
VI. Sapphic Strophe. Three Lesser Sapphics (No. 26), and an Adoniac (No. 21), which is merely a clausula. In No. 26 Horace regularly breaks the Dactyl.

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{Horace:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{Dactyl} \\
\text{No. 26:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{I.} \\
\text{Adoniac:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{II.} \\
\text{Clausula:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{III.}
\end{align*} \]

In Od. i. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 25, 30, 32, 33; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; iii. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; iv. 2, 6, 11; Carmen Saeculare.

Word divided at the end of the third verse; Od, i. 2, 19; 25, 11; ii. 16, 7.

VII. Lesser Sapphic Strophe. Aristophanic (No. 22), and Greater Sapphic (No. 32). Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{Aristophanic:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{I.} \\
\text{Greater Sapphic:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{II.}
\end{align*} \]

Or thus:

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{Aristophanic:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{I.} \\
\text{Greater Sapphic:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{II.}
\end{align*} \]

In Od. i. 8.

VIII. Alcaic Strophe. Two Alcaic verses of eleven syllables (No. 27) one of nine (No. 4), and one of ten (No. 28).

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{Eleven syllables:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{I.} \\
\text{Nine syllables:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{II.} \\
\text{Ten syllables:} & \hspace{1cm} \text{III.}
\end{align*} \]

In Od. i. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; iii. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; iv. 4, 9, 15, 17.
IX. Archilochian Strophe No. 1. Hexameter (No. 17), and Lesser Archilochian (No. 14), two pairs to a tetraetich.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Or thus:} & \\
\text{Or thus:} & \\
\text{In Od. iv. 7.}
\end{align*}
\]

X. Archilochian Strophe No. 2. A Dactylic Hexameter (No. 17), and an Iambeleus (No. 39).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Or thus:} & \\
\text{Epod. 13.}
\end{align*}
\]

XI. Archilochian Strophe No. 3. An Iambic Trimeter (No. 9), followed by an Elegiambus (No. 40).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Epod 11.}
\end{align*}
\]

XII. Archilochian Strophe No. 4. Greater Archilochian (No. 29), and Trimeter Iambic Catalectic (No. 8). Two pairs combined to form a tetraetich

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Od. i. 4.}
\end{align*}
\]

Remark.—This verse is sometimes considered as logaoedic.
XIII. Alcmanian Strophe. Dactylic Hexameter (No. 17), followed by Catalectic Dactylic Tetrameter (No. 15).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{XIII. Alcmanian Strophe. Dactylic Hexameter (No. 17), followed by Catalectic Dactylic Tetrameter (No. 15).} \\
\text{In Od. i. 7, 28. Epod. 12.} \\
\text{In Epod. 17.} \\
\text{In Epod. 1–10.} \\
\text{Epod. 14, 15.} \\
\text{Epod. 16.} \\
16^* 
\end{align*}
\]
XVIII. Trochaic Strophe. Catalectic Trochaic Dimeter (No. 3), and a Catalectic Iambic Trimeter (No. 8). Two pairs make a tetrastich.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{In Od. ii. 18.}
\end{align*}
\]

XIX. Ionic System.
In Od. iii. 12. (See No. 37.)

779. INDEX OF HORATIAN ODES AND METRES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. 1</td>
<td>i.</td>
<td>II. 1</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>III. 18</td>
<td>vi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>ii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>vi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>xii.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>viii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>iv.</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>vi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>viii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>xiii.</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>vii.</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>ii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>viii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>vi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>v.</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>ii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>viii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>iv.</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>v.</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>xviii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>III. 1</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>iv.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>ii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>xix.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
<td>iv.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Carmen Saeculare. vi.
Epod. 1–10. xv.
APPENDIX.

ROMAN CALENDAR.

The names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive mensis, month, may or may not be expressed: (mensis) Jānu-
ārius, Februārius, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not Jūlius and Augustus, but Quintilis and Sextilis.

The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (Kalendae), Nones (Nōnae), and Ides (Idūs), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: Kalendae Jānuāriae, Nōnae Februāriae, Idūs Martiae. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October, the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the 15th day,
The Nones the 7th; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward ("come next calends, next nones, next ides") the Romans used for "the day before" pridie with the accus. pridie kalendās Jānuāriās, Dec. 31, pridie nōnās Jān. = Jan. 4, pridie Id. Jan. = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by ante diem tertium, quartum, etc., before the accusative, so that ante diem tertium kal. Jan. means "two days before the calends of January;" ante diem quartum, or a. d. iv., or iv. kal. Jan., "three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions ex and in: ex ante diem iii. Nōnās Jūniās usque ad pridie kal. Septem-
bres, from June 3 to August 31; differre aliquid in ante diem xv. kal. Nov., to postpone a matter to the 18th of October.

LEAP YEAR.—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between a. d. vi. kal. Mart. and a. d. vii. kal. Mart. It was called a. d. bis sextum kal. Mart., so that a. d. vii. kal. Mart. corresponded to our February 23d, just as in the ordinary year.

TO TURN ROMAN DATES INTO ENGLISH.

For Nones and Ides.—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.

For Calends.—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

INDEX OF SYNTAX.

The Figures refer to the Sections.

A.

A, ab, abs, with ablative, 412; of agent, 205, 403; of origin, 395; of part affected, 398; at tergo, ab oriente, ab spatii, 386, R. 2.

Ablative, syntax of, 383-409; of place where, 384-387; of place whence, 388-390; of attendance, 391; of time when, 392, 3; of origin, 395; of material, 396; of measure. 397-400, 566; of manner, 401; of quality, 402; of means, 403; of price, 404; with sundry verbs, 405; of cause, 406; ablative absolute, 408, 409; prepositions with, 418, 420; abl. of gerund and gerundive, 432; of supine, 437.

Absolute ablative, 408; restrictions of use, 403, R. 3.

Absque, w. abl. 418.

Abstract nouns in plural 195, R. 5; as attribute and vice versa, 357, R. 3.

Abutor, 405, 428; R. 3.

Ac atque, 479, 615.

Accedit, constr., 525, R. 3.

Accidit, sequence after, 513, R. 2.

Accingor, constr., 332, R. 2.

Accipio, with two datives, 350.

Accusative, 327-340. Direct object, inner, outer object, 327; general view, 328; with active transitive verbs, 329; with verbs compd. with prepositions, 330; cognate, 331; adverbal, 331, R. 3; of part affected, 332; double, 333, 334; of local objects (terminal accusative), 342, 410; of extent in space, 335, 336; in time, 337, 338; in exclamations and explanatory questions, 340; with interjections, 340; with prepositions, 417; of infinitive, 424; of gerund, 426; of gerundive, 431; of supine, 436. Accusative and infinitive, 341-526.

Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, —constr., 377.

Ac si, 389.

Action, stage of, 213; period of, 213.

Active voice, 204; for passive, 205; R. 1.

Active genitive, 361.

Ad, in compds. with acc., 330; with dat., 346. Preposition with accus., 356, R. 1, 417; whither, 341, R. 2; ad Vestae, 360, R. 2; w. gerund, 437, R. 2; ad, hence, 400, R. 3.

Adire aliquem, 330, R. 2.


Adnominal genitive, 359.

Adular, constr. 347.

Advantage, dative of, 345.

Adverbial accus., 331, R. 3; abl. 401.

Adverbial sentences, 507.

Adversative particles for copulative, 484.
Adversative sentences, 486-493.
Adversus, w. accus., 356, R. 2, 417.
Aeger, w. gen. 374, R. 2.
Aemulor, 347.
Aequālis, 356, and R. 1.
Aequūre, 345, R. 1.
Aequī bonique facio, 180, R. 2.
Aestimō, constr., 180, R. 1.
Affātim, w. gen., 371, R. 3.
Affection of the mind, 374, R. 2.
Affinis, constr., 356, and R. 1.
Affirmative, indefinite, and general, 448, R.
Agent, abl. of, w. a (ab), 202, 403; without a (ab), 202, R. 2; dative of, 203, 352, 353.
Agreement of predicate and subject, 199, 281, 283; of attribute and substantive, 285, 286; of relative and antecedent, 616.
Ajo, 651, R.
Aliēnus, w. dat., 356; with gen., 356, R. 1; w. abl., R. 5.
Aliquīs, aliquī, 301.
Alier with atque, 646; with sin, 593.
Aliē—aliē, 321.
Alius, 306; with abl., 399, R. 2; with atque, 645.
Altus, 336.
Amicus, constr., 356 and R. 1.
An, 459, 462.
Anacoluthon, 694.
Animi, constr., 374, R. 3.
Annōn, 461.
Antecedent, 615; repeated, 617; incorporated, 618; attraction into, 619; omission of, 623.
Antequam, constr., 576 foll.
Aorist, 212.
Apodosis, 590; omitted, 603 foll.
Apodotic period, 686.
Aposiopēsis, 691.
Apposition, 319. Partitive (restrictive), 320. Distributive, 321; with nōmen, 322; to a sentence, 323.
Predicative, 324. Apposition of antecedent incorporated, 618.
Apud, w. accus., 417.
Arrangement of words, 674, foll. of clauses.
As, 324, R. 3.
Aspergo, constr., 348.
Asseverations, 255.
Assis, 379.
Assuetus, w. abl., 403, R. 2.
Asyndeton, 472, 480.
Attempted actions by present, 218, R. 2; by imperfect, 224.
Attendance, ablative of, 391.
Atque, for quam, 311, R. 6. See ac.
Atqui, 488.
Attraction of pronoun, 199, R. 5. Attraction of names of persons, 322.
Aut, 492.
Autem, 486.
Ax, verbs in, w. gen. 174.

B.

Becoming, verbs of, 193.
Bellī, 409, R. 3.
Beseeking, verbs of, 546.
Bewareing, verbs of, 548.
Bene emere, vendere, 381, R. 3.
Bidding, verbs of, 345 and R. 1.
Birth, part. of, 395.
Bonī consulo, 380, R. 2.
Brachylogy, 689.

C.

Capitis, and capite, 377, R. 1.
Captus, w. abl., 398.
Cases, syntax of, 377-412; nom., 194; voc., 194, R. 2; accus., 327-340; dat., 342-356; gen., 357-382; abl., 381-409; with preposition, 417-419.
Causā, grātiā, w. gen., 372, 407.
Causal particles, 500, sentences, 588, foll.
Causal participle, 669.
Causation, verbs of, w. partic., 537.
Cause, abl. of, 406.
Cave, with subj. for imperat., 264.
Caveo, w. acc. and dat., 347; né ut, 548, R. 2.
Célo, 333 and R. 2.
Céterum, 490.
Chiásmus, 684.
Choosing, verbs of, 197, 334.
Círèa, circiter, w. accus., 417.
Círum, compds. w. acc., 530; circum, w. acc., 417.
Círumdo, constr., 348.
Cís, citrá, w. accus., 417.
Citations in abl., 386.
Cities, names of, 410-412.
Clám, w. abl., 417, R.
Clauses, 474.
Coepíus sum, 424, R.
Cognate, accus., 381.
Cognitíus, constr., 356, R. 1.
Coincident action, 583.
Collocáre in, w. abl., 384, R.
Com, con, in compds., w. dat., 346.
Combination of relative sentences, 639.
Comitétor, constr., 347.
Communícáre, const., 346, R.
Commúnís, 356, R. 1.
Comparative degree with quam, 311, 647, foll.; with abl., 399; with gen., 370.
Comparative particles for copulatives, 484. C. sentences, 645, foll.
Comparison, 311; standard of, omitted, 323: of qualities, 314.
Complementary final sentences, 541, 543.
Compos, w. gen., 373.
Compound sentences, 192, 474.
Compounds of preposit. with acc., 330; w. two acc., 330; w. dat., 346.
Conceiving, verbs of, 523.
Concessive subjunctive, 257.
Concessive sentences and conjunctions, 606. C. participles, 611, 670.
Concord of predicate, w. subj., 202, 281; gender, 282; number, 281; of attribute, 285; common attribute, 286; of apposition, 349; of relative, 616.
Concords, the three, 198.
Condemning, verbs of, 377.
Condition, resulting, 225, 230.
Conditional sentences, 590-604; logical, 597; ideal, 598; unreal, 599; incomplete, 600; in òrátro obliqua, 659, foll.; conditional participle, 670.
Condúcere, constr., 378.
Conjunctions.—Coördinate, copulative, 477, 484; adversative, 486-498; disjunctive, 494-497; causal, 500; illative, 501-504; subordinate, causal, 538; final, 543; temporal, 561; conditional, 591.
Conscíus, w. gen., 373, R. 1.
Consídere in, 384, R. 1.
Consilium est, w. inf. 429, R. 3.
Constituere in, 384, R.
Consóto, 370.
Consólúo, 347, 380, R. 2.
Constructio praegnáns, 696.
Contentus, w. abl., 373, R. 1.
Continuance, verbs of, 424.
Contigit, sequence after, 513, R. 2.
Contrá, as adv., 416, R.; w. acc., 217.
Contrárius, 356, R. 1.
Convenió, 347.
Convinging, verbs of, 377.
Coördinate conjunctions. See conjunctions.
Copula, 196; omitted, 200; agreement with predicate, 202, R. 1.
Copulative conjunctions, 477-484; inserted, 483; omitted, 475-483.
Copulative verbs, 1.
Corám, with abl., 418.
Cum. prep., abl., with and without, 391-401; postpositive, 414, R. 1; with abl., 418.
Cum (quum) prínum, 563; cum (constr.), 581; temporal, 582; coincident action, 583; lapse of time, 582, R. 3; conditional, 584; iterative, 585; historical, 586; causal, 587; concessive, adversative, 588; cumtum, 587.
Cumque, compounds with, 246, R. 4.
Cupidus, w. gen., 373.
Cupio, 532.
Curá ut, 264.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Extent in space, 335, 336. External qualities, 402, R. 
Extra, as an adverb, 406, R.; with acc., 417.

F.


G.

Gaudeo, w. abl., 406; w. inf., 533; w. quod, 528. Generic relative with ind., 246, R. 4. Genitive, 357–382; appositive gen., or gen. of specification, 359; possess. gen., 360; active and passive, 361–363; gen. of quality, 364; as a predicate, 365; partitive gen., 366, foll. g. generis, 367, R.; gen. with prepositional substantives, 372; with adj., 373; with verbals and participles, 374; with verbs of memory, 375; with verbs of emotion, 376; w. judicial verbs, 377; with verbs of rating and buying, 376, 377; gen. with interest and refer, 381, 382; apparent gen., 412; gen. of gerund and gerundive, 429; cases of, 427. Gerund and gerundive, 426–432; gerundive for gerund, 428; after prepositions, 428, R. 1; gerundive formation restricted, 428, R. 2; 438, R. 3; genitive of, 429; dative of, 430; accus. of, 431; ablat. of, 432. Glorior, with abl., 407. Gratiā, with gen., 372, 407.

H.


I.

Imperative, 259–269; tenses, 259–262; negative, 263; periphrases for, 264; representatives of positive imperative, 265; of negative, 266; of positive and negative, 267, 268; time of, 272: imperative in oratio obliqua, 655; used modally, 246, R.

Imperfect tense, indicative, 223, foll.; subjunctive, 250; in sequence of tenses, 517; in unreal conditional sentences, 599, R. 2.

Impero, w. inf., 532, R. 1.

Impersonal verbs, 96.

Impertio, 348.

Imprimere in, abl., 384, R.

In, in compounds with acc., 330; with dat., 346. In, with abl. of place, 384, R.; with acc., 413, R.; with acc. and abl., 419. In, with abl. of time, 398.

Inclination, verbs of, 324.

Incorporation of antecedents, 618; antecedent, 623.

Indefinite perfect, 212; pronouns, 302–304.

Indicative mood, 246; for subjunctive, 399, R. 4. See the different classes of sentences.

Indigeo, constr., 388, R. 1.

Indignus, w. abl., 373, R. 3; 398, R. 2. Indignus qui, 556, R. 2.

Indirect discourse. See oratio obliqua.

Indirect object, 208, 343.

Indirect questions, 462.

Induo, constr., 348.

In eò esse ut, 287, 241.

Infinitive, tenses of, 273, foll. 314; subject of, 327, 525; as a noun, 420, 422; as a subject, 223; as an object, 224; as a predicate, 425; accus. and inf., 526; ambiguity of accus. and inf., 527, R. 4; accus. and inf., with verbs of will and desire, 532; with verbs of emotion, 533; in exclamations, 534; accus. and inf., as a subject, 535; in relative sentences, 538.

Infrà, as an adverb, 416 R.; with accus., 417.

Inquam, 439.

Inquiry, verbs of, 333.

Inscribere in, abl., 384, R.

Instar, with gen., 370.

Instrument, abl. of, 205, 103.

Inter, in compound with dat., 346.

Inter, with accus., 417; with accus. for gen., 371, R. 4. Inter sè, 212. Inter of time, 393, R.

Intercalary period, 656.

Interest, constr., 373–381.

Interjections, 194, R. 2; with divers cases, 340.

Interrogative sentences, 449, 473.

Intrà, with accus., 417; of time, 393, R.

Intransitive verbs, 204, 345.

Inverted attraction, 618, R. 2.

Invitus, 324, R. 6.

Ipse, use of, 297, foll.

Ire, with supine, 437.

Islands, names of smaller, constr., 410, 411, 412.

Itaque, 499.

Ita—ut, restrictive, 556, R. 5.

Item, itidem, 645.

Iterative tenses, 568–9.

J.


Jùre, 398.

Jussù, 407.

Juvo, w. accus., 315, R. 1.

K.

Knowledge, adjectives of, 373.

L.

Làtus, constr., 336.

Lège, 398.

Letters, tenses in, 244; date, 411, R. 2.

Libens, 324, R. 6.

Liber, 373, R.; libro, w. abl., 388.

Libèo, and in libèo, 385, R.

Licèo, constr., 378.

Licet, constr., 535, R. 2.

Likeness, adjectives of, 356; with acc., 646.

Locàre, constr., 378.

Locative, 412.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Locō, 385, R.
Longē, with superl., 317.
Longus, w. accus., 336.

M.

Mactē, 324, R. 1.
Māgis quam, 314.
Magnī, 377; magno, 380.
Making, verbs of, with two accus., 334; passive of, w. two nom., 190.
Male, emere, vēndere, 380, R. 3.
Mūlō, w. indic., 246, R. 1.
Mannōr, abl. of, 401.
Material, abl. of, 396.
Mālatīnus, 324, R. 6.
Measure, abl. of, 398–400; of difference, 398.
Medeōr, w. dat., 345, R. 2; medendus, 428, R. 3.
Mētōs, w. indic., 246, R. 1.
Mēmōnī, w. pres. inf., 27, R.; w. gen. 375.
Mēmor, w. gen., 373.
Mēmorīa teneō, 277, R.
Memory, verbs of constr., 375.
Mētuo, w. dat. and acc., 347.
Miliātē, 412, R. 2.
Mīlle, 308.
Mīnōris, 380.
Mīnōr, minus, without quam, 311, R. 4.
Mīnāri, with accus., 329, R. 1.
Mīrūrī quantum, 469, R. 2.
Misereōr, miserēscō, miseret, w. gen., 376.
Mittere, w. two dat., 350.
Moderōr, with dat. and accus., 347.
Mōdo, with subjunct., 575.
Mōdo-mōdo, 481.
Mōneō, w. gen., 375 and R. 1; with ut, 546; with inf., 546, R. 2.
Mood, attraction of, 506.
Moods, 244; indic., 246, foll.; subjunctive, 247, foll.; imperfect, 259; infinitive, 345, R.
Mōris est, 365.
Moving cause, 407, R.
Multiplication of subjects, 282, foll.
Multitude, noun of, 202, R.
Multō, with superlat., 317.
Multus, with superlat., 468.
Mūto, constr., 404, R.

N.

Nam, namque, 500.
Name, dat. of, 322; gen. of, 359.
Names of cities and small islands, constr., 410, 411, 412.
Naming, verbs of, with two accus., 334.
Nātus, w. accus., 338; w. abl., 395.
—Ne, 456, 462.
Nē, with optative subj., 253; with imper. subj., 256, 266; with imperat., 263, 264; with sentences of design, 543; of result, 506, R. 4; nē, provided that, 610.
Nearness, adjectives of, 256.
Necessē est, 344, R.
Necessity, expressed how, 246, R. 1.
Necne, 461.
Nec nōn, 448, R. 3.
Nedum, 484, R. 2.
Negative, of optative subjunctive, 253; of imperative, 263; negatives, 442, foll.; subdivision of, 444; position of, 447; two negatives, 448.
Nego, 446.
Nēmo, 304.
Nempe, 500, R.
Neque, 482. Nē-quidem, 484.
Nēscio an, 404.
Nēscio quis quō modo, with indic., 469, R. 2.
Neuter adjective as substantive, 199, R. 4; as cognate accus., 331, R. 2; as adverb, R. 3; with participial gen., 371.
Nī, 592, R. 5.
Nīhil, 301; nīhīli, 379.
Nisi and sī nōn, 592; nisi and nisi sī = only, 592, R. 2; nisi quod, R. 3; nisi forte, R. 3.
Nītor, w. abl., 403, R. 3.
No, 473.
Nōli, with inf. for imperat., 264.
Nōlo, 532.
Nōmen est, 322. Nōmen w. gen., 359.
Nominative, 194; double, 196; nom. for accus., 528; with inf., 525.
Nōn, 442; position of, 447; nōn quod, quō, 541, R. 1.
Nōn alius quam, 646, R. 2.
Non modo-sōlum tantum, 484.
Nōnne, 457.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

*Non possum non*, 448, R. 1.

*Nōs* = ego, 195, R. 7.

*Nomīn*; *nōstrum*, 362 and R.

Nouns. See Substantive and Adjectival.

*Nūbo*, with dat., 345, R. 2.

*Nullus*, 300, 304; for *nōn*, R. 2.

*Num*, 458.

Number, singular for plural, 195, R. 7 and 8; agreement in, 199.

Nunc-nunc, 434.

O.

*O*, with voc., 194, R. 2; w. accus., 340.

*O* *st*, 254, 388.


Object, direct, 204; indirect, 205; infin. as object, 424; object sentences, 523-537; with *quod*, 525; with acc. and inf., 326, foll.

Object, for which, 350.

Obligation expressed, 246, R. 1.

Oblique cases, 327-408.

Obliquity, partial, 502.

Obliquo, constr., 375, R. 1.

Olēre and redolēre, w. accus., 329, R.

Omitting, verbs of, 551.

Omnēs, 369, R. 1.

Opinione, 399, R. 1.

Optet, 535, R. 1; 559, R. 1.

Optative, subjunctive, 256.

Opto, 424, R. 2; 546.

Opus, 390.

Orātio obliqua, 509, 651-655; moods in, 509, 653, 654; tenses in, 655, foll.; condit. sentences in, 659; pronouns in, 663; involved, 655-6.

Ordinals for cardinals, 309.

Ordine, 401.

Origin, abl. of, 395.

Ortus, 395.

P.

Paenitet, 376; paenitentius, 428, R. 3.

*Pār* and *dispār*, constr., 356, R. 1.

Part, accus. of, 332.

Particeps, w. gen., 373.

Participial clauses, interrogative in, 470.

Participial sentences, 667, foll.

Participles, tenses, 278-9; w. genitive, 374; subordination, by means of, 409, R. 2; 667, R. 1; participle as substant., 438; as adjective, 439; after verbs of Perception and Representation, 524, R. 1, 533; verbs of Causation and Desire, 534.

Participation, adjectives of, 373.

Partition in English, none in Latin, 369, R. 1.

Partitive genitive, 366-371.

Partitive, use of attribute, 287, R.; apposition, 321.

Parum, w. gen., 371.

Parvi, 380.

Passionate Question, 258.

Passive voice, 205; passive of intransitive verbs, 199, R.; 204, 208; passive genitive, 361.

Pecūliāris, constr., 356, R. 1.

Pedibus, 401, R. 1.

Penes, w. accus., 415.

Per, in compds. with acc., 330; per with acc., 417; position, 416, R.

Per, of space, 385; of time, 337; of manner, 401, R.

Perceiving, verbs of, constr., 527, 536.

Perfect, pure, 227; historical, 231; passive, 242; perfect in letters, 244; perfect subjunctive potential, 250; optative, 254; imperative, 256, R. 1, 266; time of, 271; in sequence, 511; in sentences of result, 513; perfect infin., 275; as representative of indic., 277, and perf. part., 278; after verbs of causation and desire, 537; concessive, 670.

Period of action, 213.

Periphrastic conjugation, 240-243; subj., 514-516; infin. 531; in *orātio obliqua*, 659.

Peritus, w. gen., 373.

Permitto ut, 332, R. 1.

Person, concord of, 292, 283.

Personal pronoun omitted, 195; gen. of, 382; personal pronoun w. gerundive, 429, R. 1.

Person interested, 206.
Persuādeo, 345, R. 1; w. inf., 546, R. 2.
Pertacésum est, 376.
Peto, 333, R. 2.
Pliget, 376.
Placing, verbs of, 384, R. 1.
Place, whither, 332, 410; where, 384–387, 412; whence, 388; place, as cause, manner, or instrument, 387.
Plēinus, 373 and R. 2.
Pluperfect, 233; indic. for subj., 246, R. 3; 599, R. 3; iterative, 569; pluperf. subj. as imperat. of past, 266, R. 2; in sequence, 511; iterative, 569, R. 2; in conditional, 599.
Plural of abstracts, 195, R. 5, 6; for sing., R. 7.
Plūrīmi, 380.
Plūris, 380.
Plús, without quam, 311, R. 4.
Pôme, w. accus., 417.
Pōnere in, abl., 384, R.
Posco, constr., 333 and R.
Position of attribute, 287, 288; of preposition, 404, foll.; of adverb, 441; of negative, 447, foll.; position, in interrogative sentences, 470; of relative, 614.
Posse, for future, 340, R. 3; 662, R. 2.
Possessive genitive, 360.
Possessive pronouns, use of, 299; apposition with gen., 319, R. 2; for genitive, 363; with rēfert and interest, 381; reflexive, 295, R. 1, 521.
Possessor, dative of, 349.
Possibility expressed, 246, R. 1.
Post, in compounds with dat., 346; in expressions of time, 400, R. 3.
Post quam, 563–567.
Postulo, constr., 333, R. 2.
Potential subjunctive, 250, foll., 519, 543.
Poteram, 246, R.
Potior, constr., 405, and R. 3.
Potius quam, 363, R.
Potuisses, futūrūm fuisse ut, 659, R. 2.
Power expressed, 246, R. 1; adjectives of, 373.
Prae, in compounds w. dat., 346; with abl., 407, R.; 418.
Praeditus, w. abl., 373, R. 1.
Praestolor, constr., 347.
Praeter, in compds., w. accus., 329.
Praetor, w. accus., 417.
Predicate, 192; predicative apposition and attribution, 324.
Prepositions, 413–419; origin of word, 413, R. 3; position of, 214, 215; repetition and omission of, 216; adverbial, 416, R.; prepositions w. acc., 417; with abl., 418; with accus. and abl., 419; with gerundive, 428, R. 1; with abl. gerund., 432.
Present indicat., 215–218; of endeavor, 215, R. 2; for future, 219; for past, 220; with jam, jamdiē, jampridēm, 221; present subjunctive, time of, 271; in sequence of tenses, 511; for future, 514; in conditional sentences, 381; present infinitive, 273; of contemporaneous action, 529; present participle, 278.
Preventing cause, 407, R. 2; verbs of, 543, 549.
Price, gen. of, 378; abl. of, 404.
Primo, primum, 324, R. 7.
Principal clauses, 474.
Prior, primum, as predicates, 324, R. 6, 7; w. gen., 370.
Prius quam, constr., 576–9.
Prō, interjection, 340.
Prō, in compounds, w. dat., 346.
Prohibeo, constr., 547.
Prolepssus, 470.
Promise, verbs of, 424, R. 2.
Pronouns, 290–304; demonstrative, 290–293; reflexive, 294, 520–522; determinative, 296–298; possessive, 299; indefinite, 300–304; in ēditio oblīqua, 663.
Prope, w. accus., 417.
Proprius, 356, R. 1.
Propter, w. accus., 417.
Protasis, 590; omitted, 252, R. 1, 602.
Prozimē, w. accus., 356, R. 4.
Prūdens, as adv., 324, R. 5.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Pudet, 376.
Pure perfect, 212.
Puto, w. gen., 378.
Putting, verbs of, constr., 348, 384, R.

Q.

Quà prudentià es, 618, R. 1.
Qualification of subject, 284.
Qualis, 433.
Quality, gen. of, 364; ablat. of, 402.
Qualities, two compared, 314.
Quam, w. comparatives, 311, 647; w. superlatives, 317; quam pro ut quí, 313; quam quod, 525; quam si, 604; quam omitted, 311, R. 4.
Quamdiú, 570, 645.
Quanquam, 305.
Quando, Quandóquédem, 588.
Quantí, 400 and R.; Quantus, 645.
Quasi, 604.
Que, 478.
Questions. See Interrogative Sentences.
Quí, indef., 302.
Quí, 612, foll. See relative.
Quia, 538; nón quia, 541, R. 1.
Quicunque, 266, R. 1.
Quídam, 300.
Quidem, 298, R.
Quidè mè vis, 331, R. 3.
Quin, in questions, 268; quin, 550; after verbs of omitting, etc., 551; for quí nón, 556; nón quin, 541, R. 1.
Quís, indef., 302
Quispiam, 303.
Quispiam, 304.
Quisque, 305; ut quisque, 645, R. 2.
Quíquis, w. ind., 246, R. 4.
Quó, measure of difference, 400 = that thereby, 545; quó quisque, 645, R. 2.
Quoad, with gen., 371, R. 3; constr., 573.
Quod, in object sentences, 525; in causal sentences, 538–541; w. verbs of emotion, 542, foll.; nisi quod, 592, R. 3; quodsi ubi, 612, R. 1.
Quóminus, 549.

Quoniam, 538, foll.
Quo, 418.
Quot, w. gen., 368, R.; correlat., 645.
Quoties, 569; correl., 645.
Quotquot, w. ind., 246, R. 4.
Quum. See cum.

R.

Rating, verbs of, constr., 378.
Reciprocal relations, 212.
Recorder, 277, R.
Recíso, constr., 548.
Reddo, 334, R.
Réfert, constr., 381, 382.
Refertus, constr., 374, R. 1.
Reflexive pronoun, 294; in subordinate sentences, 520–522.
Refraining, verbs of, 551.
Refusing, verbs of, 548.
Relative sentences, 506, 612, foll.; relative, position of, 614; concord of, 616; attraction of, 619; correlative of, 620; relative clause, position of, 622; tenses in, 624, 625; moods in, 626, foll.; ind., 626, foll.; subj. 629, foll.; in oratio obliqua, 630; by attraction, 631; when quí ut = is, 632, 634; when quí = cum is, 635; accus., rel. and inf., 638; combination of relative sentences, 639; relative in oratio obliqua, 658, R. 1 and 2; relative represented by participle, 640, 671.
Relinquó, with two datives, 350.
Remaining, verbs of, 197.
Remembering, verbs of, 375.
Reminding, verbs of, 375.
Remísscor, 375 and R. 2.
Repeated action. See Iterative.
Representatives of imperative, 265–268.
Representation, verbs of, with participle, 536.
Requiring, verbs of, 333.
Rés, use of, 195.
Resisting, verbs of, 345.
Restriction to the comparative, 315.
Restrictive apposition, 320.
Result, subjunctive of, 340, foll.;
exceptional sequence in sentences of result, 513.
Resolve, verbs of, 424, and R. 2.
Rhetorical questions, 452, R. 2; in oratio obliqua, 654, R.
Rideo, w. accus., 329.
Rogatū, 407.
Rūre, 410, 411; rūs, 410.
Rūrī, 412.

S.
Sacer, 356, R. 1.
Sacrifice, 403, R. 2.
Satis, w. gen., 371.
Saying, verbs of, constr., 523-529.
Sciens, 324, R. 5.
Seat of feeling, 374, R. 3.
Sed, 487.
Seeming, verbs of, 196.
Sentences, simple, 129; expanded, 281; compound, coördinate and subordinate, 474; copulative, 477, foll.; adversative, 486, foll.; disjunctive, 495, foll.; causal, 500; illative, 502; object, 503, foll.; causal, 58, foll.; final, 543, foll.; consecutive, 553, foll.; temporal, 567, foll.; conditional, 590, foll.; concessive, 605, foll.; relative, 612, foll.; comparative, 641, foll.; abridged, 649, foll.
Separation, abl. of, 388.
Sequence of tenses, 511, foll.
Sē. See Sīve.
Showing, verbs of, with two nom., 197; with two accus., 334; with accus. and infin., 526-529.
Sī, whether, 462; if, 591.
Sign of conditional omitted, 600.
Silentiō, 401, R. 1.
Similis, constr., 356, R. 1.
Simple sentences, 195; expanded, 280, foll.
Simul—simul, 484.
Simulac, 563.
Sin (minus, secus, aliter), 593.
Si nōn, 592.
Sīne, with abl., 418; not used with gerund, 492.
Singular for plural, 195, R. 7 and 8.
Sīno, w. accus. and inf., 424, R. 3; with ut, 546, R. 3; without ut, 546, R. 3.
Sītio, with accus., 329, R.
Sīve—sive, 498, 499.
Space, extent in, 335, 336.
Spē, comparative with, 399, R. 1
Specification, genitive of, 354.
Specific characteristic, 357.
Stage of action, 213.
Standard of comparison omitted, 312.
Statuo in, abl., 384, R.
Sto, constr., 378; with abl., 403, R. 3.
Stultitia est, 365, R.
Sub, in compounds with acc., 330; with dat., 346; with acc. and abl., 488; comp., 413, R.
Subject, the forms of, 195; object for, 470; accus. subj. of infin., 525, R.; subject omitted, 526, R. 2; 532, R. 4; nom. subj. for accus., 528.
Subjective genitive, 361.
Subjunctive, 247; ideal and unreal, 248; potential, 250; optative, 253; in asseverations, 255; as imperative, 256; as concessive, 257.
Subjunctive, future, how represented, 511. See different classes of sentences.
Sublimis, 324, R. 6.
Subordinate clauses, 474.
Subordination by means of participle, 409, R. 2.
Substantīva mōbilia, 199.
Subter, in compounds with accus., 330; with acc. and abl., 219.
Suī. See Reflexive.
Sum, with dat., 349, 350; w. dative of gerund, 430; with predicative genitive, 365.
Sunt quī, 426.
Super, in compounds with acc., 330; with dat., 346; super, with acc., and abl., 419.
Superlative, 316; strengthened, 317; with gen., 371.
Supine, 435-437; accus. 436; ablative, 437.
Supplico, w. dat., 345, R. 2.
Suprā, as adv., 416, R.; with accus., 417.
Suus, use of, 294, 299, R.
Synesis, 202.
Syntax, defined, 193.

T.

Table of temporal relations, 217.
Tae'det, 376.
Taking, verbs of, 334.
Talis, 645.
Tamdiū, 645.
Tamen, 492.
Tame'si, 606.
Tam quam, tam quam sī, 604.
Tantī, 380; tantum abest ut, 556, R. 1; tantus, 645.
Teaching, verbs of, 333.
Tempore, constr., 347.
Temporal conjunctions for copulative, 484; conjunctions, 561; temporal relations, table of, 214.
Tempus est, 429, R. 3.
Tendency, sentences of, 340, foll.
Tenes, w. perf., part., pass., 237.
Tenses, 213, foll.; number of, 214; present, 218–221; perfect pure, 227–230; historical, 231; imperfect, 221, foll.; pluperfect, 232–3; future, 234; future perfect, 235; periphrastic, 235; active, 236; passive, 240–243; in letters, 244; tenses of indicative, 270; subjunctive, 270; imperative, 272; infinitive, 273, foll.; participle, 278; sequence of tenses, 510, foll.; dependent infinitive, 529, foll., iterative, 568, 569; in oratio obliqua, 656, foll.
Tenus, position, 414, R.; with abl. and gen., 419.
Thinking, verbs of, 197; with accus. and inf., 526–529.
Time, accus. of, 337–8; abl. of, 392, 393; with in, 393; with ante, post, abīnic, 400, R. 3; participle, 552.
Timeo, w. dat., 347.
Tot, 645.
Tōtēs, 645.
Tōtus, of space, 386; of time, 392, R. 1.
Towns, names of, 410–412.
Trans, in compounds, w. accus., 330; with two accus., 330, R. 1, 2; w. accus., 417.
Transient qualities, 402, R. 1.
Transitive verbs, 204, 317.
Tum—cum, 364.
Tum—tum, 484.
Tus, 299, R.

U.

Ubi, w. gen., 371, R. 3; of time, 563.
Ullus, 304.
Ultimus, 324, R. 5.
Utērē, as adv., 416; with accus., 417.
Unreal conditional sentence, 599.
Unus, unus omnium, with superlat., 317.
Unus, how translated, 324, R. 5; unus qui, 633.
Urging, verbs of, 546.
Usus, 390, 322, R.
Ut—ita, concessive, 484.
Ut uti, design, 545; tendency, 554; ut omitted, 545, R. 3; 579, R.
Ut qui, 627, R., 636; ut, of cause, 645, R. 4.
Ut, in explanatory questions, 560.
Ut nōn, 543; 556, R. 6.
Ut sī, 604.
Ut quisque—ita, 645, R. 2.
Uter, 315.
Uterque, 370, R. 2.
Utinam, 253.
Utor, 405; utendus, 428, R. 3.
Ut primum, 563.
Utrum, 460, 461, R.

V.

Vacāre, 347.
Vacuus, constr., 388.
Vae, 340, R. 2.
Value, gen. of, 379.
—Ve, 497.
Vel, with superl., 317; vel, 496.
Vel—vel, 496.
Velle, for future, 240, R. 3; velle sibi, 351.
Velut velutēs, 604.
Venēo, 378.
Vēneō, 378.
Venio, with two dat., 350.
Venit in mentem, 375, R. 3.
Verb, voices, active, 204; passive, 205; reflexive, 209; deponent, 201; tenses, 213, foll.; moods, 244, foll. See Voice, Mood, Tense.

Verbal nouns, sequence after, 518.

Verbum, w. gen., 359.

Vereor, 424, 552; w. dat., 347.

Vērō, 489.

Versus, position, 414; w. accus., 417.

Vērum, 488.

Vetus, w. two dat., 350.

Vescor, 405; vescendus, 428, R. 3.

Vespertīnus, 324, R. 5.

Vestī vestrum, 362, R.

Vēto, w. acc., 345, R. 1; with inf., 424, R. 3.

Viā et ratione, 401, R.

Vidēre nē, 552, R. 2.

Vi et armis, 401, R.

Vīvo, w. abl., 405, R. 3.

Vocative, 194, R. 3.

Voice, active, 204; passive, 205.

Volens, 324, R. 6; volenti, 354.

Volo, 532, and R. 4; 526, and R. 3.

Votī damnāri, 377, R. 3.

Vox, with gen., 359.

W.

Want, verbs of, 389; adj. of, 373 R. 1; 389, R. 2.

Warning, verbs of, 546.

Whither? 313, 410.

Wishing, verbs of, 532, 546, mood.

Y.

Yes, 473.

Yielding, verbs of, w. dat., 345.

Z.

Zeugma, 690.
### COMPARATIVE SECTIONS OF SYNTAX.

The numbers in the first column of each division below indicate sections in former editions of the Grammar; those in the second refer to corresponding sections in the Revised Latin Grammar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>O. E.</th>
<th>N. E.</th>
<th>O. E.</th>
<th>N. E.</th>
<th>O. E.</th>
<th>N. E.</th>
<th>O. E.</th>
<th>N. E.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>192-3</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>250-2</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>313</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>55-6</td>
<td>253-4</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>314</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>196-7</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>317</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>319</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>321</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>202 R.4</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>202 R.5</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>263</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>323</td>
<td>176</td>
<td>379-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>264</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>324</td>
<td>177-8</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>126-5</td>
<td>325-6</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>267</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>334</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>339</td>
<td>183</td>
<td>396-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>339</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>185-6</td>
<td>390-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>72-3</td>
<td>271</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>187</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>352</td>
<td>188</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>274</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>357</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>277</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>357</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>217</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>279</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>218 R.2</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>282</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>232-8</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 R.2</td>
<td>229</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>285</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 R.3</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>286</td>
<td>153</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 a</td>
<td>223-3</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 b</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 c</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>156</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-33</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>231-2</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>91-3</td>
<td>292</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>294</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38-41</td>
<td>236-9</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>296</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>298</td>
<td>164</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>302</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>106-7</td>
<td>305</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>306</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 a</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O. E.</td>
<td>N. E.</td>
<td>O. E.</td>
<td>N. E.</td>
<td>O. E.</td>
<td>N. E.</td>
<td>O. E.</td>
<td>N. E.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289</td>
<td>504</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>504</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>504</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>504</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>290</td>
<td>505</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>505</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>505</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>291</td>
<td>506</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>506</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>506</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292</td>
<td>507</td>
<td>292</td>
<td>507</td>
<td>292</td>
<td>507</td>
<td>292</td>
<td>507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293</td>
<td>508</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>508</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>508</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>294</td>
<td>509</td>
<td>294</td>
<td>509</td>
<td>294</td>
<td>509</td>
<td>294</td>
<td>509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>295</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>296</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>296</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>296</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>296</td>
<td>511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>297</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>298</td>
<td>513</td>
<td>298</td>
<td>513</td>
<td>298</td>
<td>513</td>
<td>298</td>
<td>513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299</td>
<td>514</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>514</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>514</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>516</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>516</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>516</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>517</td>
<td>302</td>
<td>517</td>
<td>302</td>
<td>517</td>
<td>302</td>
<td>517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>518</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>518</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>518</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>518</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>520</td>
<td>305</td>
<td>520</td>
<td>305</td>
<td>520</td>
<td>305</td>
<td>520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td>521</td>
<td>306</td>
<td>521</td>
<td>306</td>
<td>521</td>
<td>306</td>
<td>521</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>522</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>522</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>522</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308</td>
<td>523</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>523</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>523</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309</td>
<td>524</td>
<td>309</td>
<td>524</td>
<td>309</td>
<td>524</td>
<td>309</td>
<td>524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>525</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>525</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>525</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311</td>
<td>526</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>526</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>526</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312</td>
<td>527</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>527</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>527</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>527</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>313</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>313</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>313</td>
<td>528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314</td>
<td>529</td>
<td>314</td>
<td>529</td>
<td>314</td>
<td>529</td>
<td>314</td>
<td>529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315</td>
<td>530</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>530</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>530</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316</td>
<td>531</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>531</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>531</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>531</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>317</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>317</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>317</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>317</td>
<td>532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318</td>
<td>533</td>
<td>318</td>
<td>533</td>
<td>318</td>
<td>533</td>
<td>318</td>
<td>533</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide.
Treatment Date: July 2006

Preservation Technologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16036
(724) 772-2511